

# **AN INTERMEDIATE ECOLOGICAL RESERVE DETERMINATION STUDY OF THE EAST KLEINEMONDE ESTUARY**

**Report to the Water Research Commission**

**by**

**L VAN NIEKERK<sup>1</sup>, GC BATE<sup>2</sup> AND AK WHITFIELD<sup>3</sup> (EDS)**

<sup>1</sup>CSIR, PO Box 320, Stellenbosch 7600

<sup>2</sup>DEM, 18 Oakleigh Drive, Howick 3290

<sup>3</sup>SAIAB, Private Bag 1015, Grahamstown 6140

**WRC Report: 1581/11/08**

**ISBN: x-xxxxx-xxx-x**

**November 2008**

This Report K5/1581 is obtainable from:

Water Research Commission  
Private Bag X03  
Gezina  
0031  
Pretoria  
South Africa

**This report emanates from a project funded by the Water Research Commission  
K5/1581: “The freshwater requirements of intermittently open Cape estuaries”**

**DISCLAIMER**

This report has been reviewed by the Water Research Commission (WRC) and approved for publication. Approval does not signify that the contents necessarily reflect the views and policies of the WRC, nor does mention of trade names or commercial products constitute endorsement or recommendation for use

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The findings of the East Kleinemonde Intermediate Ecological Reserve Determination Study are presented. The study was undertaken for the Resource Directed Measures Chief Directorate, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWA) as part of a Water Research Commission project (K5/1581) on temporarily open/closed estuaries in the Eastern and Western Cape Provinces.

The East Kleinemonde Estuary is situated approximately 15 km north east of Port Alfred. The estuary is small, shallow (1-2 m depth), approximately 120 m across at its widest section near the mouth, and has a surface area of approximately 25 ha when closed. During periods of extended mouth closure the water level can rise to about 2.3 m MSL and extensive back flooding occurs as a result of the formation of a sand berm across the mouth. However, after the mouth has opened the estuary is very shallow with a maximum depth of approximately 1 m.

Key findings of the study are summarised in the appendices to the main report:

- Appendix A Availability of data on the East Kleinemonde Estuary
- Appendix B Specialist report: Simulated catchment hydrology
- Appendix C Specialist report: Physical dynamics
- Appendix D Specialist report: Coastal processes and sediment dynamics
- Appendix E Specialist report: Water quality
- Appendix F Specialist report: Microalgae
- Appendix G Specialist report: Macrophytes
- Appendix H Specialist report: Macrobenthos
- Appendix I Specialist report: Zooplankton and hyperbenthos
- Appendix J Specialist report: Fish
- Appendix K Specialist report: Birds
- Appendix L Proposed changes to RDM methodology for estuaries

## Project Team

The core specialist team responsible (component leaders indicated in bold typing) for RDM templates and attending the specialist workshop (18-19 April 2007 in Port Elizabeth) is as follows:

Role/Expertise	Lead specialists	Contact details
Workshop coordination, Report preparation and Hydrodynamics	<b>Ms Lara van Niekerk</b>	CSIR, Stellenbosch, <a href="mailto:lvnieker@csir.co.za">lvnieker@csir.co.za</a>
Water quality	<b>Ms Susan Taljaard*</b>	CSIR, Stellenbosch, <a href="mailto:staljaar@csir.co.za">staljaar@csir.co.za</a>
Sediment dynamics	<b>Mr Andre Theron*</b>	CSIR, Stellenbosch, <a href="mailto:atheron@csir.co.za">atheron@csir.co.za</a>
Microalgae	<b>Dr Phumelele Gama</b>	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:phumelele.gama@nmmu.ac.za">phumelele.gama@nmmu.ac.za</a>
	Prof Guy Bate	Diatom and Environmental Management, <a href="mailto:bateg@netfocus.co.za">bateg@netfocus.co.za</a>
Estuarine vegetation	<b>Prof Janine Adams</b>	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:janine.adams@nmmu.ac.za">janine.adams@nmmu.ac.za</a>
Invertebrates	<b>Prof Tris Wooldridge</b>	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:tris.wooldridge@nmmu.ac.za">tris.wooldridge@nmmu.ac.za</a>
	<b>Prof William Froneman*</b>	Rhodes University, <a href="mailto:W.Froneman@ru.ac.za">W.Froneman@ru.ac.za</a>
Fish	<b>Dr Paul Cowley</b>	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity, <a href="mailto:P.Cowley@ru.ac.za">P.Cowley@ru.ac.za</a>
	Dr Alan Whitfield	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity, <a href="mailto:A.Whitfield@ru.ac.za">A.Whitfield@ru.ac.za</a>
Birds	<b>Dr Jane Turpie</b>	Anchor Environmental Consultants, <a href="mailto:jane.turpie@botzoo.uct.ac.za">jane.turpie@botzoo.uct.ac.za</a>

\* Did not attend RDM specialists workshop

The following persons formed part of the project team to support capacity building in the application of Ecological Reserve determinations on estuaries:

Person	Role/ expertise	Contact details
Mr Gavin Snow	Microalgae	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:gavin.snow@nmmu.ac.za">gavin.snow@nmmu.ac.za</a>
Ms Taryn Riddin	Estuarine vegetation	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:triddin@isat.co.za">triddin@isat.co.za</a>
Dr Thomas Bornman	Estuarine vegetation	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:tom.bornman@nmmu.ac.za">tom.bornman@nmmu.ac.za</a>
Mr Steve Lamberth	Fish	Marine and Coastal Management, DEAT <a href="mailto:Lamberth@deat.gov.za">Lamberth@deat.gov.za</a>
Mr Lukhanyiso Vumazonke	Invertebrates	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity, <a href="mailto:l.vumazonke@ru.ac.za">l.vumazonke@ru.ac.za</a>
Dr Nadine Strydom	Ichthyoplankton	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity, <a href="mailto:N.Strydom@ru.ac.za">N.Strydom@ru.ac.za</a>
Ms Nicola James	Fish	SAEON Elwandle Node, <a href="mailto:nikkij@saeon.ac.za">nikkij@saeon.ac.za</a>
Ms Anja Terörde	Birds	University of Cape Town, <a href="mailto:Anjater@yahoo.de">Anjater@yahoo.de</a>

Other parties present at the Estuarine Specialist Workshop, held in Port Elizabeth on 18 and 19 April 2007:

Person	Affiliation/role	Contact details
Ms Barbara Weston	RDM Directorate, DWAF	<a href="mailto:westonb@dwaf.gov.za">westonb@dwaf.gov.za</a>
Ms Fiona Mackay	Oceanographic Research Institute	<a href="mailto:fmackay@ori.org">fmackay@ori.org</a>
Prof AT Forbes	Marine and Estuarine Research	<a href="mailto:ticky@mer.co.za">ticky@mer.co.za</a>
Ms Nicolette Demetriades	Marine and Estuarine Research	<a href="mailto:nicolette@mer.co.za">nicolette@mer.co.za</a>

### Overview of the Process on the Determination of the Ecological Reserve for Estuaries

The preliminary determination of the Ecological Reserve can be conducted on different levels, namely:

- Comprehensive
- Intermediate
- Rapid

The procedures are discussed in detail in *Resource Directed Measures for protection of water resources: Methodology for the Determination of the Ecological Water Requirements for Estuaries, Version 2* (DWAF, 2004). A summary of the procedures used for the Intermediate Ecological Reserve Determination for estuaries are illustrated in Figures 1.1 and 1.2 of this report. Based on the available information and expertise, the study on the East Kleinemonde Estuary was conducted at the Intermediate level.

## Assumptions and Limitations

The following assumptions and limitations must be taken into account when assessing the outcomes of this study:

- The hydrological data were provided to the estuarine team by Prof D A Hughes of the Institute for Water Research. Confidence in these data sets was low because runoff data were not available for the calibration of the simulated runoff scenarios.
- The accuracy of predicted Abiotic States for the East Kleinemonde Estuary and the occurrence of these states under Reference Conditions, Present State and Future Scenarios depends largely on the accuracy of the simulated runoff data and the number of observed breaching and closing events recorded during the study.

Criteria for the confidence limits attached to statements in this study are as follows:

Limit	Degree of confidence
Low	If no data were available for the estuary or similar estuaries (i.e. < 40%)
Medium	If limited data were available for the estuary or other similar estuaries (i.e. 40% – 80%)
High	If sufficient data were available for the estuary (i.e. > 80%)

## Geographical boundaries

For the purposes of the Ecological Reserve determination for the East Kleinemonde Estuary the geographical boundaries are defined as follows (WGS84):

- **Downstream boundary:** Estuary mouth (33° 32' 23.76" S, 27 03' 00.32" E)
- **Upstream boundary:** Approximately 4 km upstream of the mouth (33° 31' 21.38" S, 27° 01' 27.53" E).
- **Lateral boundaries:** 5 m contour above MSL along the banks, a delineation that can be readily referenced from an ortho-photograph of the area.

### 3.2.1 Present Ecological Status (PES)

The Estuarine Health Index (EHI) scores allocated to the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Present State) were:

Variable	Weight %	Score	Weighted score
Hydrology	25	95	24
Hydrodynamics and mouth condition	25	90	23
Water quality	25	78	20
Physical habitat alteration	25	85	21
<b>Habitat health score</b>			<b>87</b>
Microalgae	20	80	16
Macrophytes	20	85	17
Invertebrates	20	90	18
Fish	20	90	18
Birds	20	85	17
<b>Biotic Health Score</b>			<b>86</b>
<b>Estuarine Health score</b>			<b>87</b>

The Estuarine Health Index score for the East Kleinemonde Estuary, based on its Present State, is 87, translating into a **Present Ecological Status** of a **B+** as indicated below:

Estuarine Health Index	Present Ecological Status	General description
91 – 100	A	Unmodified, natural
<b>76 – 90</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>Largely natural with few modifications</b>
61 – 75	C	Moderately modified
41 – 60	D	Largely modified
21 – 40	E	Highly degraded
0 – 20	F	Extremely degraded

Although the Present Ecological Status of the East Kleinemonde Estuary is a high B, the system is on a **trajectory of change downwards**. At the specialist workshop it was noted that an increase in fishing pressure, nutrient input from the catchment and septic tanks, riparian developments, noise disturbance and loss of aquatic habitat due to boating are influencing the system negatively.

The Estuarine Importance scores allocated to the East Kleinmonde Estuary Turpie (2002, 2004), were as follows:

Criterion	Weight	Score	Weighted score
Estuary Size	15	70	11
Zonal Rarity Type	10	10	1
Habitat Diversity	25	90	23
Biodiversity Importance	25	84	21
Functional Importance	25	60	15
<b>Estuarine Importance Score</b>			<b>70</b>

The Functional Importance of the East Kleinemonde on a regional scale is estimated to be 60, since significant amounts of organic material generated in the estuary during the closed phase are exported to the nearshore during the open phase. The overall **Estuarine Importance Score**, based on its Present State is **70**, thus indicating that the estuary is important, as indicated below:

Importance Score	Description
81 – 100	Highly important
<b>61 – 80</b>	<b>Important</b>
0 – 60	Of low to average importance

## Recommended ecological category for East Kleinemonde Estuary

The recommended Ecological Reserve Category (ERC) represents the level of protection assigned to an estuary. In turn, it is again used to determine the Ecological Reserve. For estuaries, the first step is to determine the 'minimum' Ecological Reserve Category of an estuary, based on its Present Ecological Status (PES). The relationship between Estuarine Health Index Score, Present Ecological Status and Ecological Reserve Category is set out below:

Estuarine Health Index	Present Ecological Status	Description	Ecological Reserve Category
91 – 100	A	Unmodified, natural	A
76 – 90	B	Largely natural with few modifications	B
61 – 75	C	Moderately modified	C
41 – 60	D	Largely modified	D
21 – 40	E	Highly degraded	-
0 – 20	F	Extremely degraded	-

**Note:** Should the Present Status category of an estuary be either an E or F, recommendations must be made as to how the status can be elevated to at least achieve a Category D (as indicated above).

The minimum Ecological Reserve Category is determined by the Present Ecological Status. The degree to which the Ecological Category needs to be elevated above the Present Ecological Status depends on the level of **importance** and the level of **protection** or **desired protection** of a particular estuary (see below).

Current/desired protection status and estuary importance	Recommended Ecological Reserve Category	Policy basis
Protected area	A or BAS*	Protected and desired protected areas should be restored to and maintained in the best possible state of health
Desired Protected Area		
Highly important	PES + 1, min B	Highly important estuaries should be in an A or B class
Important	PES + 1, min C	Important estuaries should be in an A, B or C class
Of low to average importance	PES, min D	The remaining estuaries can be allowed to remain in a D class.

\* BAS = Best Attainable State

The East Kleinemonde Estuary is been targeted as a Desired Protected Area by the C.A.P.E. Estuaries Conservation Plan for the temperate areas of South Africa (Turpie and Clarke 2007). According to the guidelines for assigning a recommended Ecological Reserve Category, the estuary should be classified as a Category A or the Best Attainable State (BAS).

At the specialist workshop it was concluded that the changes currently contributing to the Present State of the estuary are related to flow reduction, fishing pressures, human disturbance around the estuary and nutrient loading from the catchment.

The East Kleinemonde Estuary is very vulnerable to non-flow related activities such as fishing, power boating and nutrient loading. The present level of urban development around the estuary acts as a constraint and prevents the system from being rehabilitated to a Category A. Thus, the workshop concluded that the recommended ERC for the East Kleinemonde Estuary be a **Category B**, i.e. at least maintain the Present Ecological Status.

## Quantification of Ecological Reserve Scenarios

A summary of the suite of future runoff scenarios, evaluated as part of this project, as well as the Reference and Present flow scenarios (provided by Prof D A Hughes, Institute for Water Research, Rhodes University), is presented below.

Name	Description	MAR (million m <sup>3</sup> /annum)	Percentage Retained
<b>Reference</b>	Reference	2.856	100.0
<b>Present</b>	Present Flows	2.748	96.2
<b>Future Scenario 1</b>	Dam Development (excluding an increase in non-flow related anthropogenic activities)	2.409	84.3
<b>Future Scenario 2</b>	Off-channel intermittent abstraction (excluding an increase in non-flow related anthropogenic activities)	2.575	90.1
<b>Future Scenario 3</b>	Similar to Scenario 2, factoring in other non-flow related anthropogenic activities.	2.575	90.1
<b>Future Scenario 4</b>	Similar to Scenario 2, factoring in other non-flow related anthropogenic activities, but mitigating for the increase in waste water and stormwater runoff	2.575	90.1

The Present State of development represents a situation that has 300 residential plots that are supplied with water from the Wellington Dam (capacity:  $0.206 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ ) supplemented by borehole water. The Wellington Dam is situated on a tributary of the East Kleinemonde River that draws from approximately 9% of the total catchment area of the East Kleinemonde system.

Details on the four simulated Future Scenarios are as follows:

- Future Scenario 1: This comprises 1010 developed residential plots with the water supply originating from a new dam to be constructed on the main river. The assumption is that the sub-catchment feeding the dam represents about 67% of the total catchment area with the capacity of the dam being determined appropriately, given the patterns of inflow and the demand. Based on this future housing development scenario, the maximum recommended percentage of the MAR impounded increases from approximately 4% (Present) to almost 16%.
- Future Scenario 2: Development plans envisage 1010 developed residential plots with the water supply originating from an off-channel reservoir fed by intermittent pumping from the main river on demand from a suitable weir the size and construction of which is to be determined. The assumption is that pumping will remove most of the water from the river during low flow periods but will have little impact on the short-duration higher flows that have most influence on estuary function. Evaporative loss from a dam will be eliminated in this scenario.
- Future Scenario 3: Similar to Scenario 2, but also including all other non-flow related anthropogenic activities associated with the new developments (e.g. increased fishing pressures, power boating, human disturbance, seepage from septic tanks, storm water runoff).
- Future Scenario 4: Similar to Scenario 3, but mitigating for the increase in municipal waste water and storm water runoff from the new developments.

The individual Estuarine Health Index (EHI) scores, as well as the corresponding Ecological Reserve Category for the various scenarios, were calculated according to EHI methodology and are shown in the following table:

Variable	Weight	Present	Future Runoff Scenario			
			1	2	3	4
Hydrology	25	95	93	93	93	93
Hydrodynamics/mouth condition	25	90	80	85	85	85
Water quality	25	78	80	79	64	79
Physical habitat alteration	25	85	85	85	76	76
<b>Habitat Health Score</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>87</b>	<b>85</b>	<b>86</b>	<b>68</b>	<b>71</b>
Microalgae	20	80	80	80	65	80
Macrophytes	20	85	81	83	60	70
Invertebrates	20	90	85	80	60	70
Fish	20	90	80	85	60	62
Birds	20	85	82	85	55	57
<b>Biotic Health Score</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>86</b>	<b>82</b>	<b>83</b>	<b>49</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>Estuarine Health Index Score</b>		<b>87</b>	<b>83</b>	<b>84</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>Ecological Reserve Category (ERC)</b>		<b>B</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>C</b>

### Recommended ecological flow requirement for East Kleinemonde Estuary

The evaluation of the simulated runoff scenarios was used to derive the recommended Ecological Flow Requirement. The recommended Ecological Flow Requirement is defined as the runoff scenario (or a slight modification thereof) that represents the highest reduction in river inflow that will still protect the aquatic ecosystem of the estuary and keep it in the recommended ERC.

In evaluating Future Scenarios 1 and 2, the assumption was made that only river in-flow from the catchments will be reduced and that all additional non-flow related anthropogenic activities (e.g. increased fishing and bait collection, power boating, human disturbance, seepage from septic tanks, stormwater runoff) will not be considered. Future Scenario 3 represents the expected impact of flow reduction and additional non-flow related anthropogenic activities on the estuary if 1010 residential plots are developed in the estuarine environs. Scenario 4 represents the expected impact of flow reduction and additional non-flow related anthropogenic activities, but mitigating for the impact of nutrient loading as a result of seepage from septic tanks and pollutants from storm water runoff.

Both Scenario 1 and Scenario 2 will maintain the East Kleinemonde in the recommended ERC, as there is very little reduction in runoff and impact on the estuarine ecosystem. **Scenario 2** was selected as the recommended Ecological Flow Requirement because Scenario 1 (which includes an in-channel dam development) represents a serious risk to migratory species (e.g. eels) that use the river as a conduit to the upper catchment. Dams act as permanent barriers to fish migration and negatively influence river ecosystems by changing the downstream flow regime.

**East Kleinemonde: Summary of flow distribution (mean monthly flows in m<sup>3</sup> s<sup>-1</sup>) under Future Scenario 2**

	OCT	NOV	DEC	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP
99%ile	0.765	1.183	0.665	0.245	0.803	1.524	1.023	2.702	1.127	0.931	0.958	1.513
90%ile	0.240	0.236	0.162	0.074	0.052	0.184	0.205	0.152	0.200	0.113	0.103	0.230
80%ile	0.117	0.074	0.065	0.012	0.019	0.081	0.064	0.051	0.039	0.025	0.037	0.065
70%ile	0.064	0.047	0.023	0.004	0.006	0.027	0.043	0.019	0.010	0.009	0.017	0.029
60%ile	0.024	0.027	0.008	0.001	0.002	0.010	0.025	0.007	0.004	0.003	0.008	0.010
50%ile	0.010	0.016	0.003	0.000	0.000	0.003	0.003	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.005
40%ile	0.003	0.005	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.003
30%ile	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
20%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
10%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

When implementing the recommended ERC (Scenario 2) in future, the following should be noted:

The selection of Scenario 2 means that although the East Kleinemonde is a small temporarily open/closed estuary, it can accommodate the reduction in fluvial flow necessary to meet the requirements of future housing development in the area. However, it will not be able to support the additional non-flow related human disturbance pressures that will be associated with the planned residential developments. Therefore the approval of any future residential developments should be conditional on the following mitigation measures being implemented:

- No consumptive use (e.g. fishing or bait collection) should be allowed in the East Kleinemonde Estuary;
- No power boating on the East and West Kleinemonde estuaries (only canoes and electric motors to be allowed);
- All new urban developments will have to be connected to a Waste Water Treatment Works to eliminate the risk of seepage from septic tanks entering the estuary;
- Storm water run-off from newly developed areas will have to be captured and diverted from the system to prevent hydrocarbons and other pollutants from entering the system.

In order to maintain the estuary in its present state, consumptive use (exploitation) of marine living resources needs to be managed. Because the system is relatively small, there is no optimum zonation scheme that can accommodate this requirement, e.g. white steenbras occur predominantly below the road bridge in the sandy areas while other species occur above the bridge. Zoning to protect one fish species will make others more vulnerable, since it will lead to increased fishing pressure in other parts of the estuary. Serious concern was also raised over habitat destruction caused by bait collection since the areas where bait species occur are limited. Thus, the only effective mitigation measure in response to increased development in the environs of the East Kleinemonde is to close it for all consumptive uses.

Power boating in small estuaries causes habitat destruction (mainly as a result of bank erosion from boat wakes), pollution (antifouling paints and oils), disturbs the feeding and breeding of birds, and significantly disturbs fish (especially small fish in shallow areas). It is, therefore, recommended that power boating be banned from both the East and West Kleinemonde as they are similar in size and closure of one is likely to double the boating pressures on the adjacent system. Larger, permanently open estuaries such as the nearby Kowie and Kariega are much more resilient with respect to the impacts of power boating and are safer systems to use by virtue of their size.

At present, septic tanks are used for the treatment of domestic wastewater (sewage) at Kleinemonde. Although the use of French drains and septic tanks, and absence of sewage treatment plants may be acceptable options for smaller communities, these options are usually not acceptable for larger human settlements. The risk of impact on water resources, associated with spillages and seepage, increases

markedly with the increase in the number and density of housing developments. Adverse impacts associated with sewage spillages and seepage include eutrophication (e.g. excessive reed growth along the banks of the estuary) and human health risks (e.g. associated with contact recreation activities). South Africa does not have clear guidelines on this matter, but internationally it has become common practice to provide a collecting system to communities (including coastal communities) with a service population greater than about 2 000 (RSA DWAF, 2004). It is therefore strongly recommended that any new residential development in the East Kleinemonde Estuary consider wastewater collection systems connected to either a conventional existing WWTW or an alternative treatment facility (e.g. artificial wetland).

Increased development (and an increase in hard surfaces) will also increase stormwater runoff into the estuary with likely increases of hydrocarbons, nutrients, turbidity and other pollutant loads. It is proposed that for any new development, the developer be made responsible for managing storm water run-off whereby, for example, the storm water run-off from a new development is contained and treated at central points before discharge into the environment (e.g. Thesen Island Development, Knysna).

The West Kleinemonde Estuary is similar in size to the East Kleinemonde and would therefore also be very vulnerable to increased urban development. This matter needs to be investigated before new developments in the area are approved. In future, RDM determinations should incorporate a regional assessment component to address the impact of development on adjacent systems.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY</b>	<b>i</b>
Project Team	i
Overview of the Process on the Determination of the Ecological Reserve for Estuaries	ii
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS</b>	<b>x</b>
<b>LIST OF APPENDICES</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>LIST OF FIGURES</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>LIST OF TABLES</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>ACRONYMS</b>	<b>xii</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Background	1
1.2 Project Team	1
1.3 Overview of Determination of Ecological Reserve for Estuaries: Process	2
1.4 Assumptions and limitations for this study	3
1.5 Confidence limits	4
<b>2 Description of the Resource Unit</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>3 Ecological Reserve Categorisation</b>	<b>5</b>
3.1 Typical Abiotic States	5
3.2 Description of Present State	12
3.2.1 Abiotic Components	12
3.2.2 Biotic Components	16
3.3 Reference Conditions	31
3.2.3 Abiotic Components	31
3.2.4 Biotic Components	34
3.4 Present Ecological Status of the East Kleinemonde Estuary	36
3.4.1 Abiotic Components	36
3.4.2 Biotic Component	38
<b>4 Quantification of Ecological Reserve Scenarios</b>	<b>43</b>
4.1 Future Scenario 1: Dam Development	44
4.1.1 Abiotic Components	44
4.1.2 Biotic Components	49
4.2 Future Scenario 2: Intermittent river abstraction	53
4.2.1 Abiotic Components	53
4.2.2 Biotic Components	58
4.3 Future Scenario 3: Similar to Scenario 2 but including other non-flow related anthropogenic activities	62
4.3.1 Abiotic Components	62
4.3.2 Biotic Components	68
4.4 Future Scenario 4: Similar to Scenario 2, but including non-flow related anthropogenic activities except the increase in waste water and stormwater runoff	72
4.4.1 Abiotic Components	72
4.4.2 Biotic Components	77
<b>5 Recommended ecological flow requirement for East Kleinemonde Estuary</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>6 References</b>	<b>83</b>

## LIST OF APPENDICES

Appendix A	Availability of data on the East Kleinemonde Estuary
Appendix B	Specialist report – Hydrology
Appendix C	Specialist report – Physical dynamics
Appendix D	Specialist report – Coastal processes and sediment dynamics
Appendix E	Specialist report – Water quality
Appendix F	Specialist report – Microalgae
Appendix G	Specialist report – Macrophytes
Appendix H	Specialist report – Macrobenthos
Appendix I	Specialist report – Zooplankton and hyperbenthos
Appendix J	Specialist report – Fish
Appendix K	Specialist report – Birds
Appendix L	Proposed changes to RDM methodology for estuaries

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1. Procedures for an Intermediate Ecological Reserve determination on estuaries, in context of the broader RDM process (components not addressed as part of the Ecological Reserve determination process are indicated by hatched line boxes) (DWAF, 2004) .....	2
Figure 1.2 Indication of human resource requirements for an intermediate Ecological Reserve determination on estuaries (DWAF, 2004). .....	3
Figure 2.1. Map of the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Source: Google) .....	4

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 3.1. Simulated monthly volumes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for the Present State of the system in million m <sup>3</sup> .....	13
Table 3.2 Simulated monthly volumes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for the Reference Conditions in million m <sup>3</sup> : .....	32
Table 4.1. Simulated monthly volumes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for the Future Scenario 1 in million m <sup>3</sup> .....	45
Table 4.2. Simulated monthly volumes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for the Future Scenario 2 in million m <sup>3</sup> .....	54
Table 4.3. Simulated monthly volumes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for the Future Scenario 3 in million m <sup>3</sup> .....	63
Table 4.4. Simulated monthly volumes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for the Future Scenario 4 in million m <sup>3</sup> .....	73

## LIST OF ACRONYMS

BAS	Best Attainable State
DEAT	Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism
DIN	Dissolved Inorganic Nitrogen
DIP	Dissolved Inorganic Phosphate
DM	Dry Mass
DO	Dissolved Oxygen
DRS	Dissolved Reactive Silicate
DWAF	Department of Water Affairs and Forestry
EHI	Estuarine Health Index
ERC	Ecological Reserve Category
ICE	Intermittently Closed Estuary
IOE	Intermittently Open Estuary
MAR	Mean Annual Runoff
MCM	Marine and Coastal Management
MPB	Microphytobenthos
MSL	Mean Sea Level
NMMU	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
PES	Present Ecological Status
POM	Particulate Organic Matter
PS	Present State
PSU	Practical Salinity Unit
RC	Reference Condition
RDM	Resource Directed Measures
REI	River Estuary Interface
RQO	Resource Quality Objectives
RU	Rhodes University
SAIAB	South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity
TOCE	Temporarily Open/Closed Estuary

## Introduction

### 1.1 Background

The findings of the East Kleinemonde Intermediate Ecological Reserve Determination Study are presented in this report. The study was undertaken for the Resource Directed Measures Chief Directorate, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWAF) as part of a Water Research Commission project on Intermittently Open Estuaries (K5/1581).

### 1.2 Project Team

The core specialist team responsible (component leaders indicated in bold typing) for RDM templates and attending the specialist workshop (18-19 April 2007 in Port Elizabeth) is as follows:

Role/Expertise	Lead specialists	Contact details
Workshop coordination, Report preparation and Hydrodynamics	<b>Ms Lara van Niekerk</b>	CSIR, Stellenbosch, <a href="mailto:lvnieker@csir.co.za">lvnieker@csir.co.za</a>
Water quality	<b>Ms Susan Taljaard*</b>	CSIR, Stellenbosch, <a href="mailto:staljaar@csir.co.za">staljaar@csir.co.za</a>
Sediment dynamics	<b>Mr Andre Theron*</b>	CSIR, Stellenbosch, <a href="mailto:atheron@csir.co.za">atheron@csir.co.za</a>
Microalgae	<b>Dr Phumelele Gama</b>	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:phumelele.gama@nmmu.ac.za">phumelele.gama@nmmu.ac.za</a>
	Prof Guy Bate	Diatom and Environmental Management, <a href="mailto:bateg@netfocus.co.za">bateg@netfocus.co.za</a>
Estuarine vegetation	<b>Prof Janine Adams</b>	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:janine.adams@nmmu.ac.za">janine.adams@nmmu.ac.za</a>
Invertebrates	<b>Prof Tris Wooldridge</b>	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:tris.wooldridge@nmmu.ac.za">tris.wooldridge@nmmu.ac.za</a>
	<b>Prof William Froneman*</b>	Rhodes University, <a href="mailto:W.Froneman@ru.ac.za">W.Froneman@ru.ac.za</a>
Fish	<b>Dr Paul Cowley</b>	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity, <a href="mailto:P.Cowley@ru.ac.za">P.Cowley@ru.ac.za</a>
	Dr Alan Whitfield	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity, <a href="mailto:A.Whitfield@ru.ac.za">A.Whitfield@ru.ac.za</a>
Birds	<b>Dr Jane Turpie</b>	Anchor Environmental Consultants, <a href="mailto:jane.turpie@botzoo.uct.ac.za">jane.turpie@botzoo.uct.ac.za</a>

\* Did not attend RDM specialists workshop

The following persons formed part of the project team to support capacity building in the application of Ecological Reserve determinations on estuaries:

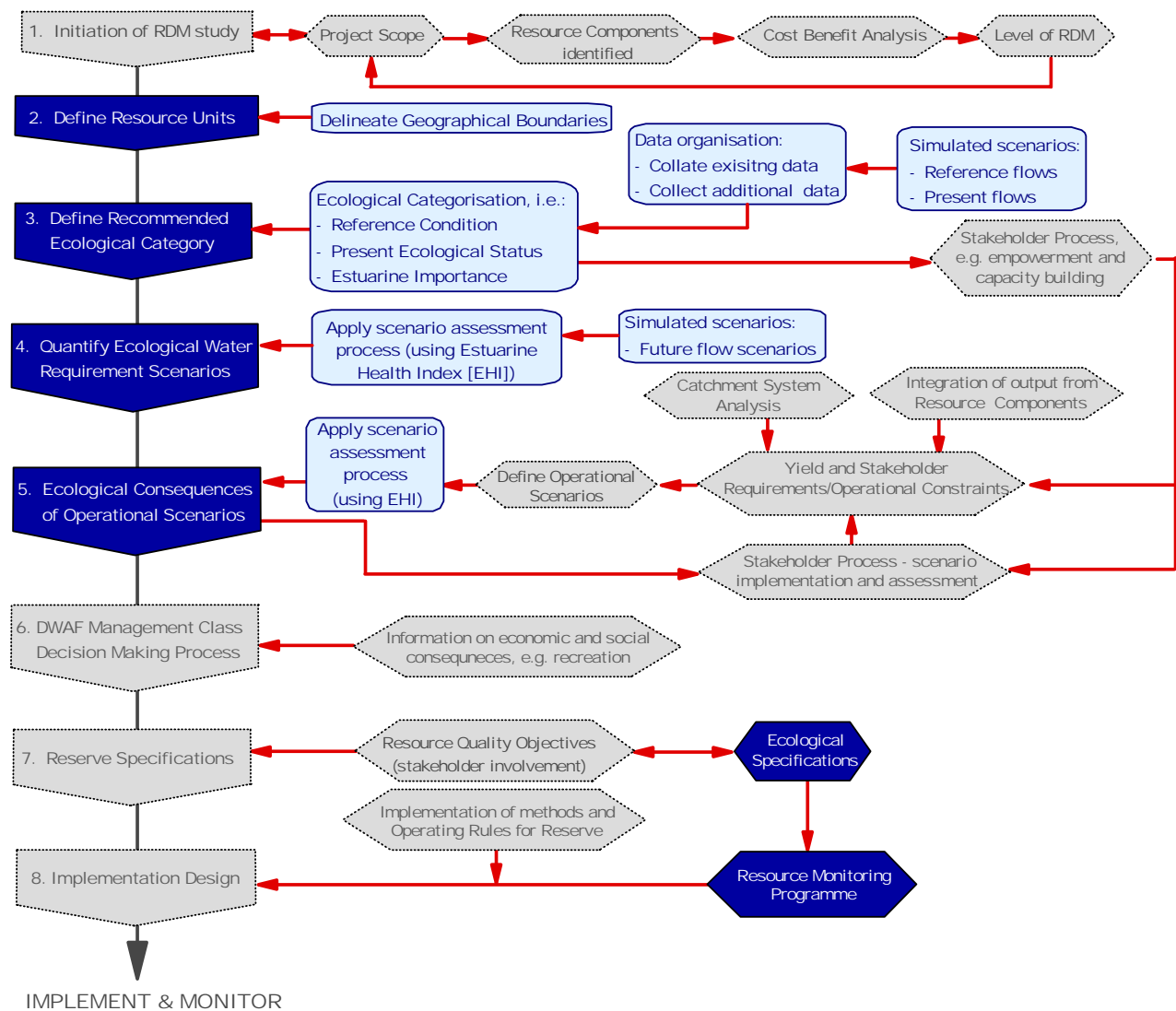
Person	Role/ expertise	Contact details
Mr Gavin Snow	Microalgae	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:gavin.snow@nmmu.ac.za">gavin.snow@nmmu.ac.za</a>
Ms Taryn Riddin	Estuarine vegetation	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:triddin@isat.co.za">triddin@isat.co.za</a>
Dr Thomas Bornman	Estuarine vegetation	Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, <a href="mailto:tom.bornman@nmmu.ac.za">tom.bornman@nmmu.ac.za</a>
Mr Steve Lamberth	Fish	Marine and Coastal Management, DEAT <a href="mailto:Lamberth@deat.gov.za">Lamberth@deat.gov.za</a>
Mr Lukhanyiso Vumazonke	Invertebrates	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity, <a href="mailto:l.vumazonke@ru.ac.za">l.vumazonke@ru.ac.za</a>
Dr Nadine Strydom	Ichthyoplankton	South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity, <a href="mailto:N.Strydom@ru.ac.za">N.Strydom@ru.ac.za</a>
Ms Nicola James	Fish	SAEON Elwandle Node, <a href="mailto:nikkij@saeon.ac.za">nikkij@saeon.ac.za</a>
Ms Anja Terörde	Birds	University of Cape Town, <a href="mailto:Anjater@yahoo.de">Anjater@yahoo.de</a>

### 1.3 Overview of Determination of Ecological Reserve for Estuaries: Process

The preliminary determination of the Ecological Reserve can be conducted on different levels, namely:

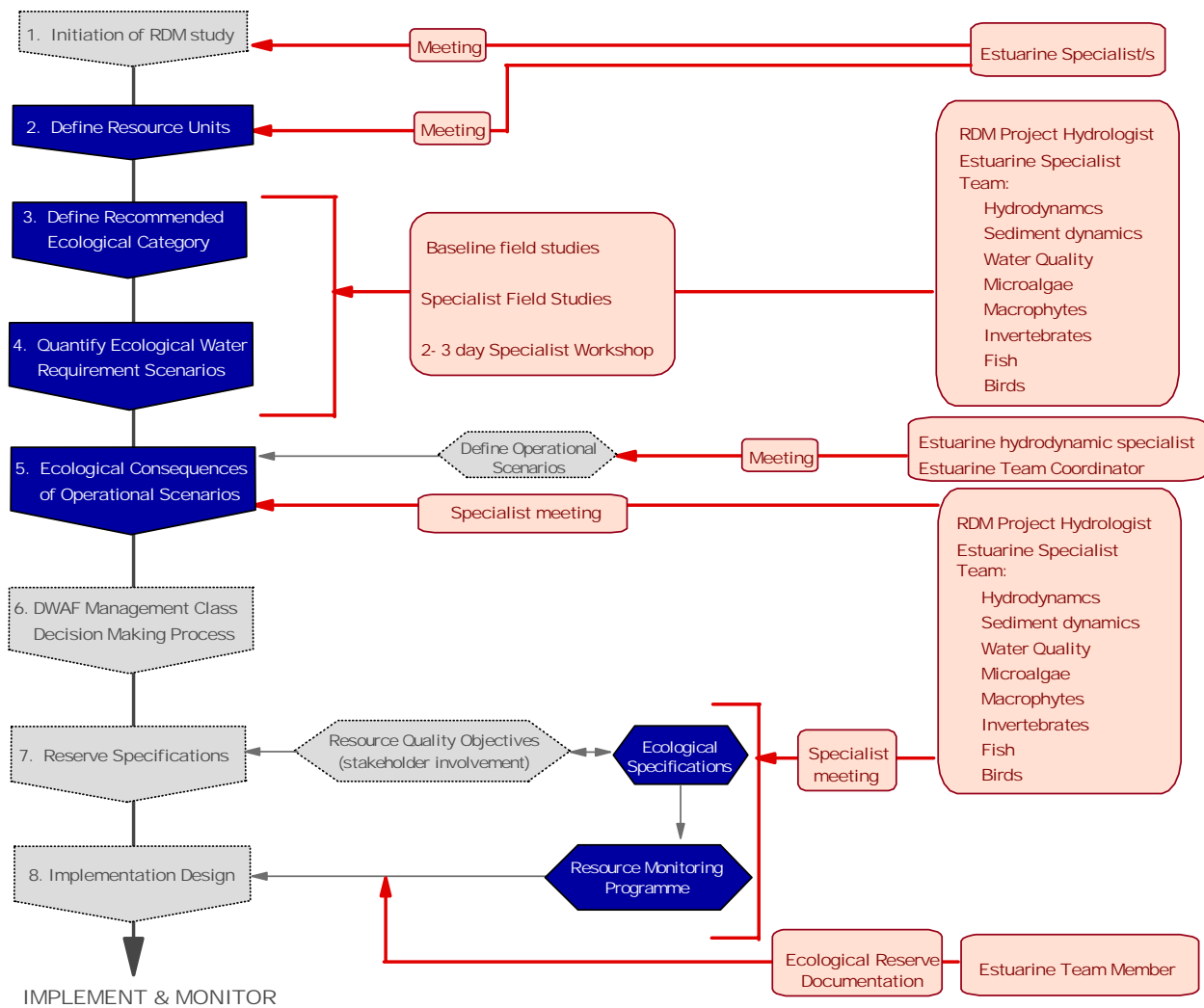
- Comprehensive
- Intermediate
- Rapid.

The procedures are discussed in detail in *Resource Directed Measures for Protection of Water Resources: Methodology for the Determination of the Ecological Water Requirements for Estuaries, Version 2* (DWAF, 2004). A summary of the procedures used for the Intermediate Preliminary Ecological Reserve Determination for estuaries are illustrated in the Figures 1.1 and 1.2 below:



**Figure 0.1** Procedures for an Intermediate Ecological Reserve determination on estuaries, in context of the broader RDM process (components not addressed as part of the Ecological Reserve determination process are indicated by hatched line boxes) (DWAF, 2004).

A summary of the human resources required to conduct an Intermediate Reserve level determination of the preliminary Ecological Reserve for estuaries are illustrated in Figure 1.2.



**Figure 0.2** Indication of human resource requirements for an intermediate Ecological Reserve determination on estuaries (DWAF, 2004).

#### 1.4 Assumptions and limitations for this study

The following assumptions and limitations must be taken into account:

- The hydrological data were provided to the estuarine team by Prof D A Hughes of the Institute for Water Research. Confidence in these data sets was low since runoff data were not available for the calibration of the simulated runoff scenarios.
- The accuracy of predicted Abiotic States for the East Kleinemonde Estuary and the occurrence of these states under Reference Conditions, Present State and Future Scenarios depend largely on the accuracy of the simulated runoff data and the number of observed breaching and closing events recorded during the study.

## 1.5 Confidence limits

Criteria for the confidence limits attached to statements in this study are as follows:

Limit	Degree of confidence
Low	If no data were available for the estuary or similar estuaries (i.e. < 40%)
Medium	If limited data were available for the estuary or other similar estuaries (i.e. 40% – 80%)
High	If sufficient data were available for the estuary (i.e. > 80%)

### Description of the Resource Unit

The East Kleinemonde Estuary is situated approximately 15 km north east of Port Alfred. The estuary is small with a surface area of approximately 25 ha when closed. The system is navigable to small craft for approximately 3 km and is approximately 120 m across at its widest section near the mouth. It is shallow with the water depth varying between 1 and 2 m in the deeper sections. During periods of extended mouth closure the water level can rise to about 2.3 m MSL and extensive back-flooding occurs as a result of the formation of a sand berm across the mouth. However, after the mouth has opened the estuary is very shallow with a maximum depth of approximately 1m.

For the purposes of this Ecological Reserve determination for the East Kleinemonde Estuary the geographical boundaries are defined as follows (Figure 2.1) (WGS84):

- **Downstream boundary:** Estuary mouth (33° 32' 23.76" S, 27° 03' 00.32" E)
- **Upstream boundary:** Approximately 4 km upstream of the mouth (33° 31' 21.38" S, 27° 01' 27.53" E).
- **Lateral boundaries:** 5 m contour above MSL along the banks, a delineation that can be readily referenced from an ortho-photograph of the area.



**Figure 0.1** Map of the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Source: Google Earth).

## Ecological Reserve Categorisation

### 1.1 Typical Abiotic States

Based on the limited data available, three Abiotic States were defined for the East Kleinemonde Estuary, of which the occurrence and duration varies depending on river inflow rate. These states are:

State 1: Intermittently open/closed driven by high flow events	Flow Volume $> 0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$
State 2: Intermittently open/closed driven by persistent low flow periods	Flow Volume $< 0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ and cumulative inflows $> 0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$
State 3: Closed Mouth	Flow Volume $< 0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ and cumulative inflows $< 0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$

The transitions between the different states will not be instantaneous, but will take place gradually. Breaching can occur due to a slow increase in water level or due to a freshet ( $> 0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ ) filling up the estuary and triggering a breaching event.

A simple basin model was therefore developed in which river inflows into the estuary were accumulated to estimate the volume in the system. The volume, in turn was used to evaluate probable mouth conditions and the salinity regime of the system.

Assumptions and limitation of the water balance model:

- The simulated average monthly flows are of low confidence because there were no river inflow data available to calibrate the data set for this system.
- The water balance model was validated against Dr P Cowley's mouth observations for the period 1993 to 2002. Based on the data set, breachings occurred in 2 to 3 months of the year on average.
- The East Kleinemonde Estuary's breaching levels varied between 1.5 m MSL and 2.2 m MSL for the period 2005 to 2006. There was a relationship between the height of the berm and periods between breachings, i.e. the longer the system was closed the higher the berm.
- The water balance model assumes that the East Kleinemonde will breach naturally at approximately 1.8 m MSL to accommodate the observed frequency of breachings.
- At a breaching level of 1.8 m MSL there is about 450 000  $\text{m}^3$  of water in the estuary.
- Mouth closure occurred between 0.5 m MSL and 1.0 m MSL. Tidal action can still contribute to the volume of water behind the berm at levels up to 1.3 m MSL. For the purpose of the water balance model mouth closure was taken to occur at a water level of ~0.9 m MSL which relates to a volume of about 150 000  $\text{m}^3$ .
- Seepage is estimated to be  $\sim 0.02 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  to  $0.01 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ , depending on the water level in the estuary behind the berm. It was assumed that losses due to seepage were cancelled out by the fact that sea water overwash was not included in the model, that breaching levels vary by more than 0.7 m and that there is a low confidence in the river inflow scenarios.
- The overwash state was not included in the water balance model as overwash events remain a constant, i.e. sea conditions do not change. As the system remains closed for somewhat longer periods under the Future Scenarios, overwash may be slightly reduced under Scenario 1 and 2.

---

**Abiotic State 1: Intermittently open/closed (high flow)**

**Typical flow patterns:** Average monthly inflow volume greater than  $0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ .

Confidence: Medium

**State of the mouth:** The mouth is intermittently open varying from 1-28 days at a time depending on the inflow volume.

Confidence: Medium

**Flood plain inundation patterns:** This state does not result in inundation of the flood plain, except under flood conditions for short periods at a time (during the peak flood event).

Confidence: Medium

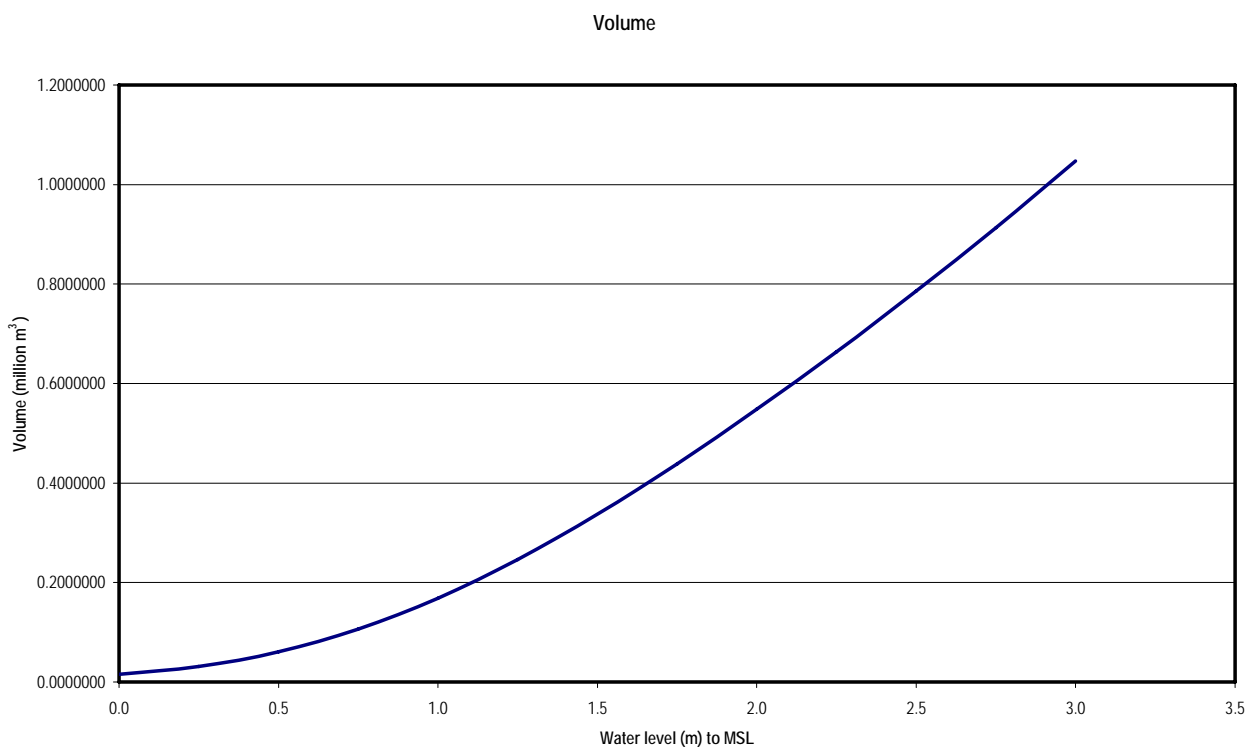
**Amplitude of tidal variation (indicative of exposure of intertidal areas during low tide):** Tidal variation will only occur during the intermittently open days (1-28 days at a time). When open, a tidal variation range of between 0.1 and 1.0 m has been recorded for the East Kleinemonde (DWAF water level recorder).

Confidence: Medium

**Retention times of water masses:** During the open phase retention time is probably of very short duration (less than one day). Retention times during the intermittently closed state depend on duration of closure.

Confidence: Medium

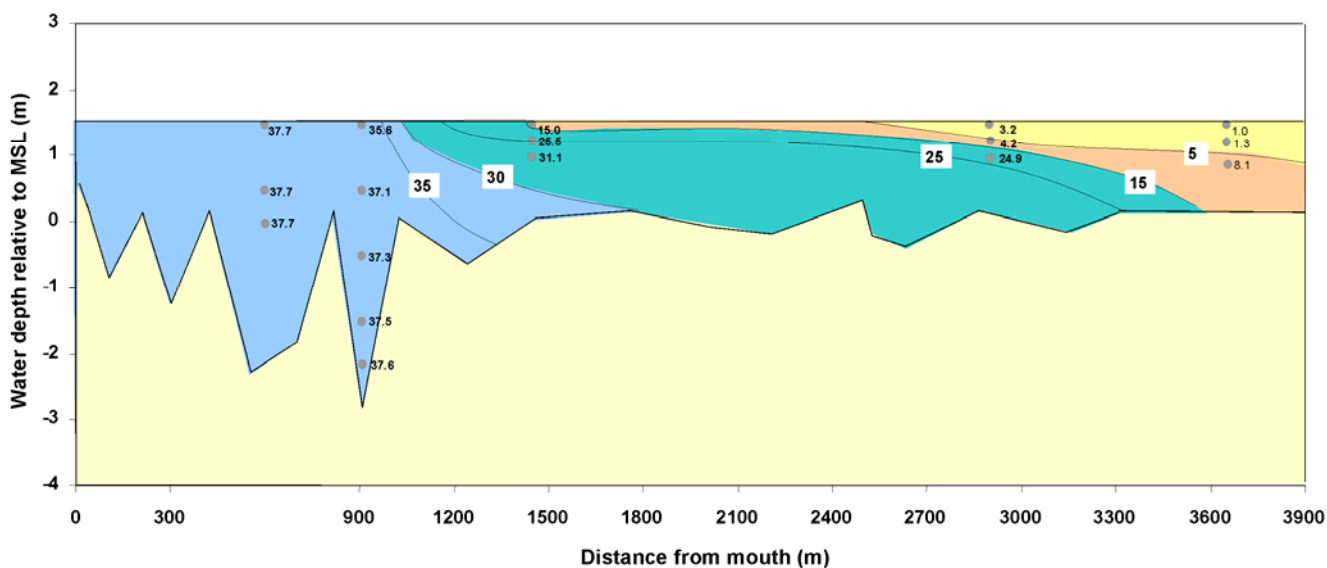
**Total volume:** Between  $0.031 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  (at 0 m to MSL) and  $0.25 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  (at 1.25 m to MSL)



Confidence: Medium

---

**Salinity distributions in the estuary:** This state is driven by a high flow event and the system will initially be flushed, reverting to a strong marine influence within a day, but leaving a significant plug of freshwater in the upper reaches. The resultant salinity distribution during this state is therefore considered to be as follows:



*Confidence: Medium*

**System variables (temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen and turbidity):**

**Temperature:** Mainly seasonally driven with summer temperature usually between 20 and 25°C and winter temperature typically between 13 and 20 °C.

**pH:** Range between 7.7 and 8.3

**Dissolved oxygen:** The system is expected to remain well oxygenated with DO levels not dropping below 4 mg ℓ<sup>-1</sup> (during this state the estuary is not likely to be closed for extended periods).

**Turbidity:** Turbidity in the system is variable with a median concentration of 36 NTU during intermittently open periods. On occasions, turbidity levels have spiked to values greater than 100 NTU during intermittently open periods. This is attributed to the stronger riverine influence (generally higher turbidity) during the open state, as well as stronger water turbulence (strong tidal exchange) that may resuspend bottom sediments within the estuary.

*Confidence: Medium*

**Nutrients:** Dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN, mainly present as NO<sub>3</sub>-N) concentrations in river inflow during high flow events are exceptionally high under the Present State (> 2500 µg ℓ<sup>-1</sup> - based on data collected during September 2006), associated with anthropogenic inputs (e.g. agricultural fertilizers). These concentrations were probably much lower under the Reference Condition (100-200 µg ℓ<sup>-1</sup>). DIN concentrations of seawater entering the system are about 160µg ℓ<sup>-1</sup>.

Under the Reference Condition, DIN concentrations in the system were re-set to around 100-200 µg ℓ<sup>-1</sup> every time the mouth opened (because DIN concentrations in the river and sea source waters were similar), with water column primary production reducing DIN stocks during the intermittently closed periods. However, under the Present State, DIN concentrations in the upper reaches (low salinity areas) are probably re-set to around 1500-2500 µg ℓ<sup>-1</sup> (because DIN concentrations in river inflows are an order of magnitude higher than under the Reference Condition) every time the system opens, with re-setting concentration in the lower reaches remaining similar to that of the Reference Condition (100-200 µg ℓ<sup>-1</sup>) (seawater concentrations have probably not been modified).

Dissolved inorganic phosphate (DIP) concentrations in both river inflow and seawater entering the system are relatively low, being with the range 20–30 µg ℓ<sup>-1</sup>. During this state, DIP concentrations in the system are re-set to 20-30 µg ℓ<sup>-1</sup> every time the mouth opens, with DIP stocks being reduced by water column primary production during the intermittently closed periods.

Dissolved reactive silicate (DRS) concentrations in river inflow and seawater entering the system are about 7000 and 500  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ , respectively. During this state, DRS concentrations in the upper reaches (low salinity areas) are probably re-set to around 5000-7000  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  (because DIN concentrations in river inflows are high) every time the system opens, with re-setting concentrations in the lower reaches of around 500  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ . DRS stocks may also be reduced during the closed period, e.g. due to diatom productivity.

Confidence: Low/Medium

---

**State 2: Intermittently open/closed (low flows)**

**Typical flow patterns:** Average monthly inflow volume less than  $0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  but cumulative inflows greater than  $0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$

Confidence: Medium

---

**State of the mouth:** The mouth is intermittently open varying from 1-3 days at a time.

Confidence: Medium

---

**Flood plain inundation patterns:** This state does not result in inundation of the flood plain.

Confidence: Medium

---

**Amplitude of tidal variation (indicative of exposure of intertidal areas during low tide):** Tidal variation will only occur during the intermittently open days (1-3 days at a time). When open, a tidal variation of between 0.1 and 0.7 m has been recorded for the East Kleinemonde.

Confidence: Medium

---

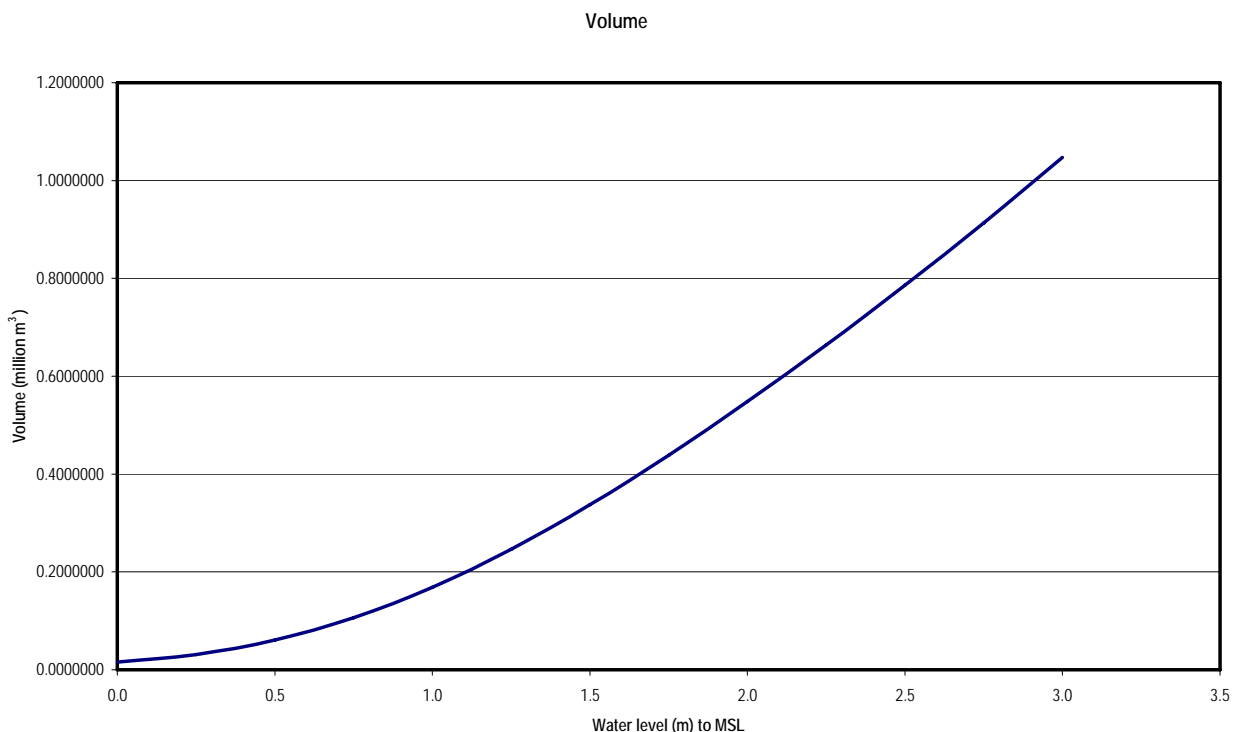
**Retention times of water masses:** During the open days, retention time is probably very short (less than one day). Retention times during the intermittently closed state depend on duration of closure.

Confidence: Medium

---

**Total volume:** Between  $0.031 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  (at 0 m to MSL) and  $0.25 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  (at 1.25 m to MSL)

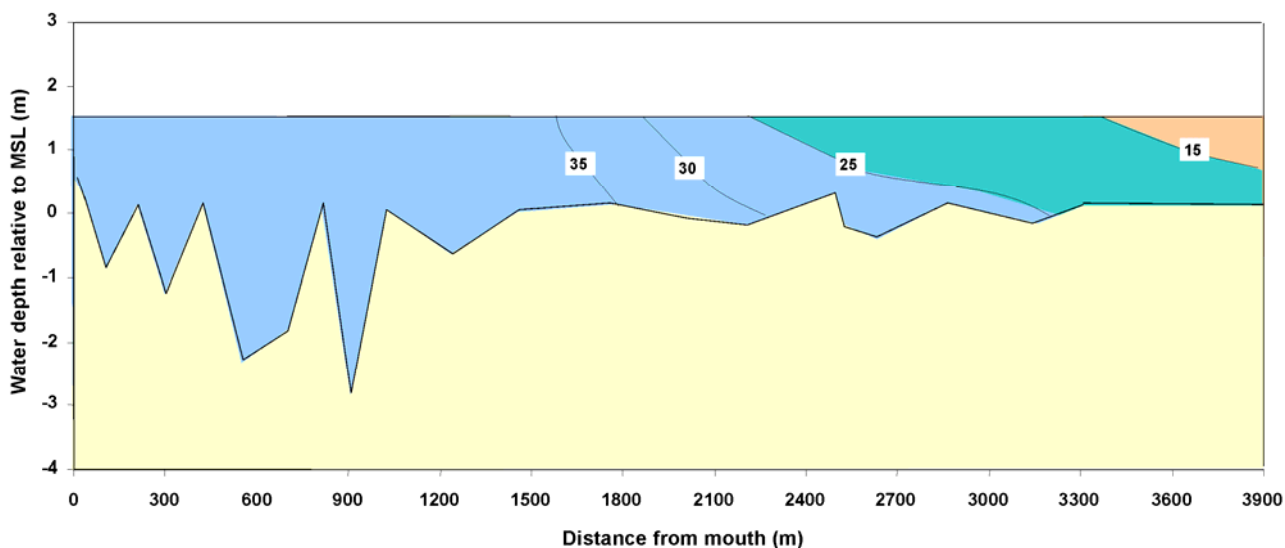
---



Confidence: Medium

---

**Salinity distributions in the estuary:** Breaching during this state is driven by periods of extended low river inflow. When it breaches the system is therefore still estuarine (~15 psu), but just after breaching seawater intrudes far upstream. The resultant salinity distribution during this state is therefore considered to be as follows:



*Confidence: Low*

**System variables (temperature, pH, suspended solids, turbidity and dissolved oxygen):**

**Temperature:** Mainly seasonally driven with summer temperatures typically between 20 and 25°C and winter temperatures typically between 13 and 20 °C.

**pH:** Range between 7.7 and 8.3

**Dissolved oxygen:** The system will tend to remain well oxygenated, with oxygen levels not dropping below 4 mg l<sup>-1</sup> (during this state the estuary is not likely to be closed for extended periods).

**Turbidity:** Turbidity in the system is variable with a median concentration of 36 NTU during intermittently open periods. On occasions, turbidity levels have spiked to values greater than 100 NTU during intermittently open periods. This can probably be largely attributed to stronger water turbulence (strong tidal exchange) that may resuspend bottom sediments (flow is not considered to be of a magnitude to have a significant influence on turbidity level).

*Confidence: Medium*

**Nutrients:** River inflow is not expected to have a marked influence on water column nutrient concentration, except maybe in the very upper reaches. During this state, the water column is primarily flushed with fresh seawater every time the mouth opens, in the absence of strong river inflow. DIN, DIP and DRS concentrations in seawater entering this system are about 160, 20 and 500 µg l<sup>-1</sup>, respectively.

During this state, therefore, DIN, DIP and DRS concentrations in the system are re-set to around 160, 20 and 500 µg l<sup>-1</sup>, respectively, every time the mouth opens, with water column primary production (and possibly other biogeochemical processes) reducing stocks during the intermittently closed periods.

Note that DIN concentrations in river inflow during low flow periods are probably higher under the Present State (~500 µg l<sup>-1</sup> - extrapolating from data collected during March 2006) due to associated anthropogenic inputs (i.e. fertilizers) than under the Reference Condition (100-200 µg l<sup>-1</sup>). Therefore, under the Present State, elevated DIN concentrations (~300-500 µg l<sup>-1</sup>) can be present in the very upper reaches of the system even during low inflow periods (concentrations in river water are high, therefore even a small volume can result in a measurable increase).

*Confidence: Low/Medium*

---

**Abiotic State 3: Closed Mouth**

**Typical flow patterns:** Average monthly inflow volume less than  $0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  and cumulative inflows also less than  $0.3 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ .

Confidence: Medium

**State of the mouth:** The mouth is closed.

Confidence: Medium

**Flood plain inundation patterns:** This state does not result in extended inundation of the flood plain. Some limited inundation of saltmarsh may occur at water levels above 1.8 m MSL.

Confidence: Medium

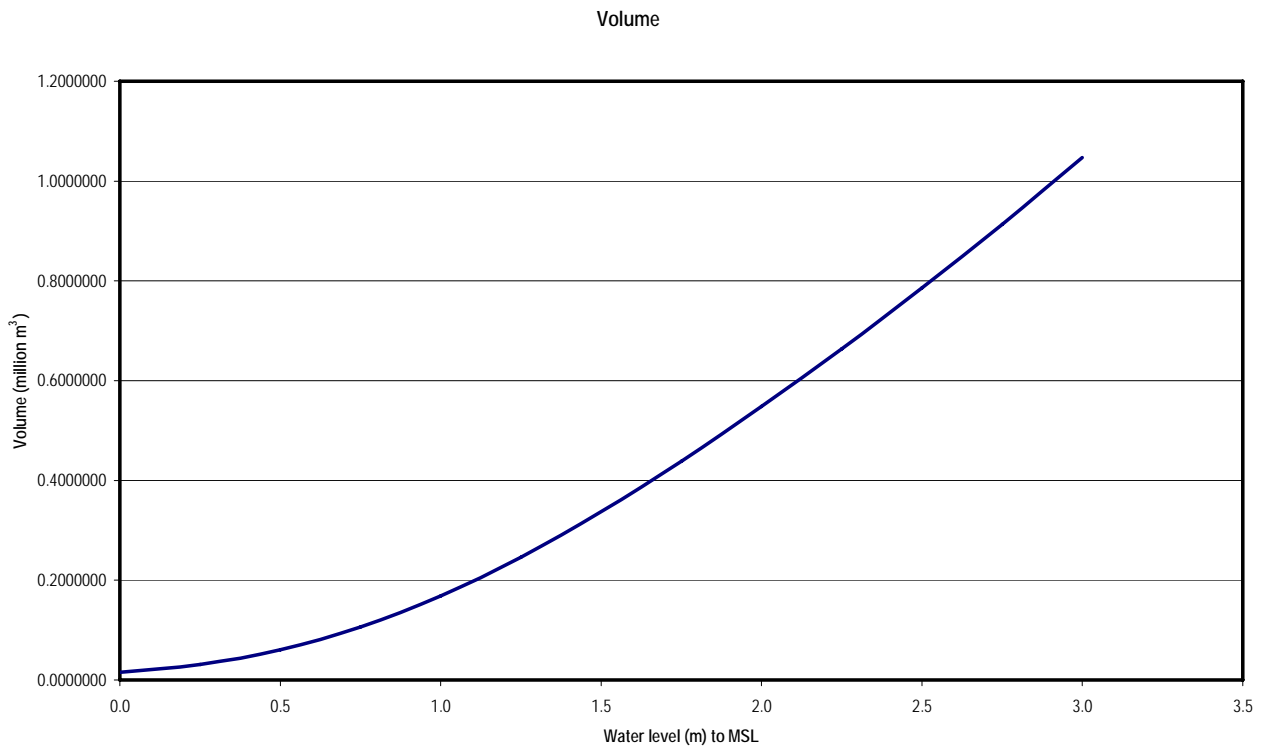
**Amplitude of tidal variation (indicative of exposure of intertidal areas during low tide):** No tidal variation occurs during this state. Variations in flow result in variations in water levels related to the balance between river inflow, water levels and seepage through the berm.

Confidence: Medium

**Retention time of water mass:** The retention time will last as long as the mouth stays close.

Confidence: Medium

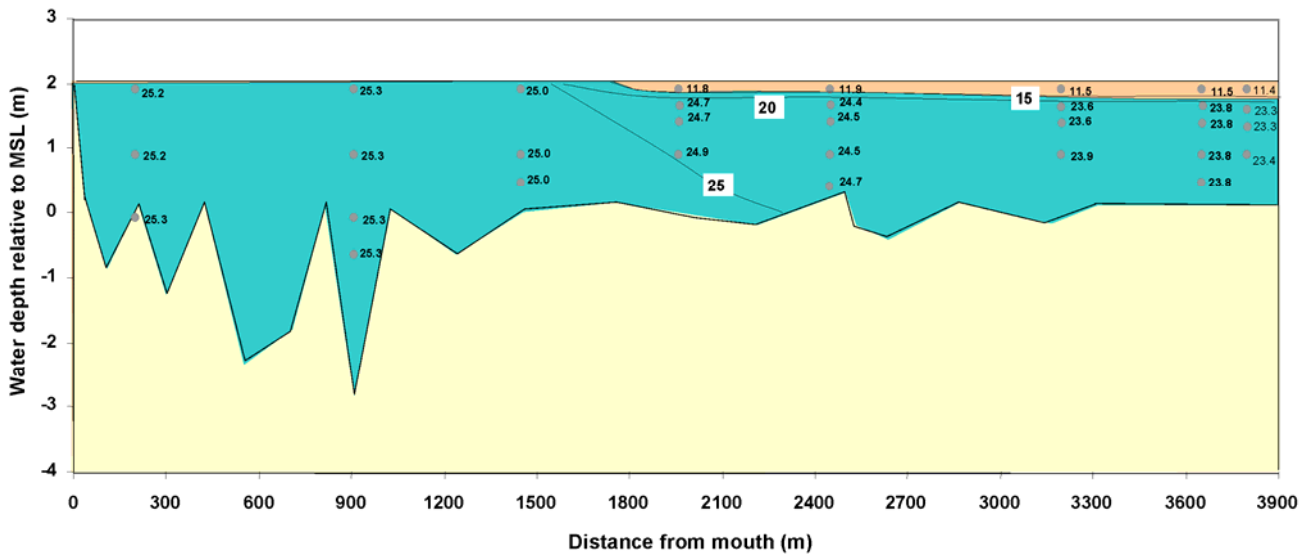
**Total volume:** Between  $0.06 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  (at 0.5 m to MSL) and  $0.66 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  (at 2.25 m to MSL)



Confidence: Medium

---

**Salinity distribution in the estuary:** When the estuary closes it is usually saline (values > 25 psu). During periods of extended mouth closure, when river inflow is low, the system becomes relatively homogenous with salinities ranging between 25 to 15 psu. Small surface freshwater plugs can occur at times as illustrated below:



Confidence: Medium

**System variables (temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen and turbidity):**

**Temperature:** Mainly seasonally driven with summer temperatures typically between 20 and 25°C and winter temperatures typically between 13 and 20°C)

**pH:** Range between 7.7 and 8.3

**Dissolved oxygen:** The system is expected to be generally well oxygenated, with DO levels not dropping below 4 mg ℓ<sup>-1</sup>. However, during extended periods of closure, bottom waters (< 1m) may on occasions drop below 2 mg ℓ<sup>-1</sup> (although this is rather the exception than the rule).

**Turbidity:** Turbidity in the system is variable during this state. Median concentration recorded during the closed state was 12 NTU.

Confidence: Medium

**Nutrients:** During this state DIN and DIP concentrations in the system are essentially depleted, with sporadic (although limited) replenishment associated with over wash (lower reaches near the mouth) and low flows (upper surface reaches). Although a similar scenario follows for DRS, stocks are not completely depleted during this state.

Confidence: Low/Medium

## 1.2 Description of Present State

### 3.2.1 Abiotic Components

#### a) Seasonal variability in river inflow

Monthly simulated runoff data for the Present State is provided in Table 3.1. A summary of the flow distribution pattern (mean monthly flows in  $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the Present State of the East Kleinemonde Estuary, derived from the 83-year simulated data set, is provided below:

	OCT	NOV	DEC	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP
99%ile	0.795	1.191	0.742	0.313	0.830	1.531	1.070	2.753	1.250	0.961	0.960	1.538
90%ile	0.234	0.232	0.168	0.093	0.053	0.173	0.197	0.157	0.206	0.117	0.125	0.225
80%ile	0.122	0.079	0.070	0.024	0.025	0.082	0.064	0.055	0.045	0.041	0.043	0.079
70%ile	0.081	0.052	0.034	0.009	0.016	0.027	0.045	0.021	0.014	0.018	0.025	0.033
60%ile	0.043	0.034	0.018	0.004	0.007	0.014	0.026	0.010	0.010	0.007	0.012	0.019
50%ile	0.019	0.020	0.008	0.002	0.003	0.008	0.010	0.005	0.004	0.004	0.006	0.010
40%ile	0.007	0.016	0.004	0.001	0.002	0.003	0.004	0.002	0.002	0.001	0.001	0.005
30%ile	0.003	0.006	0.002	0.000	0.000	0.002	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.003
20%ile	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
10%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

#### b) Present flood regime

The flood regime is judged to be very similar to that under reference conditions based on the fact that the simulated monthly runoff data indicate very little change for months of flow higher than  $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 1.8% decrease in the floods to the estuary from natural to present day flows.

*Confidence: Medium*

#### c) Present sediment processes

The hydrological data indicate that the magnitude and occurrence of major floods has hardly been reduced. This also means that the flushing of sediments during such floods has hardly been reduced. It is therefore likely that the sedimentation in the estuary is not much different from what it was under natural conditions. There may be a slight increase in erosion in the catchment due to changes in land-use.


*Confidence: Low*

**Table 0.1** Simulated monthly volumes (million m<sup>3</sup>) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for the Present State.

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breach	High Flow Breach
1920	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.33	0.15	0.36	0.39	0.41	0.43	0.44	1	1
1921	0.45	0.15	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.36	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.36	4	3
1922	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.21	0.23	0.25	0.32	0.36	0.37	5	4
1923	0.39	0.43	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.22	0.23	1	0
1924	0.23	0.23	0.33	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.33	0.36	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.15	2	1
1925	0.20	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.28	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.34	0	0
1926	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.28	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	1	1
1927	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.15	4	2
1928	0.15	0.37	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.28	0.15	5	4
1929	0.15	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.24	0.25	0.28	0.35	2	1
1930	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.38	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.41	0.15	0.19	3	1
1931	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.44	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.17	0.18	0.15	5	4
1932	0.15	0.15	0.24	0.25	0.27	0.27	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.38	0.15	4	2
1933	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.21	0.22	0.15	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.19	4	3
1934	0.21	0.35	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.40	5	5
1935	0.15	0.30	0.38	0.45	0.15	0.20	0.23	0.28	0.30	0.32	0.33	0.33	2	0
1936	0.15	0.15	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.32	3	3
1937	0.32	0.34	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.36	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	2	2
1938	0.39	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.25	5	5
1939	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	5	4
1940	0.40	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.24	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	3	2
1941	0.20	0.25	0.15	0.32	0.34	0.35	0.36	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	2	0
1942	0.41	0.15	0.16	0.33	0.38	0.38	0.15	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.27	0.29	2	0
1943	0.29	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.33	0.15	0.24	0.31	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.15	3	2
1944	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.42	0.43	0.43	0.43	0	0
1945	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.23	1	0
1946	0.23	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.32	0.35	0.41	0.15	0.22	0.23	2	1
1947	0.23	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	2	2
1948	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.32	1	1
1949	0.32	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.18	0.19	4	4
1950	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.15	5	5
1951	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.27	0.30	0.31	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	3	2
1952	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.42	0.15	2	2
1953	0.15	0.15	0.42	0.43	0.44	0.15	0.26	0.15	0.33	0.39	0.15	0.35	5	4
1954	0.45	0.15	0.25	0.31	0.40	0.43	0.45	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.23	2	0
1955	0.26	0.33	0.35	0.35	0.15	0.20	0.21	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	2	0
1956	0.22	0.27	0.40	0.43	0.15	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	2	1
1957	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.19	0.19	2	2
1958	0.20	0.20	0.38	0.15	0.16	0.22	0.31	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.37	1	0
1959	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.27	1	0
1960	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.21	0.22	0.23	0.31	0.34	0.35	0.35	0.35	1	0
1961	0.35	0.39	0.41	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	1	1
1962	0.15	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.25	0.31	0.33	5	4
1963	0.33	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.15	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.15	3	2
1964	0.40	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.29	0.43	0.15	0.18	0.19	2	0
1965	0.30	0.15	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.37	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.22	2	1
1966	0.23	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.29	0.31	0.35	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.15	0.22	3	2
1967	0.27	0.30	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.35	0.42	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.28	2	2

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breach	High Flow Breach
1968	0.32	0.34	0.35	0.35	0.37	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	1	0
1969	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.15	0.15	2	2
1970	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.23	0.26	0.15	0.32	0.34	0.37	0.44	0.15	5	4
1971	0.21	0.23	0.28	0.30	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.24	0.25	0.26	1	0
1972	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.27	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.36	0.39	0	0
1973	0.39	0.15	0.19	0.28	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	8	7
1974	0.29	0.38	0.44	0.15	0.22	0.25	0.27	0.29	0.30	0.31	0.33	0.15	2	1
1975	0.15	0.17	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.33	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.15	0.21	3	3
1976	0.37	0.15	0.18	0.19	0.15	0.37	0.40	0.15	0.29	0.34	0.38	0.41	3	1
1977	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.32	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.31	0.42	0.15	6	4
1978	0.45	0.15	0.26	0.31	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.39	0.40	0.15	0.15	0.15	4	3
1979	0.28	0.37	0.42	0.15	0.19	0.21	0.24	0.25	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.32	1	0
1980	0.33	0.40	0.42	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.41	0.15	0.24	0.15	0.32	5	4
1981	0.43	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.21	0.22	0.38	0.44	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.17	2	0
1982	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.26	0.26	1	1
1983	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.15	0.37	0.40	0.42	1	1
1984	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	1	0
1985	0.37	0.15	0.15	0.21	0.23	0.29	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.44	0.15	3	2
1986	0.20	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.36	0.39	0.41	0.44	0	0
1987	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.22	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.26	1	0
1988	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.41	0.45	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.15	1	0
1989	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.29	0.32	0.32	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.15	4	3
1990	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.31	0.34	0	0
1991	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.15	0.15	3	2
1992	0.15	0.36	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.44	0.15	0.18	0.36	2	1
1993	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.26	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.15	0.24	2	0
1994	0.24	0.24	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.30	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	2	2
1995	0.34	0.39	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.41	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0	0
1996	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.39	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	4	3
1997	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.15	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.30	0.34	0.36	1	1
1998	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.19	0.21	1	0
1999	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.45	3	3
2000	0.15	0.37	0.44	0.15	0.16	0.19	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.37	0.44	0.15	3	0
2001	0.19	0.32	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.15	0.15	3	3
2002	0.15	0.20	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.26	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.23	0.24	3	3
Average													2.52	1.69

 High Flow Breaching

 Low flow breaching

#### **d) Other Anthropogenic influences**

Anthropogenic influences, other than a modification of river inflow, that are presently affecting the abiotic characteristics in the estuary include:

---

##### **Structures (e.g. weirs, bridges, mouth stabilization):**

Historical aerial photographs (1938 to 2004) indicate that the main direct anthropogenic impact on the estuarine morphology upstream of the mouth has resulted from the road-bridge and embankments constructed in the early 1960s. The bridge permanently fixed the deep channel against the west bank. However, it seems that in this area the channel was always deeper towards the western side (being on the outside of the bend). After construction of the bridge, the sand bank on the eastern side downstream of the bridge, seems to have become slightly wider compared to the pre-bridge configuration but this area is very small in proportion to the entire estuary. The foregoing observations indicate that the bridge does not appear to have had a major impact on the physical dynamics of the estuary.

*Confidence: High*

---

##### **Discharges into estuary affecting water quality:**

Although there are residential developments along the banks of the estuary, measurements did not show any measurable influence of these on the water quality in the estuary (e.g. nutrient enrichment). Water quality in the estuary is mainly affected by agricultural activities in the catchment (e.g. DIN enrichment, organic loading and pesticides). However, increased fringing reed growth along the lower banks suggests some influence of freshwater/nutrient enrichment, e.g. associated with septic tank seepage

*Confidence: Medium*

---

##### **Human exploitation (consumptive or non-consumptive):**

With growing residential and holiday populations in the area, fish and bait resources in the estuary are under increasing pressure. Exploitation is generally confined to certain targeted species of invertebrates (e.g. sand prawns) and fishes (e.g. spotted grunter, leervis and white steenbras). Although most fishing and bait collecting activities are confined to the lower reaches, increasing use is being made of the middle and upper reaches by boat based anglers.

*Confidence: High*

---

##### **Artificial mouth breaching:**

N/A

---

### 3.2.2 Biotic Components

---

#### MICROALGAE

---

##### **Phytoplankton**

Present chlorophyll *a* concentrations are generally low reflective of the low levels of nutrients. The nutrients, however, do spike up during peak floods although they may not be available for uptake by phytoplankton. Open-mouth conditions initially reduce chlorophyll *a* levels, but subsequently these will increase when more stable conditions develop. Development on both banks of the estuary at present appears to have minimal influence on water column chlorophyll *a* concentrations although future impacts need to be examined. Closed-mouth conditions lengthen phytoplankton residence times although available nutrients become depleted resulting in low chlorophyll *a* levels. Species composition is presently characterised by the predominance of flagellates under open-mouth conditions. An increase in planktonic diatoms occurs under closed-mouth conditions but these are washed out to sea when the mouth opens. Impacts of development on phytoplankton species composition require further study.

##### **Benthic microalgae**

Present microphytobenthic (MPB) chlorophyll *a* concentrations are normally low, although significant increases are exhibited several days following breaching of the mouth when water with fresh supplies of nutrients flow through.. Sustained frequencies of mouth breaching keeps chlorophyll *a* concentrations low until the mouth closes then chlorophyll *a* concentrations recover to previous levels. High levels of turbidity reduce light reaching the sediment during flood and post flood events until stable and clear-water transparency conditions are re-established. Seepage areas are sources of additional nutrient input for MPBs and are likely to influence benthic primary production. Development on the banks of the East Kleinemonde is probably impacting on MPB production, however its overall effects are currently considered as minimal. Present benthic microalgal community composition includes diatoms, greens and cyanobacteria. Future increased development might increase allochthonous nutrient input from seepage sites including underground sources possibly shifting MPB community structure towards one composed more of a cyanobacterial assemblage.

Confidence: Medium

---

#### MACROPHYTES

---

##### **Biomass distribution**

The macrophytes of the East Kleinemonde Estuary cover a total area of 36.21 ha. Supratidal salt marsh (6.36 ha) occurs at 1.8 m above MSL with species such as *Sarcocornia pillansii*, *Sporobolus virginicus*, *Paspalum vaginatum*, *Juncus kraussii* and *Limonium scabrum*. These areas do not become flooded for extended periods. Intertidal salt marsh covers 4.04 ha. The dominant species is *Sarcocornia perennis* with the annual *Salicornia meyeriana* and *Sporobolus virginicus* occurring at lower elevation (< 1.3 m above MSL). Salt marsh occurs above the R72 bridge and represents 14% of the total estuarine vegetation. In the middle reaches the banks become steep and intertidal areas narrow so that salt marsh is limited to isolated locations.

*Phragmites australis* (1.01 ha) occurs in isolated stands along the length of the estuary immediately below and above the R72 bridge. Those stands became established after the construction of the bridge.

Submerged macrophytes in the East Kleinemonde are represented by *Chara* spp., *Ruppia* spp., *Halophila ovalis* and *Potamogeton pectinatus*. At water levels > 1.5 m above MSL this habitat becomes established after inundation for one to two months to cover an area of 0.5 ha. Given stable, clear water levels they have the potential to occupy 14.5 ha. Water column salinity determines species composition; *Ruppia* spp. occur at 0-45 psu, Charophytes at 0-20 psu and *Potamogeton pectinatus* at <15 psu.

##### **Species diversity, richness and rarity**

Seven of the nine possible plant community types occur here; only mangroves and swamp forest are absent. The large submerged macrophyte beds (40 % of estuarine areas) are important as they have diverse faunal communities associated with them, including rare fish species. Salt marsh and submerged macrophytes have low species richness because of the stressful environment.

##### **Seasonal and inter-annual variability, including flood situations and drought conditions**

Past rainfall records show that in 1939, 1974, 2005 and 2006, rainfall figures of 862.4 mm, 1254.7 mm, 1286 mm and 836.5 mm respectively were recorded, thus indicating the occurrence of cyclical 1:30 year floods. The hypothesis is that these floods remove large quantities of sediment, reducing the base level of the estuary and increase the frequency and duration of mouth opening. The reduction in the closed mouth state results in lower cover of submerged macrophytes. Regular breaching (>2.6 times a year) and short periods (< 6 months) of closed mouth conditions with water level below 1.5 m MSL prevent the germination and expansion of submerged macrophytes. Although the East Kleinemonde was closed for 6 months in 2006, average biomass of *Ruppia cirrhosa* only reached 706 g DM m<sup>-2</sup>. *Chara* was 599.48 g DM m<sup>-2</sup> and *Halophila ovalis* 101 g DM m<sup>-2</sup>.

Regrowth of submerged macrophytes following river flooding depends on seeds and is therefore slow. During drought conditions the mouth remains closed for long periods thus allowing an increase in growth and expansion of submerged macrophytes.

Confidence: High

---

---

## INVERTEBRATES

### Zooplankton

#### **Biomass**

The zooplankton biomass in the estuary is within the range reported for other temporarily open/closed estuaries in the same region. Due to the lack of any distinct horizontal pattern in salinity and temperature, there were no apparent spatial patterns in the total zooplankton biomass and species composition during the closed phase. The total zooplankton biomass will decrease during periods of breaching.

#### **Species diversity and richness**

The zooplankton diversity within the estuary is similar to that found in temporarily open/closed estuaries in the region, but lower than that recorded in the larger permanently open systems. The community is typically comprised of typical estuarine species, mainly copepods.

#### **Seasonal and interannual variability**

Changes in the zooplankton community are strongly linked to mouth phase (open versus closed) and the establishment of a link to the marine environment during overtopping events. During prolonged mouth closure (months), maximum zooplankton biomass will be achieved although diversity is likely to be reduced as a result of poor representation of marine breeding species within the system. The overtopping events contribute to an increase in the zooplankton diversity within the system as marine breeding invertebrates recruit into the estuary.

Confidence: High

### Hyperbenthos (*Palaemon peringueyi*)

#### **Biomass**

The total biomass of *P. peringueyi* within the estuary is in the range reported for other temporarily open/closed estuaries in the region. On the other hand, the estimates are lower than those recorded in the larger permanently open counterparts. The reduced values recorded in temporarily open systems can be linked to reduced recruitment opportunities and habitat availability (extensive beds of submerged macrophytes). Maximum biomass is typically attained in those regions characterised by extensive cover of submerged macrophytes (mainly middle reaches).

#### **Seasonal and interannual variability**

The recruitment of *P. peringueyi* into temporarily open/closed estuaries is strongly linked to mouth phase. During prolonged mouth closure, total biomass of *P. peringueyi* is likely to decline due to limited recruitment opportunities. Breaching events are associated with a decline in the biomass of the shrimp in the estuary when biomass rich estuarine waters are exported to the marine environment.

Confidence: High

### Macrobenthos

#### **Biomass**

The biomass of the benthic community can be divided into two distinct groups – a sand community found from the road bridge and extending towards the sea. Above the road bridge a distinct mud community is found. In comparison to adjacent estuaries, invertebrate biomass is considered to be high. Zonation within each of these communities will only develop if a strong salinity gradient develops along the estuary and the mouth remains open for periods > 1 month. A strong salinity gradient along the estuary will only influence the upper and lower reaches (freshwater and marine associated communities). Because high rainfall and relatively strong flow occurs infrequently (1939, 1974, 2005/6) to create these conditions, community biomass will remain relatively high and homogeneous within sandy or muddy areas for extended periods.

#### **Species diversity, richness and rarity**

The number of macrobenthic species recorded in the East Kleinemonde is approximately 30, a level about 80-100% lower when compared to permanently open, marine dominated systems, and 40-50% higher when compared to freshwater dominated estuaries in the same biogeographical region. Within the temporarily open/closed estuaries group, the East Kleinemonde supports a relatively rich community in the upper quartile of the average for the estuary type. The community is also composed of typical estuarine species, a group well adapted to environmental fluctuations.

#### **Seasonal and interannual variability**

Changes in water level and the concomitant changes in submerged macrophyte distribution are the main drivers that influence macrobenthic community structure. No strong seasonal variability is apparent. Macrobenthic community variability therefore responds to changes in the submerged macrophytes that in turn, respond to flood cycles and mouth condition. During periods of extended mouth closure (months), the microphytobenthos, epiphytes and submerged macrophytes increase in biomass and this will in turn increase biomass of primary food sources, particularly POM. There is evidence to suggest that microphytobenthos is more important in sandy areas (Station 1), while submerged macrophytes become more important upstream at muddy sites.

Confidence: High

---

## FISH

### **Distribution and biomass**

Although many species of fish occur throughout the estuary, a number of taxa show preferences for particular regions, e.g. the white steenbras *Lithognathus lithognathus* is most frequently recorded in the sandy lower reaches. Other species may change their distribution patterns according to mouth phase, e.g. the estuarine round-herring *Gilchristella aestuaria* is more abundant in the middle and upper reaches during the closed mouth phase but most of the population retreats into the lower reaches during the open mouth phase.

Fish biomass within the estuary is highest during the closed mouth phase when the volume and surface area of the estuary is at a maximum. Breeding of the dominant estuarine and freshwater fish species also occurs during the closed phase when physico-chemical conditions are most stable. Recruitment by the larvae and 0+ juveniles of most marine migrant fish species occurs when the mouth is open but some of these taxa are also able to enter the estuary during marine overwash events. Emigration of sub-adult and adult marine fishes to the sea occurs almost exclusively during the open mouth phase. Fish biomass in the East Kleinemonde Estuary is variable with a total of 28 g m<sup>-2</sup> recorded during 1995 closed phase.

### **Species diversity, richness and rarity**

The East Kleinemonde fish community can be divided into two broad groups, estuarine residents and marine migrants. Small temporarily open/closed estuaries (TOCEs) such as the East Kleinemonde tend to have fewer fish species than larger TOCEs or permanently open estuaries (POEs). TOCEs also tend to have a higher proportion of estuarine resident taxa when compared to POEs. The lack of marine stragglers in TOCEs tends to reduce the species richness of these systems when compared to POEs. Although the majority of fish species occurring in IOEs tend to be taxa that are tolerant of a range of estuarine conditions and are abundant, there is one fish in the East Kleinemonde that is extremely rare and endangered, viz. the estuarine pipefish *Syngnathus watermeyerii*.

### **Seasonal and interannual variability**

Seasonal and interannual variability in the East Kleinemonde fish assemblage is driven primarily by opening and closing of the estuary mouth. The optimum recruitment period for the widest variety of marine fish species is during spring and early summer. Indeed, if the estuary remains closed over this period the fish assemblage will tend to differ markedly from that recorded when the mouth does open fully during this season.

Confidence: High

---

## BIRDS

### **Distribution**

The area between the bridge and the first sharp bend, encompassing the saltmarsh and floodplain, is the most frequented area of the estuary with 53% of birds occurring there in summer and 49% in winter. Twenty percent of birds occur in the middle reaches during summer and 16% in winter. Thirteen percent of birds are found in the upper reaches of the estuary during summer (winter: 11%)

Spatial variation in community composition along the estuary is linked to habitat differences. Wading piscivores and invertebrate feeding waders utilise areas of shallow water in the floodplain and saltmarsh throughout the year. Pursuit swimming piscivores (cormorants, grebes, darters) feed in water depths > 0.3 m. Overall, aerial divers occur relatively evenly along the length of the estuary, but kingfishers and African Fish Eagles prefer the upper reaches of the estuary, while terns and gulls are most common in the lower regions.

While most species feed in the estuary, some of the more abundant species do not use the estuary as their main feeding area. Many wading piscivores use the bushveld vegetation on the steep banks as roosting and nesting sites, but frequently fly to the adjacent West Kleinemonde estuary to feed.

### **Species diversity, richness and rarity**

Forth-eight non-passerine waterbird species have been recorded on the estuary with 17 families in 6 orders. Charadriiformes make up the majority (47%) of species, 29% of species belong to the Order Ciconiiformes, 10% to Anseriiformes and 8% to Coraciiformes. Only one record exists for the uncommon to rare African Finfoot, which is currently classified as a vulnerable species. Piscivorous birds dominate the avifauna of the East Kleinemonde estuary, making up 70% of individuals. Invertebrate feeding waders form the second most numerous component (24%). Waterfowl are particularly scarce in the estuary, making up only about 6% of birds.

### **Seasonal variability**

The average number of waterbird species recorded in a single count is 34 in summer and 32 in winter. A total of 16 species are long-distance migrants and occur only during the summer months. In summer, the piscivorous component is dominated by wading piscivores (herons, egrets, spoonbills, ibises). The percentage of pursuit swimming piscivores (cormorants, grebes and darters) rises considerably in winter from 16% to 27%. Aerial diver numbers remain relatively constant throughout the year. Non-migrating waders increase in winter, while migratory waders are virtually absent from the estuary during this time. Waterfowl are only present in small numbers, but their numbers do increase in the winter months. An average of 62 and 65 individuals were recorded per count in summer and winter respectively.

Confidence: High

---

**a) Effect of abiotic characteristics on estuarine biota**

Effect of abiotic characteristics and processes, as well as other biotic components on estuarine biota:

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
<p><i>Mouth condition (provide temporal implications where applicable)</i></p>	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b>            Under the present state (PS) extended periods of mouth closure (&gt;2 months) increase estuarine water volume, hence increasing colonisable habitat by phytoplankton. Improved residence period may support higher chlorophyll a biomass depending on residual macronutrient pool. Open-mouth state initially decreases chlorophyll a concentrations as a result of loss of estuarine water from flushing followed by a gradual increase in chlorophyll a in response to improved nutrient supply (i.e. 4-5 weeks post breaching event). Closed-mouth state (&gt;2 months) supports diatom assemblage while an open mouth state favours a flagellated community (i.e. dinoflagellates &amp; cryptophytes).</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b>            Extended periods of mouth closure (&gt;2 months) increase the colonisable subtidal estuarine sediment habitat. Improved water-column transparency supports increased chlorophyll a biomass. Strong flows under an open-mouth state scour sediment substrate, completely removing established MPB habitat, thus reducing available habitat &amp; MPB biomass. Mouth breaching from low flows reduce MPB habitat, but may temporarily stimulate residual MPB populations &amp; biomass by increasing the photic depth as estuarine water level is reduced.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>
	<p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>Under closed mouth conditions with low water levels (&lt; 1.3 m above MSL) intertidal salt marsh is unaffected. Open mouth conditions for periods are important for salt marsh seed germination. The best time of the year for germination is probably spring/summer. Seedling emergence in the intertidal areas commences three days after mouth breaching and seeds germinate intermittently thereafter for 3 months, providing the mouth remains open.</p> <p>Frequent mouth opening and draining events (more than twice a year) prevent submerged macrophyte establishment. Submerged macrophytes develop when the mouth is closed and water levels are &gt;1.5 m above MSL. Because of the increase in open mouth conditions during 2006, submerged macrophyte cover was 4.5% of optimal cover.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrozoobenthos</b>            The structure and biomass of the macrozoobenthos is strongly linked to submerged macrophyte dynamics. Opening of the estuary mouth followed by draining of the water body lead to a decrease in macrophyte biomass and this in turn will lead to changes in the macrobenthic community. Spatial variability in community structure will increase, while overall biomass of the macrozoobenthos will decline.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
	<p><b>Zooplankton</b>  The zooplankton community structure and biomass is strongly linked to mouth phase. The breaching of the estuary coincides with a decrease in the total zooplankton biomass and an increase in the zooplankton diversity. Spatial variability in the zooplankton biomass will not be affected by mouth phase.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b>  The recruitment of <i>P.peringueyi</i> into temporarily open closed estuaries is strongly linked to mouth phase. Maximum recruitment of the shrimp larvae into the estuary coincides with breaching events. Similarly, the breaching events are associated with a decline in the biomass of the shrimp in the estuary.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <hr/> <p><b><u>Fish:</u></b>  Closed mouth conditions are associated with maximum vegetation cover and optimum availability of food resources for marine, estuarine and freshwater fish species. The dominant freshwater Mozambique tilapia <i>Oreochromis mossambicus</i> can only construct breeding nests under closed mouth conditions and its reproductive success is directly linked to the predominant mouth state during spring and summer. Reduced plant, invertebrate and fish stocks during the open mouth conditions have a major impact on the numbers and biomass of fishes in the estuary during this phase. Loss of aquatic macrophytes due to frequent mouth breaching can lead to the loss of certain plant associated fish species, e.g. estuarine pipefish <i>Syngnathus watermeyeri</i>.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <hr/> <p><b><u>Birds:</u></b>  Piscivorous and invertebrate feeding bird numbers rise immediately after a breaching event. Birds then feed on fish stranded or trapped in puddles and on invertebrates in newly exposed sandbanks. The inundation of the saltmarsh during closed mouth conditions initially creates habitat for wading piscivores (herons, egrets, spoonbills, ibises) and waterfowl. If the water level rises further this habitat becomes unavailable again. Higher water levels associated with closed mouth conditions increase feeding habitat for piscivorous species that hunt by pursuit swimming (cormorants, darters, grebes). Low water levels during open mouth conditions lower available habitat for pursuit swimming piscivores and piscivorous wading birds (non-inundated saltmarsh) but create habitat (exposed sandbanks) for invertebrate feeding waders. Species feeding on submerged macrophytes (coots) are negatively affected by frequent breaching events that lead to loss of submerged macrophytes.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
<p><i>Exposure of inter-tidal areas during low tide</i></p>	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b> N/A</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b> True intertidal areas in intermittently open estuaries do not exist, since organisms that would inhabit this zone do not establish properly. Instead this area persists for only a very short period of time depending on riverine and tidal flow conditions. Therefore, under an open-mouth state this habitat is lost until the mouth closes and the estuary refills. Loss of habitat would mean a reduction in MPB chlorophyll <i>a</i> biomass, however this habitat would be regained when the estuary refills.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>Intertidal areas become inundated at water levels &gt; 1.3 m above MSL and if water levels remain &lt; 1.5 m above MSL, they are able to withstand inundation for 3 months. At water levels &gt; 1.5 m above MSL intertidal salt marsh dies back after 3 months inundation. Extended periods of mouth opening increase intertidal vegetation cover.</p> <p>Rapid tidal movement of water prevents submerged macrophytes from establishing during this phase although they may grow in the quiet backwater areas.</p> <p>Reeds (<i>Phragmites australis</i>) are not influenced by water level fluctuations because of its high position up the bank and any changes that occur are due to seasonal influences.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrobenthos</b> The diversity of the macrozoobenthos will decline in intertidal areas since only burrowing forms are likely to survive. Smaller species (e.g. amphipods) that live at the surface or utilize attached plants as habitat will decline because of greater environmental stress (e.g. increased heat and desiccation effects).</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b> The zooplankton community is unlikely to be affected.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b> The strong link between the distribution of <i>P.peringueyi</i> and macrophyte distribution suggests that the exposure of the inter-tidal regions will be associated with a decline in the biomass of the shrimp.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>Exposure of inter-tidal areas will force small fishes into the channel area where they will be more vulnerable to piscivorous fish predators. The lack of aquatic macrophytes in the channel will increase the vulnerability of small fishes that rely on submerged plant beds for food and shelter.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
	<p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>Invertebrate feeding waders feed in inter-tidal areas during low tide.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
<p><i>Sediment processes and characteristics</i></p>	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b> Under the open mouth state floods generate high levels of turbidity that reduce water-column light transparency, however since sediment processes have changed little from natural conditions there probably has been very little change in the effects of turbidity on the phytoplankton, although increased human activity in the catchment has probably increased suspended sediment load.</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b> There probably has been very little change from natural conditions in the effects of sediment processes on benthic microalgae under the PS. Therefore, sediment loss and accrual remains similar to natural conditions, although activities in the catchment may have slightly increased sediment transport and deposition in the estuary.</p> <p>Confidence: Low/Medium:</p>
	<p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>Localised sediment input can result in an increase in <i>Phragmites</i> (common reed) cover. The nature of the substrate can also influence water turbidity and submerged macrophyte growth.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrobenthos</b> The structure and composition of the macrozoobenthic community is strongly linked to sediment dynamics. Changes in the sediment type or scouring of existing sediments will therefore influence the macrozoobenthos</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b> N/A</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b> N/A</p>
	<p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>Certain fish species are strongly linked to sediment type and any change in the balance between sandy and muddy substrata will influence the relative abundance of these taxa within the system.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>Some bird species associated with reed beds will increase with <i>Phragmites</i> expansion. Higher turbidity lowers visibility for pursuit swimming species that hunt by sight. Piscivorous and invertebrate feeding birds will be affected by the abundance of their prey items which are linked to sediment type.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
Retention time of water masses	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b> Mean monthly inflow conditions under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, hence water-mass retention times and phytoplankton dynamics would not have changed markedly from RC. Increased retention would improve regeneration times and colonisable habitat for phytoplankton</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b> Mean monthly inflow patterns under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, thus MPB dynamics would remain comparable to that under RC. Back flooding would improve colonisable benthic habitat thus increasing benthic microalgal biomass.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>
	<p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>Increased retention of the water body (&gt; 6 months) and decreased flow encourages growth of submerged aquatic macrophytes and macroalgae.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrobenthos</b> Submerged macrophytes increase in biomass following greater retention times of the water body and this will lead to greater biomass of the macrozoobenthic community. Species richness is also likely to decline as non-estuarine species disappear, while at the same time, the euryhaline fauna extends further upstream and downstream.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b> Maximum zooplankton biomass will be attained during periods of extended mouth closure. Species richness is likely to decline as non-estuarine species (marine breeding species) disappear.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b> N/A</p>
	<p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>Increased aquatic macrophyte and macroalgae will benefit those fish species feeding directly on plants (e.g. Cape stumpnose <i>Rhabdosargus holubi</i>) and/or invertebrates associated with these plant beds (e.g. Cape moony <i>Monodactylus falciformis</i>). Those fish species that are dependent on submerged plant beds as a habitat (e.g. estuarine pipefish <i>Syngnathus watermeyerii</i>) will reach maximum abundance when aquatic plants are most extensive during prolonged water retention periods.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>An increase in submerged macrophytes leads to higher abundance of species feeding on these.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
<i>Flow velocity</i>	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b> Mean monthly inflow conditions under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, hence flow velocity and phytoplankton dynamics would not have changed markedly from those under the RC. Phytoplankton chlorophyll a would remain largely unchanged under low flows but will be reduced under high flows until high flow subsides to low values.</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b> Mean monthly inflow patterns under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, thus MPB dynamics would remain comparable to that under RC. Low flow conditions would largely not affect MPB chlorophyll a biomass. However high flows would reduce MPB chlorophyll a biomass due to scouring of the sediment</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>
	<p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>Reduced flow can increase submerged macrophyte and macroalgal growth due to decreased turbidity. Flow velocities &gt; 1 m s<sup>-1</sup> inhibit submerged macrophyte growth, whereas currents of 0.5 m s<sup>-1</sup> only result in mechanical damage (Adams et al. 1999).</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrozoobenthos</b> Increased flow velocity will lead to a decline in macrozoobenthic biomass. The re-sorting of sediments will also reduce the microphytobenthic food source, while POM could be redistributed away from consumers.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b> Increased flow velocities are likely to be associated with a decline in the total zooplankton biomass most likely due to decrease in food availability, mainly microphytobenthic algae.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p> <p><b>Macro crustaceans</b> N/A</p>
	<p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>Reduction in microphytobenthos, zoobenthos and zooplankton food resources during elevated flow velocity will result in a reduction in fish stocks within the estuary.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>Piscivorous and invertebrate feeding bird numbers will decline with a reduction in fish stock and macrozoobenthos. Higher turbidity through increased flow lowers visibility for species hunting by pursuit swimming.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
<i>Volume of water in estuary</i>	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b> River inflow conditions under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, hence estuarine water-volume and its impact on phytoplankton dynamics would also not have changed markedly. Increased water volume would improve colonisable habitat for phytoplankton</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b> River inflow patterns under the PS show little variation from those under the RC, thus estuarine water-volume and its related influence on MPB dynamics would remain similar to that under RC. Back flooding would improve colonisable benthic habitat thus increasing benthic microalgal biomass.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>
	<p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>Submerged macrophytes will only develop substantially once the water level is &gt; 1.5 m above MSL. The pioneer <i>Halophila ovalis</i> can occur in monospecific stands in shallower water but once the water level rises it is easily out competed by species that are physically more robust, e.g. <i>Ruppia</i> and <i>Potamogeton</i>.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrobenthos</b> Volume of water in the estuary determines habitat distribution and availability. A greater volume of water in the estuary will favour the submerged community at the expense of intertidal organisms.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b> Volume of water in the estuary is unlikely be associated with a change in the zooplankton biomass or community structure.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b> N/A</p>
	<p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>An increased estuary water volume will support a wider size structure of fishes since both deep and shallow water will be available. The surface area and productivity of the estuary is also likely to increase with increasing water volume and this will support a greater abundance and biomass of fishes within the system.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>A greater water volume increases available habitat for most species, excluding small waders, and increases food availability for piscivorous birds and larger invertebrate feeding waders.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
Salinity	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b> River inflow conditions under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, hence horizontal and vertical salinity patterns and their associated effects on phytoplankton would not have changed much.</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b> River inflow patterns under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, thus horizontal and vertical salinity patterns and their related effects on MPB dynamics would remain similar to that under the RC.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>
	<p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>Under closed mouth conditions salinity in the estuary is 15 to 23 PSU. The submerged macrophyte <i>Halophila ovalis</i> can tolerate 20 to 35 PSU, <i>Ruppia cirrhosa</i> 0 to 45 PSU and <i>Potamogeton pectinatus</i> 0 to 15 PSU. Under open conditions salinity ranges from 0.7 to 35.5 PSU. Intertidal salt marsh can tolerate fluctuating salinity (Adams and Bate 1994). Low salinity (&lt; 20 psu) is important for seed germination and re-establishment of both submerged and salt marsh plants.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrobenthos</b> Generally, salinity values remained near or slightly above 20 PSU during the period of study. Fluctuations about this level (even down to &lt;10 or &gt;30) will not seriously impact on the macrozoobenthos generally, except for the sandprawn <i>Callinassa kraussi</i>. Any decrease below about 17-20 will influence breeding success, as this species requires salinity values &gt;17-20 for successful development of developing young.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b> Small fluctuations in the salinity value will not impact on the zooplankton community structure or biomass.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b> Small fluctuations in the salinity value will not impact on the biomass of <i>P.peringueyi</i></p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>
	<p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>The salinity values recorded in the East Kleinemonde do not pose any threat to the marine, estuarine or freshwater fish species recorded within the system. Salinities of 15-20 PSU are optimum for most species since they are isosmotic in relation to the external environment within this salinity range.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>
	<p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>Birds are not directly affected by changes in salinity occurring in this system.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>

ABIOTIC COMPONENT OR PROCESS	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE	
Other water quality variables	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b> River inflow patterns under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, hence other water quality conditions (e.g. dissolved oxygen, pH, &amp; conductivity) and their influence on phytoplankton dynamics would also not have noticeably changed.</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b> River inflow patterns under the PS indicate little variation from those under the RC, thus other water quality conditions (e.g. dissolved oxygen, pH, &amp; conductivity) would remain similar to that under the RC.</p> <p>Confidence: Low</p>	
	<p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>Increased nutrient input has a negative effect on submerged macrophytes through a reduction in light availability due to increased epiphytic growth, macroalgal and phytoplankton blooms (Twilley 1985, Bickerton 1982).</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>	
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrobenthos</b> Light reduction will have negative impact on the macrozoobenthic community through its primary influence on macrophytic growth. Reduced biomass of the macrophytes will reduce habitat availability and available food through a reducing supply of POM.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b> There are unlikely to be any changes in the zooplankton biomass as the primary food sources (phytoplankton and microphytobenthic algae) will be unaffected (see above).</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b> Reduced macrophyte biomass as a result of changes in the light environment is likely to be associated with a decline in the biomass of <i>P.peringueyi</i> within the estuary</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>	
	<p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>The use of cattle dips in the catchment has the potential to influence the health of fishes if these chemicals enter the estuary. However, the available evidence using the Cape stumpnose <i>Rhabdosargus holubi</i> as an indicator species suggests that this is not happening.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>	
	<p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>Piscivorous birds accumulate poisons and chemicals from their prey and this can potentially result in lower reproductive success and other health problems.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>	

**b) Other Anthropogenic influences**

Anthropogenic influences, other than modification of river inflow, that are presently affecting biotic characteristics in the estuary include:

ANTHROPOGENIC INFLUENCES	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
<p><i>Structures (e.g. weirs, bridges, jetties, causeway)</i></p>	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b>            Direct effects of physical structures on phytoplankton under the PS would be the creation of quiescent backwater areas that form pools for phytoplankton to use as a seed source and function to colonize other habitats. This and related structures would not have been present under the RC.</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b>            Direct effects of physical structures on MPBs under the PS would be the influence on sediment loss and accretion processes, especially downstream of the bridge. Increases in sediment deposition would effectively improve colonisable MPB habitat area. These structures would not have been present under the RC.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p> <hr/> <p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b></p> <p>The bridge has increased sedimentation, which has resulted in reed growth on the east bank adjacent to the bridge. Housing developments have increased freshwater run-off and nutrient input to the estuary. Although this is not measured as a change in water quality, increased abundance of reeds and macroalgae may occur as a result. Reed beds on the east bank upstream of the bridge only became established after 1995. Before this the submerged macrophyte <i>Ruppia cirrhosa</i> occurred up to depths of 1 m. These changes can be attributed to disturbance of the banks due to residential development and fertiliser and freshwater runoff from the adjacent lawns.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>

ANTHROPOGENIC INFLUENCES	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrobenthos</b>            In addition to influencing additional reed growth and hence more potential POM to the lower estuary, the bridge has led to a sharper boundary between sandy and muddy substrata. This in turn leads to a rapid change in community structure across the longitudinal gradient. Housing development on the northern bank near the mouth has probably lead to greater organic loading in the lower estuary, leading to localized nodes of primary food sources that are utilized by some species.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b>            Hard structures are unlikely to influence the zooplankton community structure within the estuary. Housing development near the mouth has probably lead to greater organic loading in the lower estuary, leading to localised nodes of primary food sources that are utilised by some species that occur in the lower estuary.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b>            The construction of buildings is unlikely to influence the biomass of <i>P.peringueyi</i> in the estuary</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p> <hr/> <p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>Expansion of reed beds associated with road and housing developments in the lower reaches has reduced the habitat available to specialised aquatic macrophyte associated species such as the estuarine pipefish <i>Syngnathus watermeyer</i>. The road bridge itself has increased habitat diversity within the estuary by providing a deep scour hole that is present under both open and closed mouth phases. Large fishes will find refuge in this scour hole when water levels in the estuary are low.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p> <hr/> <p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>Housing developments have decreased available undisturbed roosting areas for birds, especially below the bridge. The causeway does not disturb some birds as a heronry was established adjacent to the bridge in 2004. The expanded reed beds provide shelter for some species. Jetties above the bridge are used as perching and roosting sites by some species.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p>
<p><i>Human exploitation (consumptive and non-consumptive)</i></p>	<p><b><u>Microalgae:</u></b></p> <p><b>Phytoplankton</b>            N/A</p> <p><b>Microphytobenthos</b>            N/A</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <hr/> <p><b><u>Macrophytes:</u></b>            No utilisation takes place.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>

ANTHROPOGENIC INFLUENCES	BIOLOGICAL RESPONSE
	<p><b><u>Invertebrates:</u></b></p> <p><b>Macrobenthos</b> Bait collecting is probably widespread, but the main target species (<i>Callinassa kraussi</i>) has a high biomass and removal of prawns does not currently have any major impact on the population.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p> <p><b>Zooplankton</b> N/A</p> <p><b>Hyperbenthos</b> N/A</p> <hr/> <p><b><u>Fish:</u></b></p> <p>Increasing human populations in the region are placing increased fishing pressures, particularly by recreational anglers, on the predatory fishes within this system.</p> <p>Confidence: Medium</p> <hr/> <p><b><u>Birds:</u></b></p> <p>No direct exploitation takes place, but birds on the estuary have been seen injured and killed by ingesting fishing hooks or being trapped in fishing line. Piscivorous birds will decrease with decreasing fish populations.</p> <p>Confidence: High</p>

### 1.3 Reference Conditions

#### 3.2.3 Abiotic Components

##### a) Seasonal variability in river inflow:

Monthly simulated runoff data for the East Kleinemonde Estuary Reference (or natural) Condition is provided in Table 3.2. A summary of flow distribution (mean monthly flows in  $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the Reference Condition, derived from the 83-year simulated data set, is provided below:

	OCT	NOV	DEC	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP
99%ile	0.803	1.228	0.759	0.320	0.841	1.576	1.085	2.791	1.249	0.975	0.998	1.561
90%ile	0.251	0.252	0.183	0.097	0.058	0.190	0.216	0.167	0.217	0.128	0.128	0.241
80%ile	0.130	0.085	0.076	0.026	0.028	0.088	0.071	0.060	0.049	0.045	0.046	0.084
70%ile	0.088	0.056	0.036	0.010	0.018	0.029	0.049	0.023	0.015	0.020	0.028	0.036
60%ile	0.046	0.038	0.020	0.005	0.007	0.015	0.029	0.011	0.011	0.007	0.013	0.021
50%ile	0.021	0.022	0.010	0.003	0.003	0.009	0.011	0.006	0.004	0.004	0.007	0.011
40%ile	0.008	0.017	0.004	0.001	0.002	0.004	0.004	0.002	0.002	0.001	0.002	0.006
30%ile	0.003	0.006	0.002	0.000	0.000	0.002	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.003
20%ile	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
10%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

##### b) Present flood regime

The flood regime is judged to be very similar to that of the Present State based on the fact that the simulated monthly runoff data indicate very little change for months with a flow higher than  $0.11 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  (see shaded area in above table).

*Confidence: Medium*

##### c) Present sediment processes


The hydrological data indicate that the magnitude and occurrence of major floods has hardly been reduced. This also means that the flushing of sediments during such floods has hardly been reduced. It is therefore likely that the sedimentation in the estuary is not much different from what it was under natural conditions.


*Confidence: Low*

**Table 0.2** Simulated monthly volumes (million m<sup>3</sup>) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for Reference Conditions.

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breaches	High Flow Breach
1920	0.15	0.15	0.21	0.23	0.23	0.35	0.15	0.38	0.42	0.44	0.15	0.17	2	1
1921	0.18	0.38	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.27	0.34	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.36	4	3
1922	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.22	0.24	0.26	0.34	0.38	0.39	5	4
1923	0.41	0.15	0.19	0.21	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.27	1	0
1924	0.27	0.28	0.38	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.35	0.38	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.15	2	1
1925	0.21	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.29	0.33	0.34	0.34	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.36	0	0
1926	0.15	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.27	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	1	1
1927	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.23	0.15	4	2
1928	0.15	0.37	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.15	0.15	0.29	0.15	5	4
1929	0.15	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.25	0.26	0.30	0.37	2	1
1930	0.15	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.40	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.44	0.15	0.19	3	1
1931	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.44	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.18	0.18	0.15	5	4
1932	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.28	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.15	0.24	4	2
1933	0.24	0.28	0.30	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	0.15	0.20	3	3
1934	0.22	0.37	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.41	5	5
1935	0.15	0.31	0.40	0.15	0.21	0.27	0.30	0.35	0.38	0.40	0.41	0.41	2	0
1936	0.15	0.15	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.33	3	3
1937	0.34	0.35	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.26	0.38	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	2	2
1938	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.26	5	5
1939	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	5	4
1940	0.40	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.24	0.24	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.21	0.21	0.21	3	2
1941	0.21	0.26	0.15	0.33	0.36	0.37	0.38	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.19	0.19	2	1
1942	0.15	0.24	0.26	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.36	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.15	0.17	3	0
1943	0.17	0.15	0.32	0.33	0.35	0.15	0.25	0.33	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.15	3	2
1944	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	1	0
1945	0.39	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	2	0
1946	0.16	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.15	0.34	0.36	0.44	0.15	0.23	0.24	2	1
1947	0.24	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	2	2
1948	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.33	0.33	1	1
1949	0.34	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.18	0.19	4	4
1950	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.15	5	5
1951	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.28	0.32	0.33	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.15	3	2
1952	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.44	0.15	2	2
1953	0.15	0.15	0.43	0.44	0.45	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.34	0.40	0.15	0.35	5	4
1954	0.15	0.39	0.15	0.22	0.32	0.36	0.37	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	3	0
1955	0.18	0.26	0.28	0.28	0.41	0.15	0.16	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.42	1	0
1956	0.15	0.21	0.35	0.39	0.15	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.15	3	1
1957	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.31	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.20	0.20	2	2
1958	0.20	0.20	0.40	0.15	0.16	0.23	0.33	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	1	0
1959	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.41	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.28	1	0
1960	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.28	0.30	0.30	0.40	0.43	0.43	0.44	0.44	1	0
1961	0.44	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.18	0.15	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	2	1
1962	0.15	0.35	0.35	0.15	0.20	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.26	0.32	0.35	5	4
1963	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.15	3	2
1964	0.41	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.32	0.15	0.22	0.25	0.27	2	0
1965	0.38	0.15	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.20	0.25	2	1

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breaches	High Flow Breach
1966	0.26	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.33	0.35	0.40	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.15	0.23	3	2
1967	0.28	0.31	0.33	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.15	0.17	0.15	0.15	0.21	0.29	3	2
1968	0.34	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.40	0.15	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.24	1	0
1969	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.15	0.15	2	2
1970	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.24	0.27	0.15	0.33	0.36	0.39	0.15	0.20	5	4
1971	0.26	0.28	0.34	0.36	0.15	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.25	0.26	0.27	1	0
1972	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.38	0.41	0	0
1973	0.42	0.15	0.20	0.30	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	8	7
1974	0.30	0.40	0.15	0.20	0.28	0.32	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.38	0.40	0.15	2	1
1975	0.15	0.17	0.19	0.19	0.20	0.34	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.15	0.21	3	3
1976	0.38	0.15	0.19	0.19	0.15	0.39	0.42	0.15	0.30	0.36	0.39	0.43	3	1
1977	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.33	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.32	0.43	0.15	6	4
1978	0.15	0.29	0.41	0.15	0.18	0.20	0.21	0.23	0.25	0.15	0.15	0.15	5	4
1979	0.29	0.38	0.44	0.15	0.19	0.22	0.24	0.26	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.33	1	0
1980	0.34	0.42	0.45	0.15	0.28	0.15	0.15	0.42	0.15	0.24	0.15	0.32	5	4
1981	0.44	0.15	0.19	0.21	0.21	0.22	0.40	0.15	0.18	0.20	0.21	0.21	2	0
1982	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.15	0.27	0.27	1	1
1983	0.30	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.15	0.39	0.43	0.45	1	1
1984	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.19	1	0
1985	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.21	0.23	0.30	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.21	3	2
1986	0.26	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.33	0.34	0.34	0.43	0.15	0.18	0.20	1	0
1987	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.34	0.41	0.42	0.44	0.44	0.45	0.45	0.15	1	0
1988	0.17	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.32	0.36	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.37	0	0
1989	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.31	0.34	0.34	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.16	4	3
1990	0.20	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.33	0.36	0	0
1991	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.15	0.15	3	2
1992	0.15	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.17	0.20	0.39	2	1
1993	0.45	0.45	0.15	0.27	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.25	2	0
1994	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.19	0.31	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	2	2
1995	0.36	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.45	0.15	0.15	1	0
1996	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.26	0.26	4	3
1997	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.32	0.36	0.38	1	1
1998	0.39	0.40	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.19	0.22	1	0
1999	0.15	0.26	0.26	0.15	0.28	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	4	4
2000	0.25	0.15	0.22	0.27	0.28	0.31	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.23	0.38	2	0
2001	0.43	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.15	0.15	0.15	4	3
2002	0.15	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.24	0.25	3	3
Average													2.63	1.72

 High flow breaching

 Low flow breaching

### 3.2.4 Biotic Components

#### a) Predicted change in biotic characteristics from the Reference Condition to the Present State, as well as motivate the cause of such changes

---

##### **MICROALGAE**

###### ***Phytoplankton***

The slight decrease in the frequency of floods in the PS poses no significant changes and thus suggests that there is little change in the phytoplankton and microphytobenthic (MPB) chlorophyll *a* levels from the natural state or reference condition (RC). The annual distribution pattern of river inflow under the present state indicate little variation from the RC and thus would be likely that microalgal patterns would have changed little from the RC. Under the PS, chlorophyll *a* concentrations are generally low, reflecting the low levels of nutrients in the system. This may be indicative of a relatively low impact some of the land-use practises have had on the estuary, although during peak floods, nutrients spike up. These increased nutrients, however, may not be readily available for uptake by phytoplankton as they are flushed out of the system by the same flood that brought them in.

Features governing open-mouth events have possibly not changed markedly from those under the RC. It is therefore likely that chlorophyll *a* biomass responses will include an initial reduction followed by a subsequent increase when stable water-column conditions develop after mouth closure. These conditions improve residence times for phytoplankton to develop, although available nutrients will become depleted, thus resulting in low chlorophyll *a* levels.

Species composition under open-mouth conditions in the PS is characterised by the predominance of flagellates including dinoflagellates. High diatom abundances occurred under closed-mouth conditions and were replaced by a flagellated community following a 4-5 week period after mouth breaching. The slight decrease in the flood regime and monthly river inflow patterns in the PS means that these phytoplankton characteristics are probably close to RC.

###### ***Benthic microalgae***

Features governing open-mouth events have possibly not changed markedly from RC, therefore MPB chlorophyll *a* biomass responses will include an initial reduction followed by a subsequent increase in biomass when stable estuarine conditions develop. Under the PS, MPB chlorophyll *a* concentrations are normally low although significant increases are exhibited several days following breaching of the mouth.

Microphytobenthic habitat loss during floods and open mouth conditions, and its subsequent accretion following extended closure of the mouth under the PS, is probably not very different from the RC. Sustained frequencies of mouth breaching reduce chlorophyll *a* levels to low values. High water turbidity reduces light reaching the sediment during flood and post flood periods. Under the PS, overwash events may not differ markedly from the RC. Therefore, under a closed-mouth state, overwash events might induce resuspension of fine particulate matter although the imported clear marine water may negate that effect by improving greater photic depth, particularly in the lower reaches of the estuary.

Under the PS, seepage areas (e.g. septic tank seepage) are considered as sources of additional nutrient input for MPBs and are likely to influence benthic primary production. These seepage points would probably not have been present under the RC. Present development is possibly impacting on MPB production, however the overall effects are currently considered minimal. Future increases in housing development might increase allochthonous nutrient inputs from seepage sites, including additional underground sources possibly affecting MPB community structure by shifting it towards one composed more of a cyanobacterial assemblage.

Confidence: Medium

---

##### **MACROPHYTES**

###### ***Biomass distribution***

A small decrease in floods and an increase in the frequency of mouth closure would result in an increase in submerged macrophyte and macroalgal abundance. Agricultural activities in the catchment and nutrient input has probably increased macrophyte growth particularly that of reeds, sedges, macroalgae and submerged macrophytes. Anthropogenic influences such as the construction of the R72 road bridge has caused sedimentation and reeds have established on the east bank below and above the bridge.

An analysis of past aerial photographs showed that salt marsh areas have remained stable. Long periods of closed mouth conditions in the early 1990s to late 1990s resulted in large stands of submerged macrophytes developing. In 2005-2006, submerged macrophyte cover was low because of the increase in open mouth conditions.

###### ***Species diversity, richness and rarity***

There may have been a small loss in opportunistic brackish species as a result of the reduction in flooding and increase in salinity.

###### ***Seasonal variability and community composition***

The nutrient changes, decrease in flooding and increased frequency of mouth closure has increased reed, submerged macrophyte and macroalgal cover reducing open water surface area and sand and mudflats.

Confidence: Medium

---

---

**INVERTEBRATES (including Macrobenthos, Zooplankton and Hyperbenthos)**

---

**Macrobenthos*****Biomass distribution***

Sediment characteristics are key drivers in influencing macrozoobenthic distribution. Flood patterns have only changed marginally so that the reference condition is likely to have been very similar to present. However, prior to construction of the R72 bridge, the community change between sandy and muddy substrata is likely to have been more gradual.

***Species diversity, richness and rarity***

Any shift is likely to have been very marginal and well within the range of natural variability.

***Seasonal variability and community composition***

As above.

Confidence: Medium

**Zooplankton*****Biomass distribution***

Flood patterns have only changed marginally so that the reference condition is likely to have been very similar to present.

***Species diversity, richness and rarity***

Any shift is likely to have been very marginal and well within the range of natural variability.

***Seasonal variability and community composition***

As above.

Confidence: Medium

**Hyperbenthos*****Biomass distribution***

Flood patterns have only changed marginally so that the reference condition is likely to have been very similar to present

***Seasonal variability and community composition***

As above

Confidence: Medium

---

**FISH**

---

***Biomass distribution***

Because there has been little change in open mouth conditions between the RC and the PS, it is highly likely that the current fish biomass is very similar to that found in the natural state.

***Species diversity, richness and rarity:***

Similarly, the species diversity, richness and rarity have probably deviated very little from that occurring under the RC.

***Seasonal variability and community composition:***

Once again, it is highly unlikely that seasonal variability and community composition of fishes in the East Kleienmonde are different from the natural state.

Confidence: Medium

---

**BIRDS**

---

***Distribution***

Bird distribution is determined primarily by habitat and food availability. Food availability has remained similar between the Reference Condition (RC) and the Present State (PS). Housing developments have resulted in a loss of roosting and undisturbed feeding habitat below the bridge so that in the PS less birds probably occur in the area between the mouth and the bridge than in the RC. Overall abundance is likely to be slightly lower due to the habitat loss described above.

***Species diversity, richness and rarity***

Due to housing developments and increased human disturbance on the estuary a loss of certain species may have occurred, especially shy and secretive species. In the PS only one species is associated with *Phragmites* reed beds (Purple Heron), showing that the increase in reeds did not increase diversity significantly.

***Seasonal variability and community composition:***

Seasonal variability and community composition has probably not changed considerably from the RC.

Confidence: Medium

---

## 1.4 Present Ecological Status of the East Kleinemonde Estuary

### 1.4.1 Abiotic Components

#### Hydrology

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
a. % similarity in period of low flows OR Present MAR as a % of MAR in the reference condition	95	For the East Kleinemonde Estuary low river flows are defined as less than $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ .  Months with median low flows of less than $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ occurred under the Reference Condition (RC) for 86.4 of the year. Under the Present State (PS) low flows occur for 86.0 % of the year.	L
b. % similarity in mean annual frequency of floods	95	The reduction in high flows is deemed to be very small based on the very limited reduction in simulated monthly flows. The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 1.8% decrease in the floods to the estuary	L
<b>Hydrology score</b>	<b>95</b>		L

#### Hydrodynamics and mouth condition

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
Change in mean duration of closure, e.g. over a 5 or 10 year period	90	Under the RC the East Kleinemonde Estuary mouth breaching (State 1 and 2) could potentially have occurred in 2.6 months of the year over the 83-year period. Of these 1.7 was related to high flow events that breached the system instantaneously.  Under the PS mouth occurrence of breaching events (State 1 and 2) have been reduced to 2.5 months of the year over the 83-year period (95.9% similar to the Reference Condition). Of these 1.7 (State 1) was related to high flow events that breached the system instantaneously.	L
<b>Hydrodynamics and mouth conditions score</b>	<b>90</b>		L

#### Water quality

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Change in the longitudinal salinity gradient (%) and vertical salinity stratification	90	As the river inflow to the East Kleinemonde Estuary and the frequency of breaching events is very similar to the RC, it is assumed that the salinity concentrations will also be very similar.	L
2a. Nitrate/phosphate (inorganic nutrient) concentration in the estuary	70	River DIN concentrations increased from RC to PS (>10 times during high flow events and ~ 3 times during low flow periods), associated with agricultural activities in the catchment. Although the influence of river inflow in this system (as indicated by salinity) is generally limited to the upper reaches and despite an overall reduction in river inflow from RC to PS, these marked increases in river DIN would nevertheless have resulted in a significant increase in DIN loads to the system compared to the RC. Allow a 30% modification from RC.	L

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
2b. Suspended solids (turbidity) in the estuary	95	Turbidity in the system are influenced by high river inflow (higher turbidity concentration) and turbulence associated with tidal exchange (during intermittently open/closed states)  Although there has not been a marked change in the occurrence of intermittently open/closed states (States 1 and 2) compared with the RC, there has been a 5% reduction in river inflow compared to RC. The system should therefore be less turbid compared with RC. Allow a modification of 5%	L
2c. Dissolved oxygen in the estuary	85	There are no marked differences between intermittently open/closed states (States 1 and 2) and closed state (State 3) compared with the RC. As DO concentrations are only expected to decrease with a marked increase in the frequency and duration of the closed state, there should be no significant change from the RC.  However an increase in nutrient (and possibly organic) loading from the catchment (associated with agricultural activity) probably increased oxygen demand under the PS. Allow a 15% modification from RC	L
2d. Levels of toxins	80	There are no major industrial activities in the catchment. However, extensive agricultural developments probably introduce some toxic substances (e.g. pesticides) into the system. Allow a 20% modification from RC.	L
<b>Water Quality score</b>	<b>78</b>		L

### Physical habitat alteration

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
<b>1. Resemblance of intertidal sediment structure and distribution to reference condition</b>			
1a % similarity in intertidal area exposed.	85	Allow for a 5% change in the intertidal area due to changes in river inflow. An additional 5 % is allowed for the stabilisation of the lower estuary and 5 % for infilling of the intertidal area.	M
1b % similarity in sand fraction relative to total sand and mud.	75	The bridge acts as barrier that prevents the development of a gradient from marine sediment below the bridge to muddier sediment further upstream. In addition, the system may have become slightly muddier due to land-use changes in the catchment.	M
2 Resemblance of subtidal estuary to reference condition: depth, bed or channel morphology.	90	Allow 5% change in the subtidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 5 % is allocated for lower estuary stabilisation.	M
<b>Anthropogenic influence:</b>			
Percentage of overall change in <u>intertidal and supratidal habitat</u> caused by <b>anthropogenic</b> activity as opposed to modifications to water flow into estuary.	80	Sedimentation may have occurred due to change in land-use in the catchment and the bridge.	M
Percentage of overall change in <u>subtidal habitat</u> caused by <b>anthropogenic</b> modifications (e.g. bridges, weirs, jetties) rather than modifications to water flow into estuary.	80	Sedimentation may have occurred due to change in land-use in the catchment, e.g. agriculture and the bridge.	M
<b>Physical habitat score</b>	<b>85</b>		M

## 1.4.2 Biotic Component

### Microalgae

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
Phytoplankton			
1. Species richness	90	There is minimal difference between river inflow patterns under the RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 98.2) and the present state (i.e. low flow occurrence 96.4), corresponding to possibly a 2-5% change, which is equivalent to a score of 90, therefore phytoplankton species richness has probably not changed markedly.	M
2a. Abundance	95	There is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 98.2) and the present state (i.e. low flow occurrence 96.4), corresponding to possibly a 2-5% change, therefore phytoplankton abundances have probably not changed markedly.	M
2b. Community composition	95	Since there is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 98.2) and the present state (i.e. low flow occurrence 96.4), corresponding to possibly a 2-5% change, therefore phytoplankton species composition has probably not changed markedly.	M
Benthic microalgae			
1. Species richness	80	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under the present state suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Species richness would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions, which is equivalent to a score of 80.	M
2a. Abundance	90	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under the present state suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Microphytobenthic abundances would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions.	M
2b. Community composition	90	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under the present state suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Community composition would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions.	M
<b>Microalgae score</b>	<b>80</b>		<b>M</b>

## Macrophytes

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	97	There may have been a small loss in opportunistic brackish species as a result of the reduction in flooding and increase in salinity. (1% change).	M
2a. Abundance/Biomass	85	A small decrease in floods and increase in the frequency of mouth closure would result in an increase in submerged macrophyte and macroalgal abundance. Agricultural activities in the catchment and nutrient input has increased macrophyte growth particularly that of reeds, sedges, macroalgae and submerged macrophytes (overall 10% change).  Reeds have established on the east bank below and above the R72 bridge (5 % change). These reeds represent 50 % of the total reed area of the estuary.	M
2b. Community composition	95	The nutrient changes, decrease in flooding and frequency of mouth closure has increased reed, submerged macrophyte and macroalgal cover reducing open water surface area and bare sand and mudflats.  Reed beds have encroached on submerged macrophyte habitat on the East bank.	M
<b>Macrophytes score</b>	<b>85</b>		M

## Invertebrates

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
Zooplankton			
1. Species richness	90	Because of the very small reduction in the frequency of larger floods (<2%) and slight reduction in base flow (<2%), species richness is not considered to have been different compared to the PS	M
2a. Abundance	95	As above	M
2b. Community composition	95	As above	M
<b>Invertebrates score</b>	<b>90</b>		M
Macrobenthos			
1. Species richness	90	Because of the very small reduction in the frequency of larger floods (<2%) and slight reduction base flow (<2%) species richness is not considered to have been different compared to present	M
2a. Abundance	95	As above	M
2b. Community composition	95	As above	M
<b>Invertebrates score</b>	<b>90</b>		M
Hyperbenthos			
1. Species richness	90	Because of the very small reduction in the frequency of larger floods (<2%) and slight reduction base flow (<2%) species richness is not considered to have been different compared to PS	M
2a. Abundance	95	As above	M
2b. Community composition	95	As above	M
<b>Invertebrates score</b>	<b>90</b>		M

## Fish

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	100	No difference in species richness is likely to have occurred between Reference Conditions and the Present State.	H
2a. Abundance	90	A slight reduction in abundance of macrophytes associated fish species is likely, primarily due to encroachment by reeds in the lower reaches. Allow 5% due for changes in macrophytes and 5% for fishing effects.	M
2b. Community composition	90	As above	H
<b>Fish score</b>	<b>90</b>		H

## Birds

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	90	Human disturbance and loss of roosting sites is likely to have caused a slight loss of species (a loss of 2 species corresponds to 4 % of species change from RC). More <i>Phragmites</i> stands increased diversity probably only by one species.	M
2a. Abundance	85	Lower abundance due to increased disturbance and less roosting sites.	M
2b. Community composition	95	As above	M
<b>Bird score</b>	<b>85</b>		M

The individual scores for each of the components (i.e. overall score listed) are incorporated into a Habitat health score and a Biological health score. This allows for the determination of the Estuarine Health Index (EHI) Score.

To establish the changes in Present State (when compared with Reference Condition) that are not as a result of changes in flow, but rather as a result of other anthropogenic activities, the Table below indicates the percentage of overall change predicted in particular components that are non-flow related:

COMPONENT	% CHANGE CAUSED BY NON-FLOW RELATED ACTIVITIES	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
Microalgae	Phytoplankton 5 Microphytobenthos 10	<i>Phytoplankton</i> Direct effects of physical structures (e.g. bridges) on phytoplankton under the PS would be the creation of quiescent backwater areas that form pools for phytoplankton to use as a seed sources and function to colonize other habitats. <i>Microphytobenthos</i> Direct effects of physical structures on MPBs under the PS would be the influence on sediment loss and accretion processes, especially downstream of the bridge. Increases in sediment deposition would effectively improve colonisable MPB habitat area.	L
Macrophytes	5	Bridge and run-off from residential developments have increased reed abundance.	H
Invertebrates	90	Small localized effects on the scale of metres to tens of metres due to changes in land-use and the bridge.	H
Fish	50	Some change would be expected in fish assemblages associated with the bridge and fishing activities would certainly have caused increased mortalities for certain species.	M
Birds	90	Loss of roosting and undisturbed feeding habitat would have decreased abundance and diversity	M

### 1.4.3 Determining the Present Ecological Status (PES)

The Estuarine Health Index (EHI) scores allocated to the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Present State) were:

Variable	Weight	Score	Weighted score
Hydrology	25	95	24
Hydrodynamics and mouth condition	25	90	23
Water quality	25	78	20
Physical habitat alteration	25	85	21
<b>Habitat health score</b>			<b>87</b>
Microalgae	20	80	16
Macrophytes	20	85	17
Invertebrates	20	90	18
Fish	20	90	18
Birds	20	85	17
<b>Biotic Health Score</b>			<b>86</b>
<b>Estuarine Health score</b>			<b>87</b>

The Estuarine Health Index score for the East Kleinemonde Estuary, based on its Present State, is 87, translating into a **Present Ecological Status** of a **B+** as indicated below:

Estuarine Health Index	Present Ecological Status	General description
91 – 100	A	Unmodified, natural
<b>76 – 90</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>Largely natural with few modifications</b>
61 – 75	C	Moderately modified
41 – 60	D	Largely modified
21 – 40	E	Highly degraded
0 – 20	F	Extremely degraded

Although the Present Ecological Status of the East Kleinemonde Estuary is a high B, the system is on a **trajectory of change downwards**. At the specialist workshop it was noted that an increase in fishing pressures, nutrient input from the catchment and septic tanks (as reflected in increased reed growth along the eastern shore below the bridge), riparian developments, noise disturbance and loss of aquatic habitat due to boating are influencing the system negatively.

The Estuarine Importance scores allocated to the East Kleinemonde Estuary, guided by Turpie (2002, 2004), were as follows:

Criterion	Weight	Score	Weighted score
Estuary Size	15	70	11
Zonal Rarity Type	10	10	1
Habitat Diversity	25	90	23
Biodiversity Importance	25	84	21
Functional Importance	25	60	15
<b>Estuarine Importance Score</b>			<b>70</b>

The Functional Importance of the East Kleinemonde on a regional scale is estimated to be 60, since significant amounts of organic material generated in the estuary during the closed phase are exported to the nearshore during the open phase. The overall **Estuarine Importance Score**, based on its Present State is **70**, thus indicating that the estuary is important, as indicated below:

Importance Score	Description
81 – 100	Highly important
<b>61 – 80</b>	<b>Important</b>
0 – 60	Of low to average importance

## Recommended ecological category for East Kleinemonde Estuary

The recommended Ecological Reserve Category (ERC) represents the level of protection that should be assigned to an estuary. In turn, this is used to determine the Ecological Reserve. For estuaries, the first step is to determine the 'minimum' Ecological Reserve Category of an estuary, based on its Present Ecological Status (PES). The relationship between Estuarine Health Index Score, Present Ecological Status and Ecological Reserve Category is set out below:

Estuarine Health Index	Present Ecological Status	Description	Ecological Reserve Category
91 – 100	A	Unmodified, natural	A
76 – 90	B	Largely natural with few modifications	B
61 – 75	C	Moderately modified	C
41 – 60	D	Largely modified	D
21 – 40	E	Highly degraded	-
0 – 20	F	Extremely degraded	-

**Note:** Should the Present Status category of an estuary be either an E or F, recommendations must be made as to how the status can be elevated to at least achieve a Category D (as indicated above).

The minimum Ecological Reserve Category is determined by the Present Ecological Status. The degree to which the Ecological Category needs to be elevated above the Present Ecological Status depends on the level of **importance** and the level of **protection** or **desired protection** of a particular estuary (see below).

Current/desired protection status and estuary importance	Recommended Ecological Reserve Category	Policy basis
Protected area	A or BAS*	Protected and desired protected areas should be restored to and maintained in the best possible state of health
Desired Protected Area		
Highly important	PES + 1, min B	Highly important estuaries should be in an A or B class
Important	PES + 1, min C	Important estuaries should be in an A, B or C class
Of low to average importance	PES, min D	The remaining estuaries can be allowed to remain in a D class.

\* BAS = Best Attainable State

The East Kleinemonde Estuary is been targeted as a Desired Protected Area by the C.A.P.E. Estuaries Conservation Plan for the temperate areas of South Africa (Turpie and Clarke 2007). According to the guidelines for assigning a recommended Ecological Reserve Category, the estuary should be classified as a Category A or the Best Attainable State (BAS).

At the specialist workshop it was concluded that the changes currently contributing to the Present State of the estuary are related to flow reduction, fishing pressures, human disturbance around the estuary and nutrient loading from the catchment.

The East Kleinemonde Estuary is very vulnerable to non-flow related activities such as fishing, power boating and nutrient loading. The present level of urban development around the estuary acts as a constraint and prevents the system from being rehabilitated to a Category A. Thus, the workshop concluded that the recommended ERC for the East Kleinemonde Estuary be a **Category B**, i.e. at least maintain the Present Ecological Status.

## Quantification of Ecological Reserve Scenarios

A summary of the suite of future runoff scenarios, evaluated as part of this project, as well as the Reference and Present flow scenarios (provided by Prof D A Hughes, Institute for Water Research, Rhodes University), is presented below.

Name	Description	MAR (million m <sup>3</sup> /annum)	Percentage Retained
<b>Reference</b>	Reference	2.856	100.0
<b>Present</b>	Present Flows	2.748	96.2
<b>Future Scenario 1</b>	Dam Development (excluding an increase in non-flow related anthropogenic activities)	2.409	84.3
<b>Future Scenario 2</b>	Off-channel intermittent abstraction (excluding an increase in non-flow related anthropogenic activities)	2.575	90.1
<b>Future Scenario 3</b>	Similar to Scenario 2, including other non-flow related anthropogenic activities.	2.575	90.1
<b>Future Scenario 4</b>	Similar to Scenario 2, including other non-flow related anthropogenic activities, but mitigating for the increase in waste water and stormwater runoff	2.575	90.1

The Present State represents a situation comprising 300 developed residential plots that are supplied with water from the Wellington Dam (capacity:  $0.206 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ ) supplemented by borehole water. The Wellington Dam is situated on a tributary of the East Kleinemonde River that represents approximately 9% of the total catchment area of the East Kleinemonde system.

Details on the four simulated Future Scenarios are as follows:

- Future Scenario 1: This comprises 1010 developed residential plots with the water supply originating from a new dam constructed on the main river. The assumption is that the sub-catchment feeding the dam represents about 67% of the total catchment area with the capacity of the dam being determined appropriately, given the patterns of inflow and the demand. The maximum recommended percentage of the MAR impounded is 15%.
- Future Scenario 2: Comprises 1010 developed residential plots with the water supply originating from an off-channel reservoir fed by intermittent pumping (as required by demand) from the main river (using a weir of appropriate design). The assumption is that pumping will remove most of the water from the river during low flow periods but will have little impact on short-duration higher flows.
- Future Scenario 3: Similar to Scenario 2, but including additional all the other non-flow related anthropogenic activities associated with the proposed new developments (e.g. increased fishing pressures, power boating, human disturbance, seepage from septic tanks, storm water runoff).
- Future Scenario 4: Similar to Scenario 3, but mitigating for the increased pressures including other non-flow related anthropogenic activities in the Estuarine Health Index. This scenario includes mitigating for the increase in municipal waste water and storm water runoff from the proposed new developments.

## 1.5 Future Scenario 1: Dam Development

### 1.5.1 Abiotic Components

#### a) Seasonal variability in river inflow:

Monthly simulated runoff data for the Future Scenario 1 is provided in Table 3. A summary of flow distributions (mean monthly flows in  $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the Future Scenario 1, derived from the 83-year simulated data set, is provided below:

	OCT	NOV	DEC	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP
99%ile	0.789	1.105	0.694	0.295	0.804	1.527	1.069	2.739	1.253	0.956	0.956	1.494
90%ile	0.223	0.221	0.154	0.045	0.020	0.073	0.125	0.145	0.133	0.078	0.119	0.207
80%ile	0.091	0.047	0.051	0.009	0.009	0.034	0.026	0.020	0.016	0.023	0.025	0.072
70%ile	0.042	0.029	0.015	0.004	0.006	0.010	0.017	0.008	0.006	0.008	0.009	0.017
60%ile	0.025	0.014	0.007	0.001	0.002	0.005	0.009	0.004	0.003	0.003	0.004	0.008
50%ile	0.007	0.008	0.003	0.001	0.001	0.003	0.004	0.002	0.001	0.001	0.002	0.003
40%ile	0.003	0.006	0.002	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.002
30%ile	0.001	0.002	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001
20%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
10%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

#### b) Present flood regime

The flood regime is judged to be very similar to that under reference conditions based on the fact that the simulated monthly runoff data indicate very little change for months with flow higher than  $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 3.5 % decrease in floods to the estuary.

*Confidence: Medium*

#### c) Present sediment processes

The hydrological data indicate that the magnitude and occurrence of major floods has hardly been reduced. This also means that the flushing of sediments during such floods has hardly been reduced. It is therefore likely that the sedimentation in the estuary will not be much different from what it was under natural conditions. There may be some increased erosion in the catchment.

*Confidence: Low*

**Table 0.1** Simulated monthly volumes (million m<sup>3</sup>) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for Future Scenario 1.

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total breach	High Flow Breach
1920	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.18	0.21	0.42	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.18	0.18	2	0
1921	0.18	0.26	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.34	0.36	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.34	3	3
1922	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.43	0.44	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.19	0.20	0.21	4	3
1923	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.27	0	0
1924	0.27	0.27	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.42	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.23	1	0
1925	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.27	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0	0
1926	0.41	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	1	0
1927	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.38	3	2
1928	0.15	0.35	0.40	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.28	0.15	4	3
1929	0.15	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.35	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.42	1	1
1930	0.15	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.29	0.33	0.34	0.34	0.43	0.15	0.16	2	1
1931	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.44	0.15	4	4
1932	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.29	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.42	0.15	3	2
1933	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.36	0.43	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.17	3	2
1934	0.18	0.27	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.40	5	5
1935	0.15	0.27	0.31	0.33	0.35	0.37	0.38	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.42	0.42	1	0
1936	0.15	0.15	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.15	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	3	3
1937	0.27	0.28	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	2	2
1938	0.24	0.15	0.43	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.18	4	3
1939	0.28	0.31	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	4	4
1940	0.38	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17	3	2
1941	0.17	0.19	0.34	0.43	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	1	0
1942	0.26	0.29	0.30	0.36	0.38	0.38	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.20	0.21	1	0
1943	0.21	0.15	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.41	0.15	0.19	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.15	3	2
1944	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0	0
1945	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	1	0
1946	0.18	0.18	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.37	0.43	0.44	0.15	0.22	0.25	0.25	1	0
1947	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	2	2
1948	0.15	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	1	1
1949	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	4	4
1950	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.35	0.15	5	5
1951	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.21	0.21	0.27	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.15	2	2
1952	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.25	0.15	2	2
1953	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.21	0.15	0.33	0.36	0.15	0.34	5	3
1954	0.42	0.15	0.21	0.23	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.31	1	0
1955	0.33	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.40	0.42	0.42	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.43	0.15	1	0
1956	0.18	0.20	0.24	0.25	0.32	0.34	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.15	1	0
1957	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.17	2	2
1958	0.17	0.17	0.23	0.26	0.26	0.29	0.32	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0	0
1959	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.41	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.15	1	0
1960	0.21	0.23	0.23	0.24	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0	0
1961	0.30	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	1	0
1962	0.38	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.17	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.21	0.27	0.27	4	3
1963	0.27	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.15	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.15	2	2
1964	0.39	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.24	1	0
1965	0.27	0.15	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.40	1	1
1966	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.38	0.15	0.20	3	2

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total breach	High Flow Breach
1967	0.21	0.22	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.27	0.28	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.24	2	2
1968	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.27	0.35	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0	0
1969	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.15	2	2
1970	0.15	0.26	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.19	0.15	0.29	0.31	0.32	0.37	0.39	4	4
1971	0.42	0.43	0.44	0.15	0.25	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.30	1	0
1972	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.34	0.35	0	0
1973	0.35	0.40	0.41	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	8	7
1974	0.27	0.32	0.34	0.36	0.38	0.40	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.42	0.43	0.15	1	1
1975	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.17	0.21	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.15	0.15	0.18	3	3
1976	0.33	0.43	0.45	0.45	0.15	0.33	0.34	0.15	0.28	0.32	0.33	0.34	2	1
1977	0.35	0.42	0.15	0.24	0.24	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.30	0.39	0.15	5	4
1978	0.43	0.15	0.23	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.15	0.15	0.15	4	3
1979	0.27	0.31	0.33	0.34	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.39	0.40	0.40	0.40	0	0
1980	0.41	0.43	0.44	0.15	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.38	0.15	0.23	0.15	0.31	5	3
1981	0.40	0.42	0.43	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.19	0.19	0.19	1	0
1982	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.31	0.35	0.35	0	0
1983	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.23	0.24	0.25	1	0
1984	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0	0
1985	0.34	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.25	0.27	2	2
1986	0.29	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.35	0.36	0.37	0.37	0	0
1987	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.42	0.44	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	1	0
1988	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.21	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0	0
1989	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.26	4	2
1990	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.32	0.33	0	0
1991	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.15	0.42	1	1
1992	0.15	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.39	0.40	0.15	2	1
1993	0.17	0.17	0.23	0.27	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.38	0.42	0	0
1994	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.20	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	2	2
1995	0.22	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0	0
1996	0.25	0.15	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	3	2
1997	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.40	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.15	0.16	0.17	1	0
1998	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.23	0.24	0.25	0	0
1999	0.36	0.40	0.40	0.15	0.20	0.15	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.44	0.44	2	1
2000	0.15	0.25	0.29	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.38	0.41	0.15	2	0
2001	0.17	0.24	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.38	0.15	0.15	2	2
2002	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.19	0.19	3	3
Average													1.96	1.41



High flow breaching



Low flow breaching

d) EHI for the Future Scenario 1

**Hydrology**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
a. % similarity in the periods of low flows OR Present MAR as a % of MAR in the reference condition.	95	For the East Kleinemonde River low flows are defined as less than $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . Months with flows of less than $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ occurred under the RC for 86.0% of the year. Under the Scenario 1 low flows occur for 88.6 % of the year.	L
b. % similarity in mean annual frequency of floods.	90	The reduction in high flows is deemed to be very small based on the very limited reduction in monthly high flows. The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 3.5% decrease in the floods to the estuary under Scenario 1.	L
<b>Hydrology score</b>	<b>93</b>		L

**Hydrodynamics and mouth condition**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
*Change in mean duration of closure, e.g. over a 5 or 10 year period.	80	Under the RC the East Kleinemonde Estuary mouth breaching could potentially have occurred in 2.6 months of the year over the 83 year period. Of these 1.7 was related to high flow events that breached the system instantaneously.  Under Scenario 1 mouth breaching (State 1 and 2) has reduced to 2.0 months of the year over the 83 year period (74.7% similar to RC). Of these 1.4 was related to high flow events that breached (State 1) the system instantaneously.	L
<b>Hydrodynamics and mouth conditions score</b>	<b>80</b>		L

**Water quality**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Change in the longitudinal salinity gradient (%) and vertical salinity stratification.	80	Because the river inflow to the East Kleinemonde Estuary and the frequency of breaching events is very similar to the RC, it is assumed that the salinity will also be very similar.	L
2a. Nitrate/phosphate (inorganic nutrient) concentration in the estuary.	80	River DIN concentrations increased from RC to PS (>10 times during high flow events and ~ 3 times during low flow periods), associated with agricultural activities in the catchment. Although the influence of river inflow (as indicated by salinity) in this system is generally limited to the upper reaches and despite an overall reduction in river inflow, these marked increases in river DIN would nevertheless have resulted in a significant increase in DIN loads to the system compared with the RC.  However, because river inflow in Scenario 1 is 10% less than under the PS, modification to DIN loads should be less. There is a possibility that the dam might trap some nutrients, however, it is not considered to have a significant influence on loads reaching the estuary Therefore allow a 20% modification from RC (i.e. 10% less than for PS).	L

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
2b. Suspended solids (turbidity) in the estuary.	80	<p>Turbidity in the system is influenced by river inflow (higher turbidity concentration) and turbulence associated with tidal exchange (during mouth open state).</p> <p>There is a slight decrease in the probable occurrence of intermittently open states (States 1 and 2) compared with the RC (1 month less) This will result in a decrease in turbidity within the estuary. Allow for 5% modification from RC.</p> <p>Furthermore, there is a 15% reduction in river inflow compared to RC, further decreasing turbidity. Allow a further 15% modification from RC.</p>	L
2c. Dissolved oxygen in the estuary.	80	<p>There is a slight increase in the occurrence of the closed state (State 3) versus intermittently open/closed states (States 1 and 2) in Scenario 1 compared with RC. DO concentrations are expected to decrease with an increase in the frequency and duration of the closed state, therefore allow for a 5% modification from RC.</p> <p>However an increase in nutrient (and possibly organic) loading from the catchment (associated with agricultural activity) could have increased oxygen demand under the Scenario 1. Because river inflow in Scenario 1 is 10% less than under the PS, modification to DO should be less. Therefore allow a further 5% modification from RC (i.e. 10% less than for PS).</p> <p>More mouth closure will cause increased macrophytes and filamentous algae growth and decomposition, causing lower DO (allow for further 10% modification).</p>	L
2d. Levels of toxins.	90	<p>There are no major industrial activities in the catchment. However, extensive agricultural developments probably introduce some toxic substances (e.g. pesticides) into the system.</p> <p>However, because river inflow in Scenario 1 is 10% less than under the PS, modification in terms of toxins should be less. Therefore allow a further 10% modification from RC (i.e. 10% less than for PS).</p>	L
<b>Water Quality score</b>	<b>80</b>		L

### Physical habitat alteration

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE	
1. Resemblance of intertidal sediment structure and distribution to reference condition				
1a	% similarity in intertidal area exposed.	85	<p>Allow 5% change in the intertidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 5 % is allocated for the stabilisation of the lower estuary and 5 % infilling of the intertidal area.</p>	L
1b	% similarity in sand fraction relative to total sand and mud.	75	<p>The bridge acts as barrier that prevents the development of a gradient from marine sediment below the bridge to muddier sediment further upstream.</p> <p>The system may have become slightly muddier due to land-use changes in the catchment.</p>	L
2	Resemblance of subtidal estuary to reference condition: depth, bed or channel morphology.	90	<p>Allow 5% change in the subtidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 5% is allocated for the stabilisation of the lower estuary.</p>	L

<b>Anthropogenic influence:</b>				
	Percentage of overall change in <u>intertidal and supratidal habitat</u> caused by <b>anthropogenic</b> activity as opposed to modifications to water flow into estuary.	95	Sedimentation may have occurred due to change in land-use in the catchment and the bridge.	L
	Percentage of overall change in <u>subtidal habitat</u> caused by <b>anthropogenic</b> modifications (e.g. bridges, weirs, jetties, marinas) rather than modifications to water flow into estuary.	95	Sedimentation may have occurred due to change in land-use in the catchment, e.g. agricultural and the bridge.	L
<b>Physical habitat score</b>		<b>85</b>		L

## 1.5.2 Biotic Components

### a) Predicted change in biotic characteristics of future Scenario 1 compared with the Reference Condition, as well as the causes of these changes:

#### **MICROALGAE**

##### **Phytoplankton**

Under Scenario 1 the decrease in the frequency of floods is represented by a change of about 3.5% from RC. This suggests that there would be little change in the phytoplankton and microphytobenthic (MPB) chlorophyll *a* levels from the natural condition. The annual distribution patterns of low river inflows under this scenario indicates fewer periods of low flow conditions, thus indicating little variation from RC.

##### **Benthic microalgae**

Microphytobenthic habitat loss during floods and open mouth conditions and accretion following mouth closure under Scenario 1 is probably not very different from the RC. Turbidity conditions would also possibly remain similar. Seepage areas act as sources of additional nutrient input for MPBs and would influence benthic primary production.

Confidence: Low

#### **MACROPHYTES**

This scenario represents a dam that would capture the MAR from 67% of the estuary catchment. There is an increase in mouth closure compared to the present state and a decrease in high flow breaching events from 2.6 to 2 months of the year. These conditions would result in an increase in submerged macrophyte and macroalgal abundance. Agricultural activities in the catchment and nutrient input would also increase the growth of reeds, sedges, macroalgae and submerged macrophytes. However nutrient input is slightly less than present because of the reduction in river flow. The higher salinity could inhibit the seed germination of macrophytes. There may have also been a small loss in opportunistic brackish species as a result of the reduction in flooding and increase in salinity. The anthropogenic influence of the R72 bridge remains the same as at present.

Confidence: Medium

#### **INVERTEBRATES (including Macrobenthos, Zooplankton and Hyperbenthos)**

##### **Macrobenthos**

Because of a slight increase in mouth closure, the probability of the zoobenthos moving towards distinct substructures (a marine associated group at the mouth and a riverine associated subgroup at the head) will be reduced. Instead, the community will maintain two basic substructures based on substrate type (a sand and muddy community) for longer periods. Data suggest that in order to develop substructures based on salinity, the mouth should remain open for >1month and this will be complimented by a stronger base flow to maintain mouth opening. If seed germination of the macrophyte community is negatively affected by increases in salinity, this will have a negative ripple effect on the macrozoobenthos.

Confidence: Medium

##### **Zooplankton**

The increase in the duration of mouth closure will likely be associated with an increase in the total zooplankton biomass. The zooplankton diversity within the system is likely to be reduced due to the decline in the recruitment of marine breeding species into the system.

Confidence: Medium

##### **Hyperbenthos:**

Increase in the duration of mouth closure will be associated with a decline in the biomass of *P.peringueyi* in the estuary as a result of reduced recruitment opportunities.

Confidence: Medium.

**FISH**

Even a slight increase in mouth closure could affect the recruitment of larval marine fishes into the estuary, especially if that closure were to occur during the optimum spring period. There is also a potential knock-on effect in terms of fish food resources if the aquatic macrophyte and zoobenthic invertebrate community are negatively affected by the induced changes.

Confidence: Medium

**BIRDS**

A decrease in fish would result in a lower abundance of piscivorous species. Increased submerged macrophyte growth could attract certain species (coots), and an expansion of the reed beds could increase the diversity of the species group associated with reeds and sedges (Rallidae).

Confidence: Medium

**b) EHI for the future Scenario 1:****Microalgae**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
Phytoplankton			
1. Species richness	90	There is minimal difference between river inflow patterns under the RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.0) and Scenario 1 (i.e. low flow occurrence 88.6), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, which is equivalent to a score of 90, therefore phytoplankton species richness has probably not changed markedly.	M
2a. Abundance	95	There is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.0) and Scenario 1 (i.e. low flow occurrence 88.6), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton abundances have probably not changed markedly.  The proposed dam may remove some nutrients from the system as it will catch some nutrients before they reach the estuary. This scenario may take the estuary closer to the reference conditions	L
2b. Community composition	95	Because there is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.1) and Scenario 1 (i.e. low flow occurrence 88.6), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton species composition will probably not change markedly.	M
Benthic microalgae			
1. Species richness	80	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (e.g. agricultural practises) under Scenario 1 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Species richness would likely have had a deviation of approximately 20% from natural conditions, which is equivalent to a score of 80.	M
2a. Abundance	90	Sediment processes have changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 1 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Microphytobenthic abundances would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions.	M
2b. Community composition	90	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (e.g. agricultural practises) under Scenario 1 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Community composition would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions.	M
<b>Microalgae score</b>	<b>85</b>		<b>M</b>

## Macrophytes

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	90	There may be a small loss in opportunistic brackish species as a result of the reduction in flooding and increase in salinity (3% change).	H
2a. Abundance	81	There is an increase in mouth closure compared to the present state and a decrease in high flow breaching events. These conditions would result in an increase in submerged macrophyte (6%) and macroalgal abundance (6%). Sedimentation would also occur in the intertidal zone as a result of the reduction in flow, which would encourage reed growth (2%).  Agricultural activities in the catchment and nutrient input would increase macrophyte growth particularly that of reeds, sedges, macroalgae and submerged macrophytes. However nutrient input would be slightly less than present because of the reduction in river flow. Reeds have established on the east bank below and above the R72 bridge (5% change).	H
2b. Community composition	95	The nutrient changes, decrease in flooding and frequency of mouth closure has increased reed, submerged macrophyte and macroalgal cover reducing open water surface area and bare sand and mudflats. The score remains the same as for the present condition as the response to the small decrease in nutrients is counteracted by the decrease in flow and increase in closed mouth conditions.	H
<b>Macrophytes score</b>	<b>81</b>		H

## Invertebrates

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
<b>Zooplankton</b>			
1. Species richness	90	Zooplankton diversity within the system is likely to be reduced due to the poor representation of marine breeding species to the total zooplankton community within the system.	M
2a. Abundance	85	The total zooplankton biomass is likely to increase.	M
2b. Community composition	80	The zooplankton community composition within the estuary will numerically be dominated by estuarine species.	M
<b>Macrobenthos</b>			
1. Species richness	90	Because of a slight increase in mouth closure, the probability of the zoobenthos moving towards distinct substructures (a marine associated group at the mouth and a riverine associated subgroup at the head) will be reduced. Instead, the community will maintain two basic substructures based on substrate type (a sand and muddy community) for longer periods. Data suggest that in order to develop substructures based on salinity, the mouth should remain open for >1month and this will be complimented by a stronger base flow to maintain mouth opening. If seed germination of the macrophyte community is negatively affected by increases in salinity, this will have a negative ripple effect on the macrozoobenthos. The probability therefore of a low salinity community becoming briefly established is reduced. Allow a 5 % change.	H

2a. Abundance	85	Because of the increase in submerged macrophyte biomass (including expansion into marginal areas presently experiencing occasional intertidal effects), abundance levels will remain high for extended periods with fewer crashes when the mouth opened (drainage effects).	
2b. Community composition	95	Unlikely to change much when compared to the PS. Species are well adapted to natural variability in environmental factors.	H
<b>Hyperbenthos</b>			
1. Species richness	80	The slight increase in the duration of mouth closure will likely be associated with a slight decline in species richness resulting from reduced recruitment opportunities of marine breeding species into the estuary.	H
2a. Abundance	80	The reduced recruitment opportunities are likely to be associated with a slight decline in the total abundance and biomass of hyperbenthos.	H
2b. Community composition	80	The hyperbenthos community is likely to be comprised mainly of estuarine species.	H
<b>Invertebrates score</b>	<b>80</b>		H

### Fish

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	90	Little difference in species richness is likely to have occurred between RC and Scenario 1. Allow for a 5% change.	M
2a. Abundance	80	The abundance of macrophyte associated fish species is likely to increase and that of bare substratum associated fish species will decrease.  The abundance of anguillid eels moving through the estuary is also likely to decrease due to the dam blocking much of the catchment to colonisation by these fishes.  The reduction in open mouth conditions will impact on recruitment into the systems.	M
2b. Community composition	80	As above.	M
<b>Fish score</b>	<b>80</b>		

### Birds

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	90	No expected loss of species, possibly a minor gain in species due to increased reeds  Allow for a 5% change.	M
2a. Abundance	82	A slight decrease in abundance of piscivores species, the most common group.  Prolong mouth closure may affect fish availability for larger piscivores bird species.	M
2b. Community composition	85	Because of the above, a very slight change in community composition	M
<b>Bird score</b>	<b>82</b>		M

## 1.6 Future Scenario 2: Intermittent river abstraction

### 1.6.1 Abiotic Components

#### a) Seasonal variability in river inflow:

Monthly simulated runoff data for the Future Scenario 2 is provided in Table 4.2. A summary of flow distribution (mean monthly flows in  $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the Future Scenario 2, derived from the 83-year simulated data set, is provided below:

	OCT	NOV	DEC	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP
99%ile	0.765	1.183	0.665	0.245	0.803	1.524	1.023	2.702	1.127	0.931	0.958	1.513
90%ile	0.240	0.236	0.162	0.074	0.052	0.184	0.205	0.152	0.200	0.113	0.103	0.230
80%ile	0.117	0.074	0.065	0.012	0.019	0.081	0.064	0.051	0.039	0.025	0.037	0.065
70%ile	0.064	0.047	0.023	0.004	0.006	0.027	0.043	0.019	0.010	0.009	0.017	0.029
60%ile	0.024	0.027	0.008	0.001	0.002	0.010	0.025	0.007	0.004	0.003	0.008	0.010
50%ile	0.010	0.016	0.003	0.000	0.000	0.003	0.003	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.005
40%ile	0.003	0.005	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.003
30%ile	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
20%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
10%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

#### b) Present flood regime

The flood regime is judged to be very similar to that under RC based on the fact that the simulated monthly runoff data indicate very little change for months of flow higher than  $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 5.3 % decrease in the floods to the estuary.

*Confidence: Medium*

#### c) Present sediment processes

The hydrological data indicate that the magnitude and occurrence of major floods has hardly been reduced. This also means that the flushing of sediments during such floods has hardly been reduced. It is therefore likely that the sedimentation in the estuary is not much different from what it was under RC. There may be some increased erosion in the catchment.


*Confidence: Low*

**Table 0.2** Simulated monthly volumes (million m<sup>3</sup>) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for Future Scenario 2.

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breach	High Flow Breach
1920	0.15	0.15	0.21	0.22	0.23	0.34	0.15	0.35	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.38	1	1
1921	0.38	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.35	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.26	4	3
1922	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.20	0.26	0.28	0.28	3	3
1923	0.29	0.32	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.41	0	0
1924	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.15	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	3	1
1925	0.20	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.28	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.33	0	0
1926	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.28	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	1	1
1927	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.23	0.15	4	2
1928	0.15	0.34	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.15	4	4
1929	0.15	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.19	0.23	0.29	2	1
1930	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.38	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.42	0.15	0.18	3	1
1931	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.38	0.38	0.15	4	4
1932	0.15	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.45	0.15	3	1
1933	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.21	0.22	0.15	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.15	0.15	0.15	5	3
1934	0.15	0.28	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.23	0.23	4	3
1935	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0	0
1936	0.15	0.15	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.32	3	3
1937	0.32	0.34	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.36	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	3	2
1938	0.38	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.30	5	4
1939	0.15	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	5	3
1940	0.30	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	3	2
1941	0.16	0.20	0.15	0.32	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.42	0.44	0.44	0.45	0.15	2	0
1942	0.41	0.15	0.16	0.33	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.27	0.28	2	0
1943	0.28	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.23	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	3	2
1944	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.43	0	0
1945	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	1	0
1946	0.23	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.32	0.33	0.39	0.15	0.21	0.21	2	1
1947	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	2	2
1948	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.32	1	1
1949	0.32	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	5	4
1950	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.15	5	5
1951	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.27	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	3	2
1952	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.43	0.15	2	2
1953	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.15	0.25	0.15	0.31	0.34	0.15	0.31	5	4
1954	0.38	0.15	0.21	0.23	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.36	1	0
1955	0.39	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.29	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.15	2	0
1956	0.22	0.27	0.40	0.42	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.15	2	1
1957	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	2	2
1958	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.24	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.28	1	0
1959	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.27	1	0
1960	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.30	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.33	1	0
1961	0.33	0.37	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	1	1
1962	0.15	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.20	0.20	5	3
1963	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.15	3	2
1964	0.39	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.43	0.43	0.15	0.30	0.35	0.38	0.39	1	0
1965	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.15	0.19	3	1

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breach	High Flow Breach
1966	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.27	0.29	0.33	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.43	0.45	2	2
1967	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.15	0.22	0.23	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.18	4	2
1968	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.21	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	1	0
1969	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.15	0.15	2	2
1970	0.15	0.22	0.15	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.33	0.34	3	3
1971	0.38	0.38	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.24	1	0
1972	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.34	0.37	0	0
1973	0.37	0.15	0.19	0.28	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.38	7	6
1974	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.41	0.15	1	1
1975	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.29	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.15	0.17	3	3
1976	0.29	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.36	0.37	0.15	0.26	0.29	0.29	0.29	2	1
1977	0.29	0.42	0.15	0.23	0.23	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.37	0.40	0.40	0.40	3	3
1978	0.15	0.18	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.15	0.15	0.15	4	3
1979	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.20	0	0
1980	0.21	0.28	0.30	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.33	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.23	4	3
1981	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.42	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	1	0
1982	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.25	0.25	1	1
1983	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	0.37	0.39	0.39	1	1
1984	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0	0
1985	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.35	0.40	3	2
1986	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.27	0.30	0.32	0.34	1	0
1987	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.25	1	0
1988	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.40	0.44	0.44	0.45	0.45	0.15	1	0
1989	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.30	0.32	0.32	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.15	5	3
1990	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.31	0.34	0	0
1991	0.15	0.19	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.15	3	2
1992	0.15	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.38	0.39	0.43	0.15	2	1
1993	0.20	0.20	0.38	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.24	2	0
1994	0.24	0.24	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	2	2
1995	0.29	0.34	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0	0
1996	0.38	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	4	3
1997	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.30	0.34	0.36	1	1
1998	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.19	0.21	1	0
1999	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.44	3	3
2000	0.15	0.38	0.44	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.34	0.42	0.15	3	0
2001	0.19	0.31	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.15	0.15	3	3
2002	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	3	3
Average													2.34	1.55

 High flow breaching

 Low flow breaching

#### d) EHI for the Future Scenario 2

##### Hydrology

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
a. % similarity in period of low flows OR Present MAR as a % of MAR in the reference condition.	95	For the East Kleinemonde River estuary low flows are defined as less than $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ .  Months with flows less than $0.116 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ occurred under the RC for 86.0 of the year. Under Scenario 2 low flows occur for 87.5 % of the year.	L
b. % similarity in mean annual frequency of floods.	90	The reduction in high flows is deemed to be very small based on the very limited reduction in monthly high flows. The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 5.3% decrease in the floods to the estuary under Scenario 2.  The slight decrease in high flows is assumed to be an artefact of the manner in which this Scenario was generated and not realistic (See Appendix B)	L
<b>Hydrology score</b>	<b>93</b>		L

##### Hydrodynamics and mouth condition

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
Change in mean duration of closure, e.g. over a 5 or 10 year period.	85	Under the RC the East Kleinemonde estuary mouth breaching could potentially have occurred in 2.6 months of the year over the 83-year period. Of these 1.9 was related to high flow events that breached the system instantaneously.  Under the Scenario 2 mouth breaching (State 1 and 2) has reduced to 2.3 months of the year over the 83-year period (88.9 similar to the RC). Of these 1.6 was related to high flow events (State 1) that breached the system instantaneously.	L
<b>Hydrodynamics and mouth conditions score</b>	<b>85</b>		L

##### Water quality

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Change in the longitudinal salinity gradient (%) and vertical salinity stratification.	85	As the river inflow to the East Kleinemonde Estuary and the frequency of breaching events is very similar to the RC, it is assumed that the salinity will also be very similar.	L
2a. Nitrate/phosphate (inorganic nutrient) concentration in the estuary.	75	River DIN concentrations increased from RC to PS (>10 times during high flow events and ~ 3 times during low flow periods), associated with agricultural activities in the catchment. Although the influence of river inflow (as indicated by salinity) in this system is generally limited to the upper reaches and despite an overall reduction in river inflow, these marked increases in river DIN would nevertheless have resulted in a significant increase in DIN loads to the system compared with the RC.  However, because river inflow in Scenario 2 is 5% less than under the PS, modification to DIN loads should be less. Therefore allow a 25% modification from RC (i.e. 5% less than for PS).	L

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
2b. Suspended solids (turbidity) in the estuary.	85	Turbidity in the system is influenced by river inflow and turbulence associated with tidal exchange (during intermittently open phase). There is a slight decrease in the probable occurrence of intermittently open phases during States 1 and 2 compared with the RC (1 month less) This will result in a decrease in turbidity. Allow for 5% modification from RC. Furthermore, there is a 10% reduction in river inflow compared to RC, further decreasing turbidity. Allow a further 10% modification from RC.	L
2c. Dissolved oxygen in the estuary.	75	There is a slight increase in the occurrence of the closed state (State 3) versus intermittently open phase (States 1 and 2) in Scenario 2 compared with RC. DO concentrations are expected to decrease with an increase in the frequency and duration of the closed state. Therefore allow for a 5% modification from RC.  However an increase in nutrient (and possibly organic) loading from the catchment (associated with agricultural activity) could have increased oxygen demand under the Scenario 2. Because river inflow in Scenario 2 is 5% less than under the PS, modification to DO should be less. Therefore allow a further 10% modification from RC.  More mouth closure will cause increased macrophytes and filamentous algae growth and decomposition, causing lower DO. Allow for further 10% modification.	L
2d. Levels of toxins.	85	There are no major industrial activities in the catchment. However, extensive agricultural developments probably introduce some toxic substances (e.g. pesticides) into the system. Because river inflow in Scenario 2 is 5% less than under the PS, modification in terms of toxins should be less. Therefore allow a 15% modification from RC (i.e. 5% less than for PS).	L
<b>Water Quality score</b>	<b>79</b>		L

### Physical habitat alteration

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE	
<b>1. Resemblance of intertidal sediment structure and distribution to reference condition</b>				
1a	% similarity in intertidal area exposed.	85	Allow 5% change in the intertidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 5% is allocated for the stabilisation of the lower estuary and 5% infilling of the intertidal area.	L
1b	% similarity in sand fraction relative to total sand and mud.	75	The bridge acts as barrier that prevents the development of a gradient from marine sediment below the bridge to muddier sediment in the upper reaches. The system may also have become slightly muddier due to land-use changes in the catchment.	L
2	Resemblance of subtidal estuary to reference condition: depth, bed or channel morphology.	90	Allow 5% change in the subtidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 5% is allocated for the stabilisation of the lower estuary.	L
<b>Anthropogenic influence:</b>				
	Percentage of overall change in intertidal and supratidal habitat caused by anthropogenic activity as opposed to modifications to water flow into estuary.	95	Sedimentation may have occurred due to change in land-use in the catchment and the bridge.	L

Percentage of overall change in <u>subtidal habitat</u> caused by <b>anthropogenic</b> modifications (e.g. bridges, weirs, jetties) rather than modifications to water flow into estuary.	95	Sedimentation may have occurred due to change in land-use in the catchment, e.g. agricultural and the bridge.	L
<b>Physical habitat score</b>	<b>85</b>		

## 1.6.2 Biotic Components

- a) **Predicted change in biotic characteristics of the future Scenario 2 compared with the Reference Condition, as well as the causes of these changes:**

### **MICROALGAE**

#### **Phytoplankton**

Under Scenario 2 the decrease in the frequency of floods is represented by a change of about 5% from RC. This suggests that there would be little change in the phytoplankton and microphytobenthic (MPB) chlorophyll *a* levels from natural condition. The annual distribution patterns of low river inflows under this scenario indicates less periods of low flow conditions, thus indicating little variation from RC and would likely be the case for microalgal biomass and community patterns.

#### **Benthic microalgae**

Microphytobenthic habitat loss during floods and open mouth conditions, and accretion following mouth closure in Scenario 2, is probably not very different from the RC. Turbidity conditions would also possibly remain similar. Seepage areas act as sources of additional nutrient input for MPBs and would influence benthic primary production.

Confidence: Low

### **MACROPHYTES**

The influence of the off-channel storage dam with intermittent pumping results in a removal of low flows but the effect on floods is similar to that of the present state. This scenario has less of an influence on mouth closure and the salinity gradient compared to Scenario 1 but there are higher nitrate and phosphate inputs. Mouth closure, salinity and nutrients have the greatest effect on the macrophytes and therefore this scenario results in slightly higher scores for the macrophytes compared to Scenario 1.

Confidence: Medium

### **INVERTEBRATES (including Macrobenthos, Zooplankton and Hyperbenthos)**

#### **Macrobenthos**

A reduction in low flow conditions will probably lead to higher salinity values throughout the estuary with little variability between the upper and lower estuary. Because of a reduced base flow, the mouth is likely to close sooner than under Reference condition. Salinity gradients will probably not persist for long enough to allow the macrozoobenthic community to develop substructures based on the salinity pattern.

Confidence: Medium

#### **Zooplankton**

The reduction in flow is likely to be associated with an increase in the total zooplankton biomass within the system. The occasional flood will be associated with a decline in the zooplankton biomass within the system as biomass rich estuarine waters are exported to the marine environment.

Confidence: Medium.

#### **Hyperbenthos**

The occasional flood will provide opportunities for the recruitment of *P.peringueyi* into the estuary.

Confidence: Medium

### **FISH**

Because there is likely to be little change in open mouth conditions between the RC and Scenario 2, it is highly likely that the fish assemblage will be very similar to that found in the natural state. Small changes in fish distribution and abundance are likely due to the slight reductions in high flows and base flows when compared to the RC.

Confidence: Medium

### **BIRDS**

The avifauna is unlikely to be affected by slight changes in mouth conditions. An increase in the submerged macrophytes will attract coots and possibly grebes. Small changes in fish populations are unlikely to affect piscivorous bird numbers.

Confidence: Low

b) EHI for the Future Scenario 2:

**Microalgae**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
<b>Phytoplankton</b>			
1. Species richness	90	There is minimal difference between river inflow patterns under the RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.0) and Scenario 2 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton species richness has probably not changed markedly. Allow a 5% change, which is equivalent to a score of 90.	M
2a. Abundance	95	There is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.0) and Scenario 2 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton abundance has probably not changed markedly.	M
2b. Community composition	95	Since there is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 98.2) and Scenario 2 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton species composition has probably not changed markedly.	M
<b>Benthic microalgae</b>			
1. Species richness	80	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 2 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Species richness would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions, which is equivalent to a score of 80.	M
2a. Abundance	90	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 2 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Microphytobenthic abundance would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions.	M
2b. Community composition	90	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 2 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Community composition would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions.	M
<b>Microalgae score</b>	<b>80</b>		<b>M</b>

## Macrophytes

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	95	There may have been a small loss in opportunistic brackish species as a result of the reduction in flooding and increase in salinity (2% change).	M
2a. Abundance	83	<p>There is a reduction in low flows but the effect on floods is similar to that of the PS. This scenario has less of an influence on mouth closure and the salinity gradient compared to Scenario 1 but there are higher nitrate and phosphate inputs. The influence on the macrophytes is less than for Scenario 1 and therefore the scores lie between that of the PS and Scenario 1</p> <p>Closed mouth conditions and a decrease in high flow breaching events would result in an increase in submerged macrophyte (5%) and macroalgal abundance (5%). Sedimentation would also occur in the intertidal zone as a result of the reduction in flow, which would encourage reed growth (2%).</p> <p>Agricultural activities in the catchment and nutrient input will increase macrophyte growth particularly that of reeds, sedges, macroalgae and submerged macrophytes. However nutrient input will be slightly less than at present because of the reduction in river flow.</p> <p>Reeds will establish on the east bank below and above the R72 bridge (5 % change).</p>	M
2b. Community composition	95	<p>The nutrient changes, decrease in flooding and frequency of mouth closure will increase reed, submerged macrophyte and macroalgal cover reducing open water surface area and bare sand and mudflats. The score remains the same as for PC because the response to the small decrease in nutrients is counteracted by the decrease in flow and increase in closed mouth conditions.</p> <p>Reed beds may encroach on submerged macrophyte habitat on the East bank.</p>	M
<b>Macrophytes score</b>	<b>83</b>		M

## Invertebrates

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
<b>Zooplankton</b>			
1. Species richness	90	The minimal difference in flow between the various scenarios suggests that there will be little change in the zooplankton species richness within the system.	M
2a. Abundance	80	The increase in the duration of mouth closure is likely to be associated with an increase in the total zooplankton biomass within the system.	M
2b. Community composition	90	The community composition is unlikely to change	M
<b>Macrobenthos</b>			
1. Species richness	80	The probability of a low salinity community becoming briefly established is reduced, probably at a level slightly lower than Scenario 1. Although floods are not affected, a reduction in base flow will lead to salinity values returning to a weaker horizontal gradient faster. This may not allow a freshwater linked community to develop. Allow for a 10% change.	M

2a. Abundance	90	Because of the increase in submerged macrophyte biomass (including expansion into marginal areas presently experiencing occasional intertidal effects), abundance levels will remain high for extended periods with the frequency of crashes similar to the present condition (drainage effects).	M
2b. Community composition	95	Unlikely to change compared to the present condition. Species are well adapted to natural variability in environmental factors	M
<b>Hyperbenthos</b>			
1. Species richness	90	The minimal difference in flow between the various scenarios suggests that there will be little change in the hyperbenthos species richness within the system.	M
2a. Abundance	80	The extended mouth closure is likely to be associated with a decline in the total biomass of Hyperbenthos due to reduced recruitment opportunities of marine breeding species into the estuary.	M
2b. Community composition	90	Unlikely to change compared to the present condition. Species are well adapted to natural variability in environmental factors.	
<b>Invertebrates score</b>	<b>80</b>		M

### Fish

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	90	Little difference in species richness is likely to have occurred between the RC and Scenario 2. Allow for a 5% change.	M
2a. Abundance	87	The abundance of macrophyte associated fish species is likely to increase and that of bare substratum associated fish species will decrease.	M
2b. Community composition	85	As above.	M
<b>Fish score</b>	<b>85</b>		M

### Birds

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	90	Species richness is unlikely to change compared to RC. Allow for a 5% change.	L
2a. Abundance	85	Increase in species associated with submerged macrophytes, negligible change in most piscivorous species.	L
2b. Community composition	90	Slight change due to the above.	L
<b>Bird score</b>	<b>85</b>		L

## 1.7 Future Scenario 3: Similar to Scenario 2 but including other non-flow related anthropogenic activities

### 1.7.1 Abiotic Components

#### a) Seasonal variability in river inflow:

Monthly simulated runoff data for the Future Scenario 3 is provided in Table 4.3. A summary of flow distribution (mean monthly flows in  $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the Future Scenario 3, derived from the 83-year simulated data set, is provided below:

	OCT	NOV	DEC	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP
99%ile	0.765	1.183	0.665	0.245	0.803	1.524	1.023	2.702	1.127	0.931	0.958	1.513
90%ile	0.240	0.236	0.162	0.074	0.052	0.184	0.205	0.152	0.200	0.113	0.103	0.230
80%ile	0.117	0.074	0.065	0.012	0.019	0.081	0.064	0.051	0.039	0.025	0.037	0.065
70%ile	0.064	0.047	0.023	0.004	0.006	0.027	0.043	0.019	0.010	0.009	0.017	0.029
60%ile	0.024	0.027	0.008	0.001	0.002	0.010	0.025	0.007	0.004	0.003	0.008	0.010
50%ile	0.010	0.016	0.003	0.000	0.000	0.003	0.003	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.005
40%ile	0.003	0.005	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.003
30%ile	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
20%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
10%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

#### b) Present flood regime

The flood regime is judged to be very similar to that under reference conditions based on the fact that the simulated monthly runoff data indicate very little change for months of flow higher than  $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 5.3 % decrease in the floods to the estuary.

*Confidence: Medium*

#### c) Present sediment processes


The hydrological data indicate that the magnitude and occurrence of major floods has hardly been reduced. This also means that the flushing of sediments during such floods has hardly been reduced. It is therefore likely that sedimentation in the estuary will not be much different to what it was under natural conditions. There may be some increased erosion in the catchment.


*Confidence: Low*

**Table 0.3** Simulated monthly volumes (million m<sup>3</sup>) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for Future Scenario 3.

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breach	High Flow Breach
1920	0.15	0.15	0.21	0.22	0.23	0.34	0.15	0.35	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.38	1	1
1921	0.38	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.35	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.26	4	3
1922	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.20	0.26	0.28	0.28	3	3
1923	0.29	0.32	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.41	0	0
1924	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.15	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	3	1
1925	0.20	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.28	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.33	0	0
1926	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.28	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	1	1
1927	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.23	0.15	4	2
1928	0.15	0.34	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.15	4	4
1929	0.15	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.19	0.23	0.29	2	1
1930	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.38	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.42	0.15	0.18	3	1
1931	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.38	0.38	0.15	4	4
1932	0.15	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.45	0.15	3	1
1933	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.21	0.22	0.15	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.15	0.15	0.15	5	3
1934	0.15	0.28	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.23	0.23	4	3
1935	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0	0
1936	0.15	0.15	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.32	3	3
1937	0.32	0.34	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.36	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	3	2
1938	0.38	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.30	5	4
1939	0.15	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	5	3
1940	0.30	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	3	2
1941	0.16	0.20	0.15	0.32	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.42	0.44	0.44	0.45	0.15	2	0
1942	0.41	0.15	0.16	0.33	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.27	0.28	2	0
1943	0.28	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.23	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	3	2
1944	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.43	0	0
1945	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	1	0
1946	0.23	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.32	0.33	0.39	0.15	0.21	0.21	2	1
1947	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	2	2
1948	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.32	1	1
1949	0.32	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	5	4
1950	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.15	5	5
1951	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.27	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	3	2
1952	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.43	0.15	2	2
1953	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.15	0.25	0.15	0.31	0.34	0.15	0.31	5	4
1954	0.38	0.15	0.21	0.23	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.36	1	0
1955	0.39	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.29	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.15	2	0
1956	0.22	0.27	0.40	0.42	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.15	2	1
1957	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	2	2
1958	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.24	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.28	1	0
1959	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.27	1	0
1960	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.30	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.33	1	0
1961	0.33	0.37	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	1	1
1962	0.15	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.20	0.20	5	3
1963	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.15	3	2
1964	0.39	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.43	0.43	0.15	0.30	0.35	0.38	0.39	1	0
1965	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.15	0.19	3	1
1966	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.27	0.29	0.33	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.43	0.45	2	2

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breach	High Flow Breach
1967	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.15	0.22	0.23	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.18	4	2
1968	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.21	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	1	0
1969	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.15	0.15	2	2
1970	0.15	0.22	0.15	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.33	0.34	3	3
1971	0.38	0.38	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.24	1	0
1972	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.34	0.37	0	0
1973	0.37	0.15	0.19	0.28	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.38	7	6
1974	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.41	0.15	1	1
1975	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.29	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.15	0.17	3	3
1976	0.29	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.36	0.37	0.15	0.26	0.29	0.29	0.29	2	1
1977	0.29	0.42	0.15	0.23	0.23	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.37	0.40	0.40	0.40	3	3
1978	0.15	0.18	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.15	0.15	0.15	4	3
1979	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.20	0	0
1980	0.21	0.28	0.30	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.33	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.23	4	3
1981	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.42	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	1	0
1982	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.25	0.25	1	1
1983	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	0.37	0.39	0.39	1	1
1984	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0	0
1985	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.35	0.40	3	2
1986	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.27	0.30	0.32	0.34	1	0
1987	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.25	1	0
1988	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.40	0.44	0.44	0.45	0.45	0.15	1	0
1989	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.30	0.32	0.32	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.15	5	3
1990	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.31	0.34	0	0
1991	0.15	0.19	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.15	3	2
1992	0.15	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.38	0.39	0.43	0.15	2	1
1993	0.20	0.20	0.38	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.24	2	0
1994	0.24	0.24	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	2	2
1995	0.29	0.34	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0	0
1996	0.38	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	4	3
1997	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.30	0.34	0.36	1	1
1998	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.19	0.21	1	0
1999	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.44	3	3
2000	0.15	0.38	0.44	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.34	0.42	0.15	3	0
2001	0.19	0.31	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.15	0.15	3	3
2002	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	3	3
													2.34	1.55

 High flow breaching

 Low flow breaching

#### d) EHI for the Future Scenario 3

##### Hydrology

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
a. % similarity in period of low flows OR Present MAR as a % of MAR in the reference condition.	95	For the East Kleinemonde River, estuary low flows are defined as less than $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ . Months with flows $< 0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ occurred under the RC for 86.0 % of the year. Under the Scenario 3 low flows occur for 87.5% of the year. Assume that the increase housing development and farming of the catchment will not substantially change hydrology.	L
b. % similarity in mean annual frequency of floods.	90	The reduction in high flows is deemed to be very small based on the very limited reduction in monthly high flows. The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 5.3% decrease in the floods to the estuary under Scenario 3. The slight decrease in high flows is assumed to be an artefact of the manner in which this scenario was generated (See Appendix A)	L
<b>Hydrology score</b>	<b>93</b>		L

##### Hydrodynamics and mouth condition

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
Change in mean duration of closure, e.g. over a 5 or 10 year period.	85	Under the RC the East Kleinemonde Estuary mouth breaching could potentially have occurred in 2.6 months of the year over the 83 year period. Of these 1.9 was related to high flow events that breached the system instantaneously. Under Scenario 3 mouth breaching (State 1 and 2) has been reduced to 2.3 months of the year over the 83 year period (88.9 similar to the RC). Of these 1.6 was related to high flow events (State 1) that breached the system instantaneously.	L
<b>Hydrodynamics and mouth conditions score</b>	<b>85</b>		L

##### Water quality

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Change in the longitudinal salinity gradient (%) and vertical salinity stratification.	85	As the river inflow to the East Kleinemonde Estuary and the frequency of breaching events is very similar to the RC, it is assumed that the salinity will also be very similar.	L
2a. Nitrate/phosphate (inorganic nutrient) concentration in the estuary.	50	<p>River DIN concentrations increased from RC to PS (&gt;10 times during high flow events and ~ 3 times during low flow periods), associated with agricultural activities in the catchment. Although the influence of river inflow (as indicated by salinity) in this system is generally limited to the upper reaches and despite an overall reduction in river inflow, these marked increases in river DIN would nevertheless have resulted in a significant increase in DIN loads to the system compared with the RC.</p> <p>However, because river inflow in Scenario 3 is 5% less than under the PS, modification to DIN loads should be less. Therefore allow a 25% modification from RC (i.e. 5% less than for PS).</p> <p>However there is also expected to be a <u>marked</u> increase in nutrient loading due to increased septic tank seepage and return flow from gardens and hardened surfaces (i.e. increased storm water runoff). Allow for a further 25% modification.</p>	L

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
2b. Suspended solids (turbidity) in the estuary.	75	<p>Turbidity in the system is influenced by river inflow (higher turbidity concentration) and turbulence associated with tidal exchange (during intermittently open/closed states)</p> <p>There is a slight decrease in the probable occurrence of intermittently open phases (States 1 and 2) compared with the RC (1 month less) This will result in a decrease in turbidity. Allow for 5% modification from the RC.</p> <p>Furthermore, there is a 10% reduction in river inflow compared to RC, further decreasing turbidity in the upper reaches. Allow a further 10% modification from RC.</p> <p>Storm water drains and erosion from surrounding areas, due to increased development, may introduce turbidity into the lower reaches of the system (where turbidity from river inflows would not have had an influence), thus allow for an additional 10% modification.</p>	L
2c. Dissolved oxygen in the estuary	65	<p>There is a slight increase in the occurrence of the closed state (State 3) versus intermittently open/closed phases (States 1 and 2) in Scenario 2 compared with RC. DO concentrations are expected to decrease with an increase in the frequency and duration of the closed state, therefore allow for a 5% modification from RC.</p> <p>However an increase in nutrient (and possibly organic) loading from the catchment (associated with agricultural activity) could have increased oxygen demand under the Scenario 3. Because river inflow in Scenario 3 (as in Scenario 2) is 5% less than under the PS, modification to DO should be less. Therefore allow a further 10% modification from RC (i.e. 5% less than for PS).</p> <p>More mouth closure will cause increased macrophytes and filamentous algae growth, causing lower DO, allow for further 10% modification.</p> <p>Furthermore, increased organic loading due to increased septic tank seepage and return flow from gardens and hardened surfaces (i.e. increase in storm water runoff) may cause even further reductions in DO. Allow for a further 10% modification.</p>	L

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
2d. Levels of toxins.	70	<p>There are no major urban or industrial activities in the catchment. However, extensive agricultural developments probably introduce some toxic substances (e.g. pesticides) into the system.</p> <p>However, because river inflow in Scenario 3 (as in Scenario 2) is 5% less than under the PS, modification in terms of toxins should be less. Therefore allow a 15% modification from RC (i.e. 5% less than for PS).</p> <p>The level of toxins in the system is expected to increase under Scenario 3 because there will be increased boating activity (oils, fuels, antifouling agents), increase storm water runoff (e.g. trace metals and hydrocarbons). The system is particularly sensitive as it does not open frequently and toxins can therefore accumulate. Allow a further 15% modification.</p>	L
<b>Water Quality score</b>	<b>64</b>		L

### Physical habitat alteration

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE	
<b>1. Resemblance of intertidal sediment structure and distribution to reference condition</b>				
1a	% similarity in intertidal area exposed.	75	<p>Allow 5% change in the intertidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 20 % is allocated for stabilisation, construction of jetties and infilling of the intertidal area of the estuary.</p>	L
1b	% similarity in sand fraction relative to total sand and mud.	70	<p>The bridge act as a barrier that prevents the development of a gradient from marine sediment below the bridge to muddier sediment in the upper reaches, e.g. invertebrate communities may be distinctly different at the mouth.</p> <p>The system may have become even muddier due to land-use changes in the catchment.</p>	L
2	Resemblance of subtidal estuary to reference condition: depth, bed or channel morphology.	80	<p>Allow 5% change in the subtidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 5 % is allocated for the stabilisation of the lower estuary.</p> <p>Channel modification to provide access for power boats.</p>	L
<b>Anthropogenic influence:</b>				
	Percentage of overall change in intertidal and supratidal habitat caused by anthropogenic activity as opposed to modifications to water flow into estuary.	95	<p>Sedimentation may occur due to change in land-use in the catchment and the bridge.</p>	L
	Percentage of overall change in subtidal habitat caused by anthropogenic modifications (e.g. bridges, weirs, bulkheads, training walls, jetties, marinas) rather than modifications to water flow into estuary.	95	<p>Sedimentation may occur due to change in land-use in the catchment, e.g. agricultural and the bridge.</p>	L
<b>Physical habitat score</b>		<b>76</b>		L

### 4.3.2 Biotic Components

a) Predicted change in biotic characteristics of the future Scenario 3 compared with the Reference Condition, as well as the causes of these changes:

---

#### MICROALGAE

---

##### Phytoplankton

Under Scenario 3 the decrease in the frequencies of floods is represented by a change of about 5.3% from RC. This suggests that there would be little change in the phytoplankton and microphytobenthic (MPB) chlorophyll *a* levels from natural condition. The annual distribution patterns of low river inflows under this scenario indicates less periods of low flow conditions, thus indicating little variation from RC and would likely be the case for microalgal biomass and community patterns. An increase in nutrient input may enhance chlorophyll *a* biomass and alter species composition as a result of increased return flow and increased seepage points.

##### Benthic microalgae

Microphytobenthic habitat loss during floods and open mouth conditions and accretion following mouth closure Scenario 3 is probably not very different from the RC. Turbidity conditions would also possibly remain similar. An increase in seepage areas act as sources of additional nutrient input for MPBs and would likely influence benthic primary production.

Confidence: Medium

---

#### MACROPHYTES

---

The influence of the off-channel storage dam with intermittent pumping results in a removal of low flows but the effect on floods is similar to that of the PS. Infilling of the intertidal areas and stabilisation of the lower estuary due to housing developments would facilitate reed encroachment. An increase in nutrients due to increased septic tank input, stormwater run-off and return flow from gardens and hardened surfaces would increase the abundance of macrophytes particularly that of reeds, sedges, macroalgae and submerged macrophytes. In particular macroalgae would increase in abundance potentially displacing other habitats.

Confidence: Medium

---

#### INVERTEBRATES (including Macrobenthos, Zooplankton and Hyperbenthos)

---

##### Macrobenthos

A reduction in low flow conditions will probably lead to higher salinity values throughout the estuary with little variability between the upper and lower estuary. Since flooding will be less affected compared to Scenario 1, the occasional flood will open the mouth but because of a reduced base flow, the mouth is likely to close sooner than under RC. Salinity gradients will probably not persist for long enough to allow the macrozoobenthic community to develop substructures based on the salinity pattern (development of a river-associated community).

Confidence: Medium

##### Zooplankton

The zooplankton community composition and biomass under Scenario 3 is unlikely to change from the RC.

Confidence: Medium

##### Hyperbenthos

The low deviation in frequency of floods from the RC to that proposed in Scenario 3, suggests that there will be no/little change in the biomass of *P.peringueyi* in the estuary.

---

#### FISH

---

Since there is likely to be little change in open mouth conditions between the Reference Condition and Scenario 2, it is highly likely that the fish assemblage will be very similar to that found in the natural state. Small changes in fish distribution and abundance are likely due to the slight reductions in high flows and base flows when compared to the RC.

Confidence: Medium

---

#### BIRDS

---

The avifauna is unlikely to be affected by slight changes in mouth conditions. An increase in macrophytes will attract coots and possibly grebes. Small changes in fish populations are unlikely to affect piscivorous bird numbers. An increase in human disturbance factors of feeding, roosting and nesting habitat (walking, swimming, boating, fishing, housing developments) will impact negatively on bird abundance.

Confidence: Low

---

b) EHI for the Future Scenario 3:

**Microalgae**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
<b>Phytoplankton</b>			
1. Species richness	65	<p>There is minimal difference between river inflow patterns under the RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.0) and Scenario 3 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton species richness has probably not changed markedly.</p> <p>Increased nutrients bring in opportunistic forms at the expense of rarer form. Allow for a 20% change, which is equivalent to a score of 65.</p>	L
2a. Abundance	80	<p>There is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.0) and Scenario 3 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton abundances have probably not changed markedly.</p> <p>An increase in nuisance algal blooms due to an increase in nutrients would affect phytoplankton abundance.</p>	L
2b. Community composition	80	<p>Since there is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 98.2) and Scenario 3 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton species composition has probably not changed markedly.</p> <p>Increase in nuisance algal blooms due to an increase in nutrients would affect phytoplankton species composition.</p>	L
<b>Benthic microalgae</b>			
1. Species richness	65	<p>Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 3 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Species richness would likely have had a deviation of approximately 20% from natural conditions.</p> <p>Sediment infilling, and an increase in nutrients would decrease species diversity as a result.</p>	L
2a. Abundance	80	<p>Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 3 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Microphytobenthic abundances would likely have had a deviation of approximately 20% from natural conditions. Increases in nutrients would affect abundance as a result.</p>	L
2b. Community composition	80	<p>Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 3 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Community composition would likely have had a deviation of approximately 20% from natural conditions.</p> <p>Increases in nutrients would alter species composition as a result.</p>	L
<b>Microalgae score</b>	<b>65</b>		<b>L</b>

## Macrophytes

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	90	<p>There may have been a loss in opportunistic brackish species as a result of the reduction in flooding and increase in salinity (5% change).</p> <p>Some infilling may change substrate characteristics that might cause the loss of rare species. Increased development and proximity of gardens could result in the introduction of exotic plants particularly in the supratidal-terrestrial habitat.</p>	L
2a. Abundance	60	<p>There is a reduction in low flows but the effect on floods is similar to that of the PS. Reeds will become established on the east bank below and above the R72 bridge (15% change). Infilling of the intertidal areas and stabilisation of the lower estuary due to housing developments would facilitate reed encroachment.</p> <p>Closed mouth conditions and a decrease in high flow breaching events would result in an increase in submerged macrophytes (5%) and macroalgal abundance (5%). Sedimentation would also occur in the intertidal zone as a result of the reduction in flow, which would encourage reed growth (2%).</p> <p>An increase in nutrients due to increased septic tank input, stormwater run-off and return flow from gardens and hardened surfaces would increase the abundance of macrophytes particularly that of reeds, sedges, macroalgae and submerged macrophytes (13%).</p>	L
2b. Community composition	70	<p>The nutrient changes, decrease in flooding and frequency of mouth closure will increase reed, submerged macrophyte and macroalgal cover reducing open water surface area and bare sand and mudflats. Increased nutrients will result in macroalgal blooms which would displace other vegetation. Reed beds may encroach on submerged macrophyte habitat.</p>	L
<b>Macrophytes score</b>	<b>60</b>		L

## Invertebrates

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
<b>Zooplankton</b>			
1. Species richness	90	<p>The minimal difference in flow between the various scenarios suggests that there will be little change in the zooplankton species richness within the system.</p>	M
2a. Abundance	80	<p>The increase in the duration of mouth closure is likely to be associated with an increase in the total zooplankton biomass within the system.</p>	M
2b. Community composition	80	<p>The community composition is unlikely to change to any significant extent.</p>	M
<b>Macroinvertebrates</b>			
1. Species richness	80	<p>The probability of a low salinity community becoming briefly established is reduced, probably at a level slightly lower than Scenario 1. Although floods are not affected, a reduction in base flow will lead to salinity values returning to a weaker horizontal gradient faster. This may not allow a freshwater linked community to develop. Allow for a 10% change.</p>	L

2a. Abundance	60	Because of the increase in submerged macrophyte biomass (including expansion into marginal areas presently experiencing occasional intertidal effects), abundance levels will remain high for extended periods with the frequency of crashes similar to the present condition (drainage effects).  Abundance will increase because of an increase in food availability (phytoplankton and detritus from macrophytes).	L
2b. Community composition	70	Change in composition of macrophytes (engorgement) it is going to influence community composition. It is also likely that dominance patterns will change.  Bait collection will also influence community composition because of habitat disturbance.	M
<b>Hyperbenthos</b>			
1. Species richness	90	The minimal difference in flow between the various scenarios suggests that there will be little change in the hyperbenthic species richness within the system.	M
2a. Abundance	70	The extended mouth closure is likely to be associated with a decline in the total biomass of hyperbenthic species due to reduced recruitment opportunities of marine breeding species into the estuary.	M
2b. Community composition	80	Unlikely to change compared to the present condition. Species are well adapted to natural variability in environmental factors.	M
<b>Invertebrates score</b>	<b>60</b>		M

### Fish

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	90	Little difference in species richness is likely to have occurred between the RC and Scenario 3. Allow for a 5% change.	M
2a. Abundance	60	The abundance of macrophyte associated fish species is likely to increase and that of bare substratum associated fish species will decrease.  Mullet abundance will increase due to increase in stormwater and nutrient input. Overall biomass will decrease due to an increase in angling effort (targeting larger fish).  Laval fish are more sensitive to eutrophication than adults and this effect will ripple through populations.	L
2b. Community composition	60	As above.	M
<b>Fish score</b>	<b>60</b>		M

### Birds

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	80	The 300% increase in development will cause an increase in disturbance (walking, boating, angling) of feeding, roosting and nesting areas. Allow for a 10% change.	L
2a. Abundance	55	Increase in species associated with submerged macrophytes, negligible change in most piscivorous species.  Abundance will be negatively affected due to an increase in disturbance factors (e.g. walking, boating, angling).	L
2b. Community composition	80	Slight change due to the above.	L
<b>Bird score</b>	<b>55</b>		L

## 1.8 Future Scenario 4: Similar to Scenario 2, but including non-flow related anthropogenic activities except the increase in waste water and stormwater runoff

### 1.8.1 Abiotic Components

#### a) Seasonal variability in river inflow:

Monthly simulated runoff data for the Future Scenario 4 is provided in Table 4.4. A summary of flow distribution (mean monthly flows in  $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the Future Scenario 4, derived from the 83-year simulated data set, is provided below:

	OCT	NOV	DEC	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP
99%ile	0.765	1.183	0.665	0.245	0.803	1.524	1.023	2.702	1.127	0.931	0.958	1.513
90%ile	0.240	0.236	0.162	0.074	0.052	0.184	0.205	0.152	0.200	0.113	0.103	0.230
80%ile	0.117	0.074	0.065	0.012	0.019	0.081	0.064	0.051	0.039	0.025	0.037	0.065
70%ile	0.064	0.047	0.023	0.004	0.006	0.027	0.043	0.019	0.010	0.009	0.017	0.029
60%ile	0.024	0.027	0.008	0.001	0.002	0.010	0.025	0.007	0.004	0.003	0.008	0.010
50%ile	0.010	0.016	0.003	0.000	0.000	0.003	0.003	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.005
40%ile	0.003	0.005	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.003
30%ile	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
20%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
10%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

#### b) Present flood regime

The flood regime is judged to be very similar to that under RC based on the fact that the simulated monthly runoff data indicate very little change for months of flow higher than  $0.116 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  (highlighted in blue). The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 5.3 % decrease in the floods to the estuary.

*Confidence: Medium*

#### c) Present sediment processes

The hydrological data indicate that the magnitude and occurrence of major floods has hardly been reduced. This also means that the flushing of sediments during such floods has hardly been reduced. It is therefore likely that the sedimentation in the estuary is not much different from what it was under natural conditions. There may be some increased erosion in the catchment.


*Confidence: Low*

**Table 0.4** Simulated monthly volumes (million m<sup>3</sup>) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for Future Scenario 4.

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breaches	High Flow Breaches
1920	0.15	0.15	0.21	0.22	0.23	0.34	0.15	0.35	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.38	1	1
1921	0.38	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.35	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.26	4	3
1922	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.19	0.20	0.26	0.28	0.28	3	3
1923	0.29	0.32	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.41	0	0
1924	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.15	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	3	1
1925	0.20	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.28	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.33	0	0
1926	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.28	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	1	1
1927	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.23	0.15	4	2
1928	0.15	0.34	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.15	4	4
1929	0.15	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.19	0.23	0.29	2	1
1930	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.38	0.15	0.18	0.18	0.42	0.15	0.18	3	1
1931	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.38	0.38	0.15	4	4
1932	0.15	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.45	0.15	3	1
1933	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.21	0.22	0.15	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.15	0.15	0.15	5	3
1934	0.15	0.28	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.23	0.23	4	3
1935	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.26	0	0
1936	0.15	0.15	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.32	0.32	3	3
1937	0.32	0.34	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.36	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	3	2
1938	0.38	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.30	5	4
1939	0.15	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	5	3
1940	0.30	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	3	2
1941	0.16	0.20	0.15	0.32	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.42	0.44	0.44	0.45	0.15	2	0
1942	0.41	0.15	0.16	0.33	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.27	0.28	2	0
1943	0.28	0.15	0.31	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.23	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	3	2
1944	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.43	0	0
1945	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	1	0
1946	0.23	0.24	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.32	0.33	0.39	0.15	0.21	0.21	2	1
1947	0.21	0.23	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	2	2
1948	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.32	1	1
1949	0.32	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	5	4
1950	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.15	5	5
1951	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.27	0.31	0.32	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	3	2
1952	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.43	0.15	2	2
1953	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.26	0.26	0.15	0.25	0.15	0.31	0.34	0.15	0.31	5	4
1954	0.38	0.15	0.21	0.23	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.36	1	0
1955	0.39	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.29	0.34	0.35	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.15	2	0
1956	0.22	0.27	0.40	0.42	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.15	2	1
1957	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.29	0.42	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	2	2
1958	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.42	0.42	0.15	0.24	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.28	1	0
1959	0.28	0.29	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.15	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.27	1	0
1960	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.30	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.33	1	0
1961	0.33	0.37	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	1	1
1962	0.15	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.19	0.15	0.15	0.44	0.44	0.15	0.20	0.20	5	3
1963	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.15	3	2
1964	0.39	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.43	0.43	0.15	0.30	0.35	0.38	0.39	1	0
1965	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.41	0.43	0.43	0.15	0.19	3	1
1966	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.27	0.29	0.33	0.15	0.15	0.34	0.43	0.45	2	2

Year	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Total Breaches	High Flow Breaches
1967	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.45	0.15	0.22	0.23	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.18	4	2
1968	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.18	0.21	0.45	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	1	0
1969	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.15	0.15	2	2
1970	0.15	0.22	0.15	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.33	0.34	3	3
1971	0.38	0.38	0.41	0.41	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.22	0.23	0.24	1	0
1972	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.24	0.25	0.26	0.27	0.27	0.27	0.34	0.37	0	0
1973	0.37	0.15	0.19	0.28	0.41	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.38	7	6
1974	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.41	0.15	1	1
1975	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.29	0.33	0.33	0.33	0.15	0.15	0.17	3	3
1976	0.29	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.15	0.36	0.37	0.15	0.26	0.29	0.29	0.29	2	1
1977	0.29	0.42	0.15	0.23	0.23	0.30	0.15	0.15	0.37	0.40	0.40	0.40	3	3
1978	0.15	0.18	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.15	0.15	0.15	4	3
1979	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.20	0	0
1980	0.21	0.28	0.30	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.15	0.33	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.23	4	3
1981	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.42	0.15	0.17	0.18	0.18	0.18	1	0
1982	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.25	0.25	1	1
1983	0.29	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.30	0.31	0.31	0.31	0.15	0.37	0.39	0.39	1	1
1984	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.40	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0.41	0	0
1985	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.17	0.17	0.21	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.22	0.35	0.40	3	2
1986	0.44	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.17	0.17	0.27	0.30	0.32	0.34	1	0
1987	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.34	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.23	0.25	1	0
1988	0.27	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.28	0.40	0.44	0.44	0.45	0.45	0.15	1	0
1989	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.20	0.30	0.32	0.32	0.43	0.15	0.15	0.15	5	3
1990	0.20	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.21	0.31	0.34	0	0
1991	0.15	0.19	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.15	3	2
1992	0.15	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.32	0.33	0.33	0.38	0.39	0.43	0.15	2	1
1993	0.20	0.20	0.38	0.15	0.19	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.15	0.24	2	0
1994	0.24	0.24	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.26	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.29	2	2
1995	0.29	0.34	0.36	0.36	0.36	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0	0
1996	0.38	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.15	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.25	4	3
1997	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.29	0.29	0.29	0.30	0.34	0.36	1	1
1998	0.37	0.37	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.39	0.15	0.19	0.21	1	0
1999	0.15	0.25	0.25	0.15	0.27	0.15	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.42	0.44	3	3
2000	0.15	0.38	0.44	0.15	0.16	0.17	0.20	0.20	0.20	0.34	0.42	0.15	3	0
2001	0.19	0.31	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.35	0.36	0.36	0.15	0.15	0.15	3	3
2002	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.18	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	0.15	3	3
Average													2.34	1.55

 High flow breaching

 Low flow breaching

d) EHI for the Future Scenario 4

**Hydrology**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
a. % similarity in period of low flows OR Present MAR as a % of MAR in the reference condition.	95	For the East Kleinemonde River Estuary low flows are defined as less than $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ .  Months with flows less than $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ occurred under the RC for 86.0 of the year. Under Scenario 4 low flows occur for 87.5 % of the year.	L
b. % similarity in mean annual frequency of floods.	90	The reduction in high flows is deemed to be very small based on the very limited reduction in monthly high flows. The 99%ile indicates that there is only a 5.3 % decrease in the floods to the estuary under Scenario 4.	L
<b>Hydrology score</b>	<b>93</b>		L

**Hydrodynamics and mouth condition**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
Change in mean duration of closure, e.g. over a 5 or 10 year period.	85	Under the RC the East Kleinemonde Estuary mouth breaching could potentially have occurred in 2.6 months of the year over the 83-year period. Of these 1.9 was related to high flow events that breached the system instantaneously.  Under the Scenario 4 mouth breaching (State 1 and 2) has been reduced to 2.3 months of the year over the 83-year period (11% change from the RC). Of these 1.6 was related to high flow events (State 1) that breached the system instantaneously.	L
<b>Hydrodynamics and mouth conditions score</b>	<b>85</b>		L

**Water quality**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Change in the longitudinal salinity gradient (%) and vertical salinity stratification.	85	As the river inflow to the East Kleinemonde Estuary and the frequency of breaching events is very similar to the RC, it is assumed that the salinities will also be very similar.	L
2a. Nitrate/phosphate (inorganic nutrient) concentration in the estuary.	75	River DIN concentration increased from RC to PS (>10 times during high flow events and ~ 3 times during low flow periods), associated with agricultural activities in the catchment. Although the influence of river inflow (as indicated by salinity) in this system is generally limited to the upper reaches and despite an overall reduction in river inflow, these marked increases in river DIN would nevertheless have resulted in a significant increase in DIN loads to the system compared with the RC.  However, because river inflow in Scenario 4 (as in Scenario 2) is 5% less than under the PS, modification to DIN loads should be less. Therefore allow a 25% modification from RC (i.e. 5% less than for PS).	L
2b. Suspended solids (turbidity) in the estuary.	85	Turbidity in the system is influenced by river inflow and turbulence associated with tidal exchange (during intermittently open phase). There is a slight decrease in the probable occurrence of intermittently open/closed states (States 1 and 2) compared with the RC. This will result in a decrease in turbidity. Allow for 5% modification from the RC. Furthermore, there is a 10% reduction in river inflow compared to RC, further decreasing turbidity.	L

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
2c. Dissolved oxygen in the estuary.	75	<p>There is a slight increase in the occurrence of the closed state (State 3) versus intermittently open/closed phases (States 1 and 2) in Scenario 2 compared with RC. DO concentrations are expected to decrease with an increase in the frequency and duration of the closed state. Therefore allow for a 5% modification from RC.</p> <p>However an increase in nutrient loading from the catchment (associated with agricultural activity) could have increased oxygen demand under Scenario 2. Because river inflow in Scenario 4 is 5% less than under the PS, modification to DO should be less. Therefore allow a further 10% modification from RC (i.e. 5% less than for PS).</p> <p>More mouth closure will cause increased macrophytes and filamentous algae growth and decomposition, causing lower DO (allow for further 10% modification).</p>	L
2d. Levels of toxins.	80	<p>There are no major industrial activities in the catchment. However, extensive agricultural developments probably introduce some toxic substances (e.g. pesticides) into the system. However, because river inflow in Scenario 4 (as in Scenario 2) is 5% less than under the PS, modification in terms of toxins should be less. Therefore allow a 15% modification from RC (i.e. 5% less than for PS).</p> <p>The level of toxins in the system is nevertheless expected to increase under Scenario 4 as there will still be increased boating activity (oils, fuels, antifouling agents), although toxins from stormwater will no longer be a concern. Allow a further 5% modification.</p>	L
<b>Water Quality score</b>	<b>79</b>		L

### Physical habitat alteration

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE	
1. Resemblance of intertidal sediment structure and distribution to reference condition				
1a	% similarity in intertidal area exposed.	75	Allow 5% change in the intertidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 20% is allocated for stabilisation, construction of jetties and infilling of intertidal areas.	L
1b	% similarity in sand fraction relative to total sand and mud.	70	The bridge acts as barrier that prevents the development of a gradient from marine sediment below the bridge to muddier sediment upstream. The system may become even more muddy due to land-use changes in the catchment.	L
2	Resemblance of subtidal estuary to reference condition: depth, bed or channel morphology.	80	Allow 5% change in the subtidal area due to changes in river inflow. In addition, 5% is allocated for the stabilisation of the lower estuary and channel modification to provide access for power boats.	L
<b>Anthropogenic influence:</b>				
	Percentage of overall change in <u>intertidal and supratidal habitat</u> caused by <b>anthropogenic</b> activity as opposed to modifications to water flow into estuary.	95	Sedimentation may have occurred due to change in land-use in the catchment and the bridge.	L
	Percentage of overall change in <u>subtidal habitat</u> caused by <b>anthropogenic</b> modifications (e.g. bridges, jetties) rather than	95	Sedimentation may have occurred due to changes in land-use in the catchment, e.g. agriculture and the bridge.	L

modifications to water flow into estuary.			
<b>Physical habitat score</b>	<b>76</b>		L

## 1.8.2 Biotic Components

### a) Predicted change in biotic characteristics of the future Scenario 2 compared with the Reference Condition, as well as the causes of these changes:

#### **MICROALGAE**

##### **Phytoplankton**

Under Scenario 4 the decrease in the frequencies of floods is represented by a change of about 5% from RC. This suggests that there would be little change in the microphytobenthos (MPB) chlorophyll *a* levels from natural condition. The annual distribution patterns of low river inflows under this scenario indicates less periods of low flow conditions, thus indicating little variation from RC.

##### **Benthic microalgae**

Microphytobenthic habitat loss during floods and open mouth conditions and accretion following mouth closure under Scenario 4 is probably not very different from the RC. Seepage areas act as sources of additional nutrient input for MPBs and would likely influence benthic primary production in a similar fashion.

Confidence: Low

#### **MACROPHYTES**

This Scenario is similar to Scenario 2 except that infilling of the intertidal areas and stabilisation of the lower estuary due to housing developments could influence the macrophytes. Sediment stabilization would result in reed encroachment and changes in substrate type could cause the loss of rare species. Increased development and proximity of gardens could result in the introduction of exotic plants particularly in the supratidal-terrestrial habitat. Community composition may change as a result of human activities such as the construction of jetties and trampling. Other changes are similar to that described for Scenario 2.

Confidence: Medium

#### **INVERTEBRATES (including Macrobenthos, Zooplankton and Hyperbenthos)**

##### **Macrobenthos**

A reduction in low flow conditions will probably lead to higher salinity values throughout the estuary with little variability between the upper and lower estuary. Since flooding will be less affected compared to Scenario 1, the occasional flood will open the mouth but, because of a reduced base flow, the mouth is likely to close sooner than under RC. Salinity gradients will probably not persist for long enough to allow the macrozoobenthic community to develop substructures based on the salinity pattern (development of a river-associated community).

Confidence: Medium

##### **Zooplankton and Hyperbenthos**

The zooplanktonic and hyperbenthic invertebrate community under reduced flow conditions (Scenario 2) is unlikely to change from the RC.

Confidence: Medium

#### **FISH**

Since there is likely to be little change in open mouth conditions between the RC and Scenario 2, it is highly likely that the fish assemblage will be very similar to that found in the natural state. Small changes in fish distribution and abundance are likely due to the slight reductions in high flows and base flows when compared to the RC.

Confidence: Medium

#### **BIRDS**

The avifauna is unlikely to be affected by slight changes in mouth conditions. An increase in macrophytes will attract coots and possibly grebes. Small changes in fish populations are unlikely to affect piscivorous bird numbers.

Confidence: Low

**b) EHI for the Future Scenario 4:**

**Microalgae**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
<b>Phytoplankton</b>			
1. Species richness	90	There is minimal difference between river inflow patterns under the RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.0) and Scenario 4 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton species richness has probably not changed markedly. Allow a 5% change, which is equivalent to a score of 90.	M
2a. Abundance	95	There is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 86.0) and Scenario 4 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton abundances have probably not changed markedly.	M
2b. Community composition	95	Since there is minimal difference between RC (i.e. low flow occurrence 98.2) and Scenario 4 (i.e. low flow occurrence 87.5), corresponding to possibly a 5% change, therefore phytoplankton species composition has probably not changed markedly.	M
<b>Benthic microalgae</b>			
1. Species richness	80	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 4 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Species richness would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions which is equivalent to a score of 80.	M
2a. Abundance	90	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 4 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Microphytobenthic abundances would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions.	M
2b. Community composition	90	Sediment processes have probably changed little from the RC, therefore catchment activities (i.e. agricultural practises, land development, and physical structures) under Scenario 4 suggest a slight increase in sediment load altering MPB habitat. Community composition would likely have had a deviation of approximately 10% from natural conditions.	M
<b>Microalgae score</b>	<b>80</b>		<b>M</b>

**Macrophytes**

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
1. Species richness	95	There may have been a loss in opportunistic brackish species as a result of the reduction in flooding and increase in salinity (2% change).  Some infilling may change substrate characteristics that might cause the loss of rare species. Increased development and proximity of gardens could result in the introduction of exotic plants particularly in the supratidal-terrestrial habitat.	M

2a. Abundance	70	<p>Closed mouth conditions and a decrease in high flow breaching events would result in an increase in submerged macrophyte (5%) and macroalgal abundance (5%). Sedimentation would also occur in the intertidal zone as a result of the reduction in flow, which would encourage reed growth (2%).</p> <p>Agricultural activities in the catchment and nutrient input will increase macrophyte growth particularly that of reeds, sedges, macroalgae and submerged macrophytes. However nutrient input will be slightly less than at present because of the reduction in river flow.</p> <p>Reeds have become established on the east bank below and above the R72 bridge (15 % change). Infilling of the intertidal areas and stabilisation of the lower estuary due to housing developments would facilitate reed encroachment (3%).</p>	M
2b. Community composition	85	<p>The nutrient changes, decrease in flooding and frequency of mouth closure will increase reed, submerged macrophyte and macroalgal cover reducing open water surface area, bare sand and mudflats. Reed beds will encroach on submerged macrophyte habitat. There may be a change in community composition due to an increase in human activities, e.g. trampling, jetties.</p>	M
<b>Macrophytes score</b>	<b>70</b>		

#### Invertebrates

VARIABLE	SCORE	MOTIVATION	CONFIDENCE
<b>Zooplankton</b>			
1. Species richness	90	Little difference in species richness is likely to have occurred between the RC and Scenario 4.	M
2a. Abundance	90	As above	
2b. Community composition	90	As above	
<b>Macroinvertebrates</b>			
1. Species richness	80	<p>The probability of a low salinity community becoming briefly established is reduced, probably at a level slightly lower than scenario 1. Although floods are not affected, a reduction in base flow will lead to salinity values returning to a weaker horizontal gradient faster. This may not allow a freshwater linked community to develop.</p> <p>Allow for a 10% change.</p>	M
2a. Abundance	70	<p>Because of the increase in submerged macrophyte biomass (including expansion into marginal areas presently experiencing occasional intertidal effects), abundance levels will remain high for extended periods with the frequency of crashes similar to the present condition (drainage effects).</p> <p>Abundance will be negatively affected due to an increase in human activities (e.g. bait collection) and changes in the macrophyte communities brought about by human disturbances.</p>	M
2b. Community composition	85	<p>Unlikely to change compared to the present condition. Species are well adapted to natural variability in environmental factors</p> <p>Increase human activities (e.g. bait collection). Changes in the macrophyte communities brought about by human disturbances.</p>	M

<b>Hyperbenthos</b>			
1. Species richness	90	The minimal difference in flow between the various scenarios suggests that there will be little change in the hyperbenthic species richness within the system.	M
2a. Abundance	90	The extended mouth closure is likely to be associated with a decline in the total biomass of hyperbenthos due to reduced recruitment opportunities of marine breeding species into the estuary.	M
2b. Community composition	90	Unlikely to change compared to the present condition. Species are well adapted to natural variability in environmental factors.	M
<b>Invertebrates score</b>	<b>70</b>		M

### Fish

<b>VARIABLE</b>	<b>SCORE</b>	<b>MOTIVATION</b>	<b>CONFIDENCE</b>
1. Species richness	90	Little difference in species richness is likely to have occurred between the RC and Scenario 4. Allow for a 5% change.	M
2a. Abundance	62	The abundance of macrophyte associated fish species is likely to increase and that of bare substratum associated fish species will decrease.  In addition, there will be disturbance of fish in the shallows because of boating activities. Mortalities due to prop action.	M
2b. Community composition	62	As above.	M
<b>Fish score</b>	<b>62</b>		

### Birds

<b>VARIABLE</b>	<b>SCORE</b>	<b>MOTIVATION</b>	<b>CONFIDENCE</b>
1. Species richness	85	Species richness is unlikely to change compared to RC. Allow for a 7% change.	L
2a. Abundance	57	Increase in species associated with submerged macrophytes, but a negligible change in most piscivorous species.  Abundance will be negatively affected due to an increase in disturbance factors (e.g. walking, boating, fishing).  Slight increase from Scenario 3.	L
2b. Community composition	80	Slight change due to the above.	L
<b>Bird score</b>	<b>57</b>		<b>L</b>

## Recommended ecological flow requirement for East Kleinemonde Estuary

The individual Estuarine Health Index scores, as well as the corresponding Ecological Reserve Category for the scenarios are:

Variable	Weight	Present	Runoff scenario			
			1	2	3	4
Hydrology	25	95	93	93	93	93
Hydrodynamics/mouth condition	25	90	80	85	85	85
Water quality	25	78	80	79	64	79
Physical habitat alteration	25	85	85	85	76	76
<b>Habitat Health Score</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>87</b>	<b>85</b>	<b>86</b>	<b>68</b>	<b>71</b>
Microalgae	20	80	80	80	65	80
Macrophytes	20	85	81	83	60	70
Invertebrates	20	90	80	80	60	70
Fish	20	90	80	85	60	62
Birds	20	85	82	85	55	57
<b>Biotic Health Score</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>86</b>	<b>81</b>	<b>83</b>	<b>49</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>Estuarine Health Index Score</b>		<b>87</b>	<b>83</b>	<b>84</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>Ecological Reserve Category (ERC)</b>		<b>B</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>C</b>

The evaluation of the simulated runoff scenarios was used to derive the recommended Ecological Flow Requirement. The recommended Ecological Flow Requirement is defined as the runoff scenario (or a slight modification thereof) that represents the highest reduction in river inflow that will still protect the aquatic ecosystem of the estuary and keep it in the recommended ERC.

In evaluating Future Scenarios 1 and 2 the assumption was made that only river in-flow from the catchments will be reduced, and that all additional non-flow related anthropogenic activities (e.g. increased fishing and bait collection, power boating, human disturbance, seepage from septic tanks, stormwater runoff) will not be considered. Future Scenario 3 represents the expected impact of flow reduction and additional non-flow related anthropogenic activities on the estuary if 1010 plots are developed in the estuarine environs. Scenario 4 represents the expected impact of flow reduction and additional non-flow related anthropogenic activities, but mitigating for the impact of nutrient loading as a result of seepage from septic tanks and pollutants from storm water run-off.

Both Scenario 1 and Scenario 2 will maintain the East Kleinemonde in the recommended ERC as they differ very little in reduction of runoff and impact on the estuarine ecosystem. **Scenario 2** was selected as the recommended Ecological Flow Requirement because Scenario 1 (which includes an in-channel dam development) represents a serious risk to migratory species (e.g. eels) that use the river as a conduit to the upper catchment. Dams act as permanent barriers to fish migration and negatively influence river ecosystems by changing the downstream flow regime.

The selection of Scenario 2 means that although the East Kleinemonde is a small temporarily open/closed estuary, it can accommodate the reduction in fluvial flow necessary to meet the requirements of future housing development in the area. However, it will not be able to support the additional non-flow related human disturbance pressures that come with the new residential developments. Therefore the approval of any future residential development should be conditional on the following mitigation measures being implemented:

- No consumptive use (e.g. fishing or bait collection) should be allowed in the East Kleinemonde Estuary;
- No power boating on the East and West Kleinemonde estuaries (only canoes and electrical motors);
- All new urban development will have to be connected to a Waste Water Treatment Works to eliminate the risk of seepage from septic tanks entering the estuaries;
- All stormwater from newly developed areas will have to be captured and diverted from the system to prevent hydrocarbons and other pollutants from entering the system.

**East Kleinemonde: Summary of flow distributions (mean monthly flows in m<sup>3</sup> s<sup>-1</sup>) under Future Scenario 2**

	OCT	NOV	DEC	JAN	FEB	MAR	APR	MAY	JUN	JUL	AUG	SEP
99%ile	0.765	1.183	0.665	0.245	0.803	1.524	1.023	2.702	1.127	0.931	0.958	1.513
90%ile	0.240	0.236	0.162	0.074	0.052	0.184	0.205	0.152	0.200	0.113	0.103	0.230
80%ile	0.117	0.074	0.065	0.012	0.019	0.081	0.064	0.051	0.039	0.025	0.037	0.065
70%ile	0.064	0.047	0.023	0.004	0.006	0.027	0.043	0.019	0.010	0.009	0.017	0.029
60%ile	0.024	0.027	0.008	0.001	0.002	0.010	0.025	0.007	0.004	0.003	0.008	0.010
50%ile	0.010	0.016	0.003	0.000	0.000	0.003	0.003	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.001	0.005
40%ile	0.003	0.005	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.003
30%ile	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
20%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
10%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1%ile	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

In order to maintain the estuary in its present state, consumptive use (exploitation) of marine living resources needs to be managed. Because the system is relatively small, there is no optimum zonation scheme that can accommodate this requirement, e.g. white steenbras occur predominantly below the road bridge in the sandy areas while other species occur above the bridge. Zoning to protect one fish species will make others more vulnerable, since it will lead to increased fishing pressure in other parts of the estuary. Serious concern was also raised over habitat destruction caused by bait collection since the areas where bait species occur are limited. Thus, the only effective mitigation measure in response to increased development in the environs of the East Kleinemonde is to close it for all consumptive uses.

Power boating in small estuaries causes habitat destruction (mainly as a result of bank erosion from boat wakes), pollution (antifouling paints and oils), disturbs the feeding and breeding of birds, and significantly disturbs fish (especially small fish in shallow areas). It is, therefore, recommended that power boating be banned from both the East and West Kleinemonde as they are similar in size and closure of one is likely to double the boating pressures on the adjacent system. Larger, permanently open estuaries such as the nearby Kowie and Kariega are much more resilient with respect to the impacts of power boating and are safer systems to use by virtue of their size.

At present, septic tanks are used for the treatment of domestic wastewater (sewage) at Kleinemonde. Although the use of French drains and septic tanks, and absence of sewage treatment plants may be acceptable options for smaller communities, these options are usually not acceptable for larger human settlements. The risk of impact on water resources, associated with spillages and seepage, increases markedly with the increase in the number and density of housing developments. Adverse impacts associated with sewage spillages and seepage include eutrophication (e.g. excessive reed growth along the banks of the estuary) and human health risks (e.g. associated with contract recreation activities). South Africa does not have clear guidelines on this matter, but internationally it has become common practice to provide a collecting system to communities (including coastal communities) with a service population greater than about 2 000 (RSA DWAF, 2004). It is therefore strongly recommended that any new residential development in the East Kleinemonde Estuary consider wastewater collection systems connected to either a conventional existing WWTW or an alternative treatment facility (e.g. artificial wetland).

Increased development (and an increase in hard surfaces) will also increase stormwater runoff into the estuary with likely increases of hydrocarbons, nutrients, turbidity and other pollutant loads. It is proposed that for any new development, the developer be made responsible for managing storm water run-off whereby, for example, the storm water run-off from a new development is contained and treated at central points before discharge into the environment (e.g. Thesen Island Development, Knysna).

The West Kleinemonde Estuary is similar in size to the East Kleinemonde and would therefore also be very vulnerable to increased urban development. This matter needs to be investigated before new developments in the area are approved. In future, RDM determinations should incorporate a regional assessment component to address the impact of development on adjacent systems.

## References

- Bickerton, I.B. 1982. Report No. 15: Zeekoe (CSW 5). In: Estuaries of the Cape, Part II. Synopses of available information on individual systems (eds Heydorn, A.E.F. & Grindley, J.R.). CSIR Research Report No. 414.
- Turpie, J.K. 2002. Classification and prioritization of South African estuaries on the basis of health and conservation importance for the determination of the estuarine water reserve. Report submitted to Social and Ecological Services, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, Pretoria, South Africa.
- Turpie, J.K. 2004. Improving the biodiversity importance rating of estuaries. Water Research Commission Report No. 1247/1/04: 109-120.
- Turpie, J.K. & Clark, B. 2007. The health status, conservation importance and economic value of temperate South African estuaries and development of a regional conservation plan. Draft Report to C.A.P.E. Regional Estuarine Management Programme.
- Twilley, R.R., Kemp, W.M., Staver, K.W., Stevenson, J.C. & Boynton, W.R. 1985. Nutrient enrichment of estuarine submersed vascular plant communities. Algal growth and effects on production of plants and associated communities. Marine Ecology Progress Series 23: 179-191.

## **Appendix A**

### **Availability of Data on the East Kleinemonde Estuary**

## Data availability on sediment dynamics, hydrodynamics and water quality

DATA REQUIRED	AVAILABILITY	COMMENT
Simulated monthly runoff data (at the head of the estuary) for present state, reference conditions and the selected future runoff scenarios over a 50 to 70 year period	Provided by Denis Hughes, Institute for Water Research, Rhodes University	Provided for 1920-2002. Low confidence as no runoff data are available.
Simulated flood hydrographs for present state, reference conditions and future runoff scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1:1, 1:2, 1:5 floods (influencing aspects such as floodplain inundation)</li> <li>• 1:20, 1:50, 1:100, 1:200 year floods (influencing sediment dynamics)</li> </ul>	No catchment flow gauge.	
Aerial photographs of estuary (earliest available year as well as most recent)	Yes	Collected for DEAT
Continuous water level recordings near mouth of the estuary	Water level data available from 2005.	DWAF
Mouth observations	Mouth observations available from 2002.	Collected by Paul Cowley (SAIAB)
Longitudinal salinity and temperature profiles (in situ) collected over a spring and neap tide during high and low tide at: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• end of low flow season (i.e. period of maximum seawater intrusion)</li> <li>• peak of high flow season (i.e. period of maximum flushing by river water)</li> </ul>	Available for 2006.	Collected by Bernard Mackenzie (SAIAB)
Water quality measurements (i.e. system variables, and nutrients) taken along the length of the estuary (surface and bottom samples) on a spring and neap high tide at: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• end of low flow season</li> <li>• peak of high flow season</li> </ul>	Available for 2006.	Collected by Bernard Mackenzie (SAIAB)
Measurements of organic content and toxic substances (e.g. trace metals and hydrocarbons) in sediments along length of the estuary.	Available for 2006.	Collected by Tris Wooldridge (NMMU)
Water quality (e.g. system variables, nutrients and toxic substances) measurements on river water entering at the head of the estuary	No catchment water quality data.	
Water quality (e.g. system variables, nutrients and toxic substances) measurements on near-shore seawater	No nearshore water quality data.	

## Data availability on microalgae

DATA REQUIRED	AVAILABILITY	COMMENT
Chlorophyll a measurements taken at 5 stations at the surface, 0.5 m and 1 m depths. Cell counts of dominant phytoplankton groups i.e. flagellates, dinoflagellates, diatoms and blue-green algae. Measurements must be taken coinciding with typically high and low flow conditions. Intertidal and subtidal benthic chlorophyll a measurements taken at 5 stations (at least).	Data from WRC K5/1581 report in microalgae chapter.	Chlorophyll a data based on monthly survey. Species composition taken quarterly.
Epipellic diatoms need to be collected for identification.	Data from WRC K5/1581 report in microalgae chapter.	Microphytobenthos Chlorophyll a and community composition data collected quarterly.
These measurements must to be taken coinciding with a typical high and low flow condition (in temporarily closed estuaries measurements must include open as well as closed mouth conditions). Simultaneous measurements of flow, light, salinity, temperature, nutrients and substrate type (for benthic microalgae) need to be taken at the sampling stations during both the phytoplankton and benthic microalgal surveys.	Data from WRC K5/1581 report.	Collected by Bernard Mackenzie (SAIAB)

## Data availability on macrophytes

DATA REQUIRED	AVAILABILITY	COMMENT
Aerial photographs of the estuary (ideally 1:5000 scale) reflecting the present state, as well as the reference condition (if available). Available orthophoto maps	1934 (1:20 000) 1938 (1:20 000) 1956 (1:30 000) 1973 (1:30 000) 1990 (1:30 000) 1998 (1:60 000) 1970 (orthophoto)	Surveys and mapping medium confidence since smaller areas not covered in sufficient detail.
Number of plant community types, identification and total number of macrophyte species, number of rare or endangered species or those with limited populations documented during a field visit.	Yes All data available from quarterly surveys in 2005 and monthly surveys in 2006.	High confidence
Permanent transects: - Measurements of percentage plant cover along an elevation gradient	Data available for three transects from quarterly surveys in 2005 and monthly surveys in 2006.	Plant characteristics sampled in 2005. High confidence
- Measurements of salinity, water level, sediment moisture content and turbidity		Water column sampled in 2006.

## Data availability on invertebrates

DATA REQUIRED	AVAILABILITY	COMMENT
Compile a detailed sediment distribution map of the estuary Obtain a detailed determination of the extent and distribution of shallows and tidally exposed substrates. During each survey, collect sediment samples for analysis of grain size <sup>1</sup> and organic content <sup>2</sup> at the six benthic sites. Surveys to determine salinity distribution pattern along the length of the estuary, as well as other system variables (e.g. temperature, pH and dissolved oxygen and turbidity) are required for different seasons and for different states of the tide <sup>3</sup> . Seasonal (summer winter) physico-chemical data are also required for each of the six benthic sampling sites	Sediment particle size analysis available for four sampling trips in 2006.  Data for salinity, temperature, oxygen, pH, turbidity available for four sampling trips in 2006.	Complete particle size range available.  Complete sets of data.
Collect a set of six benthic samples each consisting of five grabs. Collect two each from sand, mud and interface substrates. If possible, spread sites for each between upper and lower reaches of the estuary. One mud sample should be in an organically rich area. Species should be identified to the lowest taxon possible and densities (animal m <sup>-2</sup> ) must also be determined. Seasonal (summer winter) data sets for at least one year are required, preferably collected at spring tides.	Five sites along the estuary each with nine replicates available. Three series available from 1998-1999; all species identified, not quantified. Four series available from 2006; all species identified and quantified. Beam trawl surveys not undertaken.	Good sets of data available.
Collect two sets of beam trawl samples (i.e. mud and sand). Lay two sets of five, baited prawn/crab traps overnight, one each in the upper and lower reaches of the estuary. Species should be identified to the lowest taxon possible and densities (animals m <sup>-2</sup> ) must also be determined. Survey as much shoreline as possible for signs of crabs and prawns and record observations. Seasonal (summer winter) data sets for at least one year are required, preferably collected at spring tides.		
Additional trip(s) may be required to gather data on the occurrence/recruitment and emigration of key species such as <i>Callianassa</i> and <i>Upogebia</i> which require a connection to the marine environment at specific times of the year.	Detailed photographic survey of <i>Callianassa</i> abundance undertaken during BSc (Hons) project.	Highlights subtidal distribution of <i>Callianassa</i> .
Collect three zooplankton samples, at night, one each from the upper, middle and lower reaches of the estuary. Seasonal (summer/winter) data sets for at least one year are required, preferably collected at spring tides.	Zooplankton data available from William Froneman (RU).	Data set is incomplete.

## Data availability on fish

DATA REQUIRED	AVAILABILITY	COMMENT
<p>In a small estuary (&lt;5km) collect at minimum three sets of samples from the lower, middle and upper reaches of the estuary. The samples should be representative of the different estuarine habitat types, e.g. <i>Zostera</i> beds, prawn beds, sand flats. At least one of the sample sets needs to be in the 0 to 10 ppt reach of the estuary. Sampling should be representative of small fish (seine nets) and large fish (gill nets).</p> <p>In a larger estuary (&gt;5km) sampling can either be at fixed intervals (every 2km) or have the upper, middle and lower reaches subdivided into at least a further three sections each. The samples should be representative of the different estuarine habitat types, e.g. <i>Zostera</i> beds, prawn beds, sand flats. At least one of the sample sets should be in the 0 to 1 ppt reach of the system. Sampling should be representative of small fish (seine nets) and large fish (gill nets).</p> <p>Sampling should be done during both the low and the high flow season for the full extent of the system (as far as tidal variation) to allow for predictive capabilities.</p>	<p>Minimum of three small seine (30m x 2m x 5mm bar mesh) and three large seine (50m x 2m x 15mm bar mesh) net samples in the lower, middle and upper reaches. Two gill nets, each panel 10m x 2m, with stretch mesh sizes of 45mm, 75mm and 100mm were set in the lower, middle and upper reaches on each sampling occasion. Estuary has been sampled a minimum of summer and winter during every year from 1994 - ongoing.</p>	<p>Comprehensive data on fish recruitment (including ichthyoplankton), distribution, relative abundance, population sizes and productivity.</p>

## Data availability on birds

DATA REQUIRED	AVAILABILITY	COMMENT
<p>Undertake one full count of all water-associated birds, covering as much of the estuarine area as possible. All birds should be identified to species level and the total number of each counted.</p> <p>Seasonal (summer winter) data sets for at least one year are required. If this is not possible, a minimum of four summer months and one winter month will be required (decisions on the extent of effort required will depend largely on the size of the estuary, extent of shallows present, as well as extent of tidally exposed areas).</p>	<p>Historic data – single 1980 summer count.</p> <p>Current data available from 72 bird counts conducted between March 2005- November 2006.</p>	<p>MSc thesis (in progress) Anja Terörde</p>

## **Appendix B**

**Specialist Report: Simulated Catchment Hydrology**

**DA Hughes  
(Institute for Water Research, Rhodes University)**

## INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this report is to explain the process and present the results of applying the Pitman monthly rainfall-runoff model to simulating three development scenarios in the East Kleinemonde River in the Eastern Cape Province. This report follows on from the earlier report on the simulation of natural flows in the river.

A small modification was made to the model setup for the natural flows and the simulated natural mean annual runoff (MAR) is now  $2.856 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  (it was some  $2.77 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ ).

The three development scenarios to be simulated are:

- Present day situation of 300 developed plots with the water supply originating from the Wellington Dam (capacity of  $0.206 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ ) supplemented by borehole water abstractions. Wellington Dam is situated on a tributary of the East Kleinemonde River with a catchment area representing approximately 9% of the total catchment area.
- Future scenario (A) of 1010 developed plots with the water supply originating from a new dam constructed on the main river. The assumption is made that the catchment area feeding the dam will represent about 67% of the total catchment area and that the capacity of the dam will be determined appropriately, given the patterns of inflow and the demand.
- Future scenario (B) of 1010 developed plots with the water supply originating from an off-channel storage fed through intermittent pumping from the main river (probably using some type of low level weir). The assumption is that pumping will remove most of the low flows but not impact very much on the short-duration higher flows.

## WATER CONSUMPTION PATTERNS

There are three sources of information on the existing water consumption patterns. The first is the Ndlambe Municipalities Water Services Development Plan (WSDP) of 2006 that estimated the annual consumption at  $82 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$ . The second is a 1998 consultancy report that estimates  $130 \text{ m}^3$  per day out of season and  $500 \text{ m}^3$  per day in season consumption. The third is based on estimates from the Ratepayer's Association, which suggests  $120$  to  $160 \text{ m}^3$  per day out of season and  $200$  to  $350 \text{ m}^3$  per day in season consumption.

Table 1 provides a summary of the monthly distribution of demand using an out-of-season daily consumption of  $140 \text{ m}^3$  and an in-season consumption of  $275 \text{ m}^3$ . It has been assumed that the season is all of December, part of January and part of April.

Table 1. Assumed demand based on the current level of development.

Month	Consumption ( $10^3 \text{ m}^3$ )	Fraction of annual demand
Oct	4.34	0.076
Nov	4.20	0.074
Dec	8.53	0.150
Jan	5.15	0.091
Feb	3.92	0.069
Mar	4.34	0.076
Apr	4.88	0.086
May	4.34	0.076
Jun	4.20	0.074
Jul	4.34	0.076
Aug	4.34	0.076
Sep	4.20	0.074
Total	56.77	1.000

A further assumption is that these figures ignore losses in the system (i.e. are based on measured consumption at the household level) and therefore have been increased by 15%. This gives an estimated annual demand of  $65.3 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$  with a seasonal distribution the same as column 3 in Table 1.

The MAR of the Wellington Dam catchment is assumed to be  $260 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$  (9% of  $2.856 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ ). The WR90 publications (Midgley *et al.* 1994) suggest that a dam of the size of Wellington in this region will be able to support a gross demand of approximately  $88 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$ . The indications are that the dam should be

able to support the existing demand. However, this assumes that the annual demand is approximately evenly distributed. If the in-season demand were extrapolated to the full year the equivalent annual demand would be over  $100 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$ , suggesting that the dam would not always be able to supply the present day demand during the peak summer season. It is understood that this is a reasonable reflection of reality.

The future demand has been taken to be 3.37 times ( $1010/300$ ) the present day demand and the same seasonal distribution has been used. This translates into an annual demand of approximately  $220 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$ . The WR90 publication's approach to estimating the storage requirements for a demand of this size is from a storage placed at 67% of the total catchment area. The MAR at the new dam would therefore be  $1.9 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$  ( $0.67 \times 2.856$ ). To ensure that the peak summer season demand would be satisfied, the equivalent annual demand of the in-season water consumption has been used. To satisfy this demand a dam of approximately 35% of MAR would be needed. In volume terms this represents about  $700 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$ . To allow for additional evaporation losses a dam of  $1000 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$  has been used in the simulations for future scenario A.

## SCENARIO SIMULATIONS

### Present Day Situation

As might be expected with only 9% of the total catchment area above the Wellington Dam, the impact on the natural flows is minimal. The MAR is reduced to approximately  $2.748 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ , a consumption of  $108 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$  (which is reasonably consistent with an abstraction volume of  $65.3 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$ ), the remaining influence being evaporation losses from the reservoir surface.

### Future Scenario A (Instream Dam)

In this situation the MAR is reduced by some  $446 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$  to  $2.410 \times 10^6 \text{ m}^3$ , which is again consistent with a dam occupying 67% of the catchment area and a demand of some  $220 \times 10^3 \text{ m}^3$ . The high flows are not impacted very much, while many of the smaller monthly flows are removed. This is to be expected given the highly variable nature of the regime (a large proportion of the MAR volume represented by a limited number of large volume flow events) and the relatively small size of the dam and water supply demand. Figure 1 illustrates the impact on the 1-month annual flow duration curve.

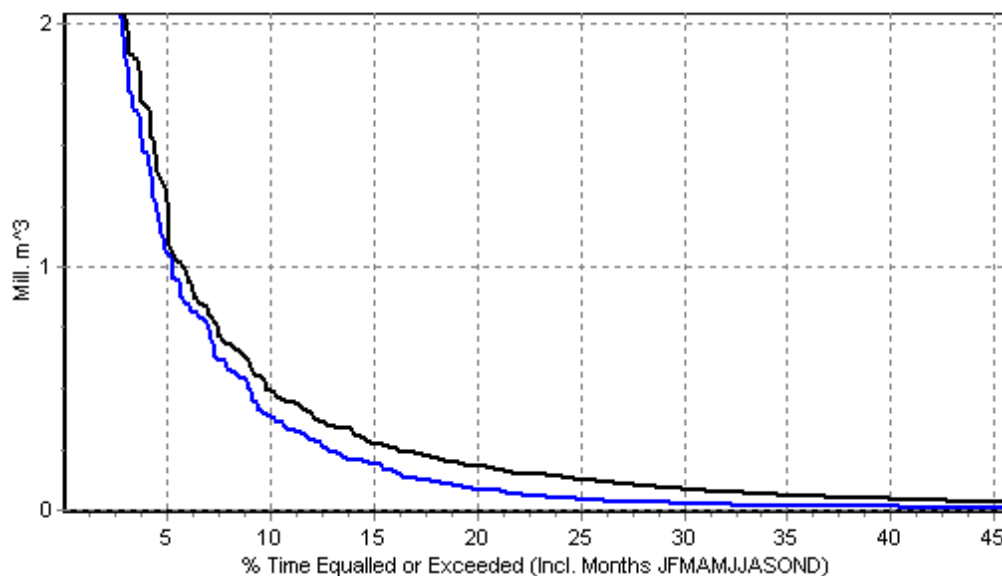


Figure 1. Flow duration curves for Natural (black line) and Future scenario A (blue line).

### Future Scenario B (Off-Channel Storage)

This scenario is quite difficult to setup in the model, largely because of the monthly time-step used. The implication is that within the final time series of the model no distinction is made between the flow that occurs as continuous baseflow (and can be pumped) and the flow that occurs as short-duration events (the majority of which would not be able to be pumped unless the in-channel storage is increased). This means that even

quite small monthly volumes may not be accessible to the pump as they may occur as very short period events (only a few hours) with flows greater than the pump capacity.

The approach adopted has therefore been to use a baseflow separation approach that attempts to estimate the time series of baseflow (i.e. the proportion of the monthly volume occurring as continuous flow during the month). The method relies on a digital filtering process that uses two parameters in the equation. These parameters were set so that the mean annual baseflow volume would approximately satisfy the water users' demand, also allowing for some evaporation losses from an off-channel storage facility. Calculations indicate that the maximum pumping rate would be some 140 litres s<sup>-1</sup>, while the average would be about 11 litres s<sup>-1</sup>.

Figure 2 illustrates that the result has a much lower impact on the moderate flows (10 to 40% frequency of being equalled or exceeded) than future scenario A. The MAR is reduced by some 282 x 10<sup>3</sup> m<sup>3</sup> to 2.574 x 10<sup>6</sup> m<sup>3</sup>. It is possible that the estimated baseflow abstraction volume is too low and that not enough has been allowed for the effects of evaporation from the off-channel storage facility. However, the impact of a small additional abstraction volume will not be very great.

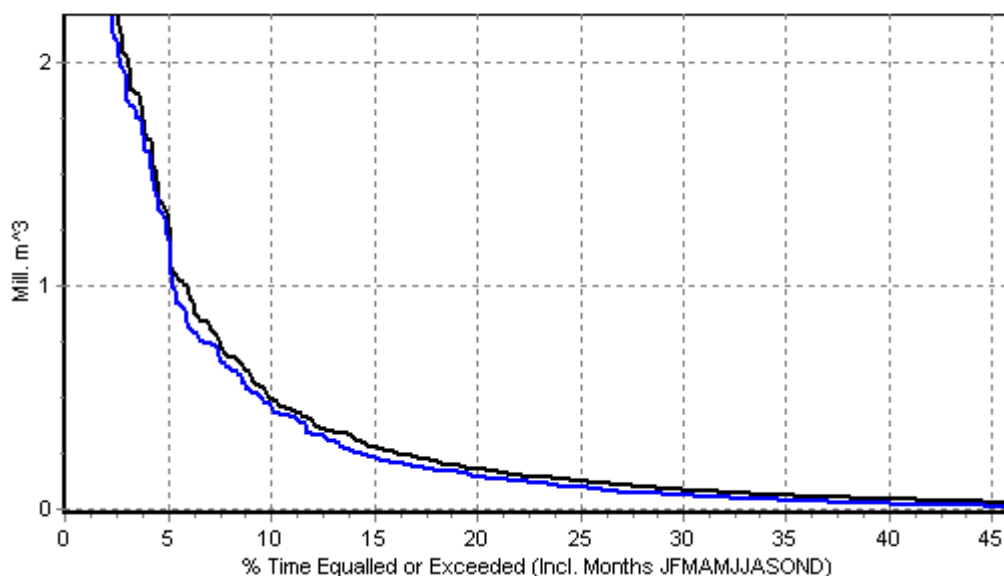


Figure 2. Flow duration curves for Natural (black line) and Future scenario B (blue line).

## OBSERVATIONS

It is essential to remember that all the scenarios are based on simulated flows using regional model parameters and that there are no observed flow measurements available with which to confirm the simulated flows. There is therefore a high degree on uncertainty in these results and they should be treated with caution. Clearly, if the simulated natural flows are not representative of the real flow regime of the river, the impacts could be very different. If the flows have been over-estimated the impacts will be greater, while the reverse will be true if the flows have been under-estimated.

## REFERENCES

Midgley, D.C., Pitman, W.V. & Middleton, B.J. 1994. Surface water resources of South Africa 1990. Vol. I-VI. Water Research Commission, Pretoria, Reports No. 298/1.1/94 to 198/6.1/94.

## **Appendix C**

### **Specialist Report: Physical Dynamics**

**L van Niekerk  
(CSIR, Stellenbosch)  
PD Cowley  
(SAIAB, Grahamstown)  
TG Bornman  
(NMMU, Port Elizabeth)**

## INTRODUCTION

The majority of South African estuaries are isolated from the sea by means of a sand bar. Mouth closure normally occurs during periods of low river inflow coupled with high wave conditions in the marine environment. Of the approximately 250 estuaries recorded along the South African coastline about 70% are classified as temporarily open/closed estuaries (TOCEs) according to Whitfield's classification (1992). TOCEs are predominantly regulated by the amount of river inflow received, the magnitude of which is governed primarily by catchment size and the regional climate that dictates rainfall patterns.

## STUDY AREA

The East Kleinemonde Estuary is situated at coordinates 33°32'S and 27°03' E. The estuary has a water surface area ranging widely from approximately 11.6 ha immediately after a mouth breaching event to 35.7 ha when the water level is high during the closed phase. When the estuary mouth is open, the spring high tide covers an area of approximately 26.6 ha. The estuary is 3.7 km long and is approximately 210 m across at its widest section in the lower reaches during the closed phase. The system is shallow with the water depth varying between 1 and 2 m in the deeper sections. During periods of extended mouth closure the water level can rise to 2-2.5 m MSL due to the development of a sand bar at the mouth when extensive back flooding occurs. However, after a mouth opening event the estuary is very shallow with a maximum depth of approximately 1 m.

The catchment of the East Kleinemonde Estuary is estimated to be 43.5 km<sup>2</sup> consisting of a gently sloping high lying region used for pineapple and cattle farming and a relatively undisturbed steep-sloping stream and river valley in the lower reaches.

## METHODS

This study reviews the hydrodynamics of the East Kleinemonde Estuary through a combination of field observations and simulated runoff data. Mean annual runoff (MAR) estimates were provided by DA Hughes, IWR, Rhodes University. Daily observations on the mouth state of the East Kleinemonde Estuary were then correlated with the simulated monthly runoff to estimate the flow range that drives mouth behaviour. Recorded estuary water level data, provided by DWAF, were evaluated to get a better understanding of the hydrodynamics of the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

Water level recordings and bathymetric data were used in a volumetric analysis of the East Kleinemonde Estuary to calculate river inflow into the estuary. The simulated monthly runoff data were compared with the calculated inflows derived from the measured water levels in the system to evaluate the method. First estimates were made of seepage losses based on volumetric data.

## CURRENT UNDERSTANDING & HYPOTHESES

The relationship between the closing forces (wave energy and sediment availability) and opening forces (river inflow and tidal flows) are unique for each individual estuary. The synergy of these forces defines the duration and frequency of open mouth conditions for temporarily open/closed estuaries (TOCEs).

1. The open mouth condition in small TOCEs is primarily driven by floods and freshettes and to a lesser degree by baseflow. This relationship needs to be quantified for each estuary, but grouping may be statistically possible.
2. Closing forces (wave energy, sediment availability) dominate in small TOCEs because river inflow (base-flows) and tidal flows are low.
3. Small TOCEs require a proportionally larger percentage of their natural MAR compared to permanently open estuaries (POEs) to maintain their structure and function.
4. Semi-closed mouth conditions can develop in small TOCEs and are extremely sensitive to changes in river flow.
5. Baseflow plays an important role in the salinity distributions of TOCEs.
6. Intermittently open estuaries (IOEs) are more sensitive to a reduction in MAR than intermittently closed estuaries (ICEs) but responses are estuary specific and some ICEs can readily change into an IOE.
7. Larger TOCEs tend to stay open longer than smaller ones due to the influence of a larger tidal prism or due to the stronger river flow.
8. ICEs are transformed into IOEs when there is a significant reduction in river inflow. Conversely, increased river flow due to the release of treated sewage water can result in an IOE becoming an ICE.

## HYDRODYNAMICS PARAMETERS INFLUENCING ESTUARINE PHYSICAL DYNAMICS

### Water level data

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry (DWA) installed a continuous water level recorder (P4H002) at the East Kleinemonde bridge (Figure 1) in March 2005. The inlet pipe was first installed on 14 December 2004 during a closed phase. When the estuary opened in late December, it was noticed that the inlet pipe was installed too high and a new site on the downstream side of the bridge pillar on the left embankment was identified (33°32'08" S, 27°02'31" E). Water level data have been collected on the system since March 2005. The data are logged electronically at the recorder and offloaded at intervals of about 4-6 weeks and then stored in the DWA database.



Figure 1. Water level recorder P4H002 attached to the East Kleinemonde road bridge.

No information was available on whether the water level recorder at the East Kleinemonde Estuary had been corrected to mean sea level (MSL) or not. To validate the measured data, 18 high tide observations for 6 different periods during 2005 to 2006 period were compared with the predicted tide for Port Elizabeth<sup>1</sup>. The water level recordings were found to be an average of 0.04 m lower than the predicted tide. Given the inaccuracy in predicted tides due to local sea conditions and climatic influences, it was not deemed necessary to adjust the water level recorder readings for this study until DWA confirms the accuracy of the readings.

<sup>1</sup> East London's tidal measurements (and predictions) are distorted by local effects such as the fact that it is in an estuary. Port Elizabeth's measurements were therefore considered the more accurate tidal prediction values for the study.

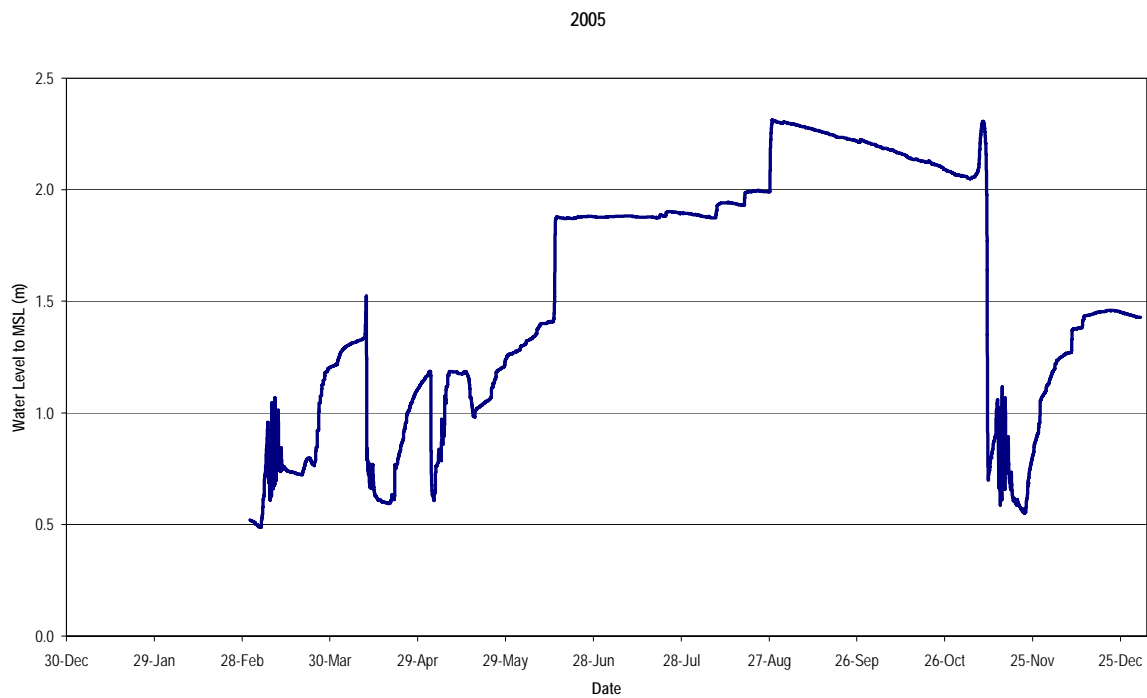


Figure 2. Water levels in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during 2005.

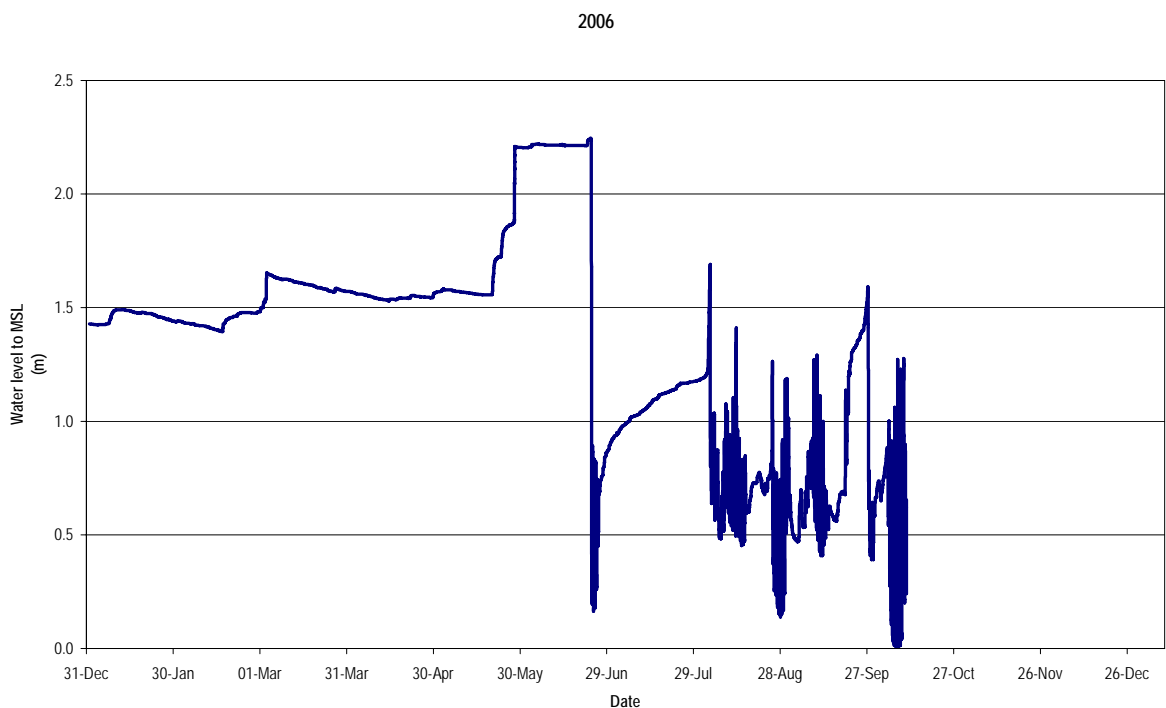


Figure 3. Water levels in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during 2006.

During the measuring period (February 2005 to October 2006) the water level in the estuary varied between 2.3 and 0.18 m MSL (see Figures 2 and 3). An analysis of the water level data and continuous mouth observations shows that the East Kleinemonde Estuary has a tendency to close in the absence of sustained river inflow. Open mouth events seldom last longer than a few days. In the majority of observed breaching events the system closed within a few tidal cycles. In other words the connection to the marine environment is seldom firmly established and is normally only maintained for a few days at a time. This breaching pattern gives a clear indication that the base flow is not sufficient to maintain open mouth conditions in this estuary. For example, the breaching event of 9 November 2005 shows a rapid increase in water level due to a freshette, a breaching of the system and closure after the water has drained from the system (Figure 4). Tidal variation is only observed at a subsequent breaching event four days later.

If the river inflow is high ( $> 0.04 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ) and this elevated flow is maintained for longer than a day, the water level in the estuary generally increases to a level greater than 2.0 m MSL. This contributes to an open mouth condition for longer than a day such as the mouth conditions observed during 23-26 June 2006 and 3-16 August 2006 (Figure 5).

2005

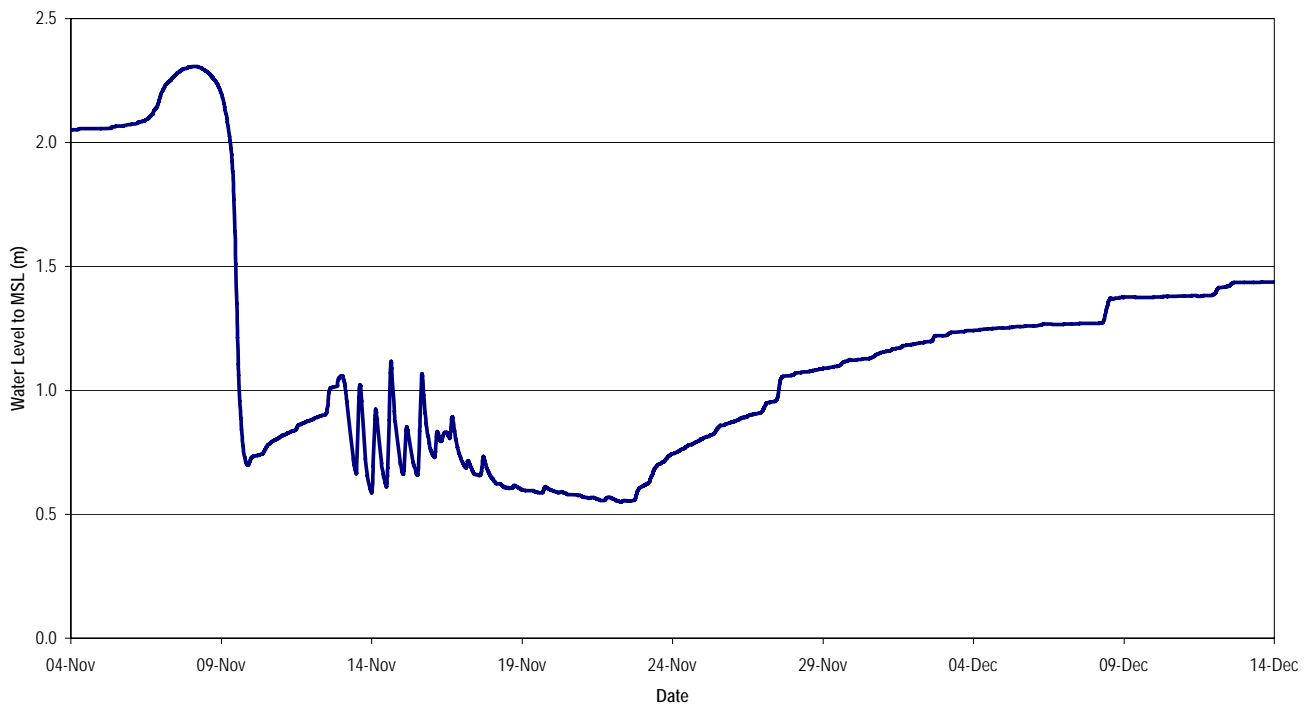


Figure 4. Water levels in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during November 2005.

2006

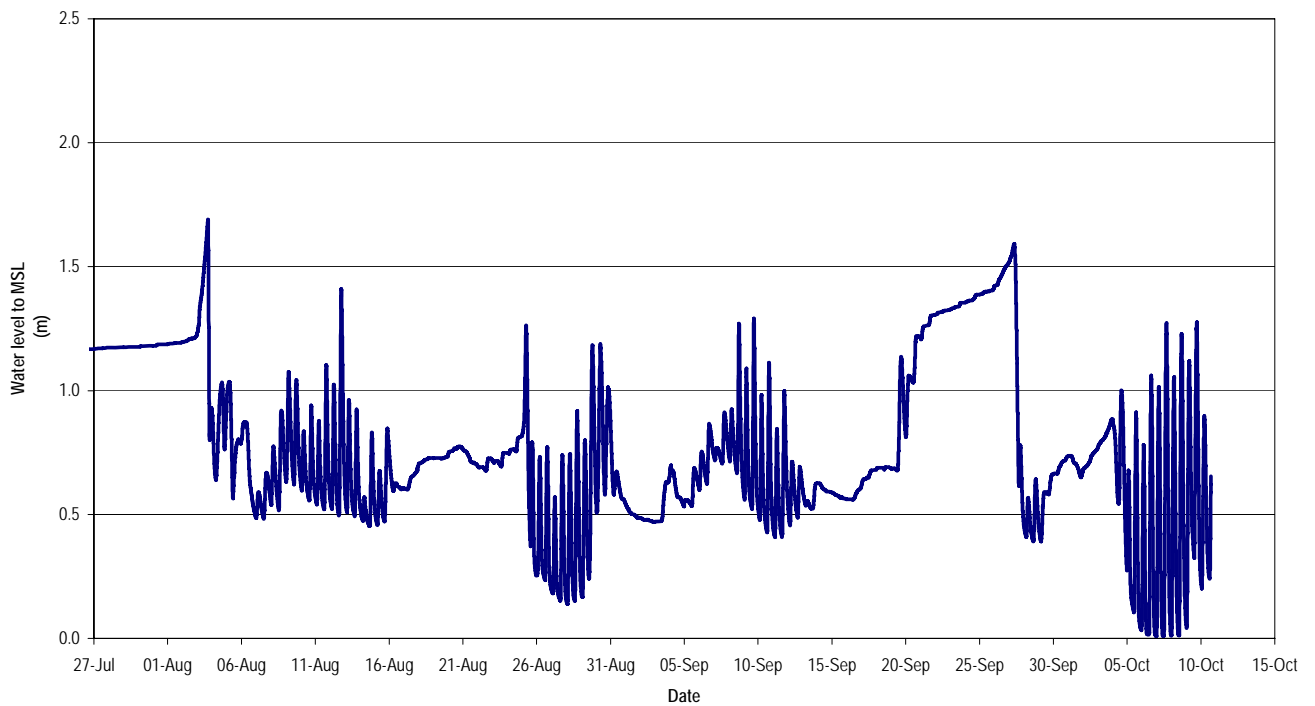


Figure 5. Water levels in the East Kleinemonde Estuary from July to October 2006.

A small estuary such as the East Kleinemonde can be very sensitive to the height of the water level behind the sand bar prior to the breaching. When the water level is high, there is a greater head of water available to scour sediment from the mouth area during a breaching event, thereby increasing the depth. This in turn can result in an increase in tidal flow and in maintaining an open mouth for a slightly longer period. In some instances the breach can occur at such low water levels that very little sediment is scoured from the mouth area and closure occurs within a few hours.

A close scrutiny of the water level recorder data indicates that what initially appears to be a sustained open mouth event, often consists of a series of rapid breaching and closure events. Figures 3 to 6 illustrate the stop-start nature of the East Kleinemonde Estuary breaching pattern. During these opening events seawater enters the estuary during the flood tide, but is often prevented from freely flowing out during the low tide due to the high level of the sand bar at the mouth. Shortly after such closures the water level recorder data show a step-by-step increase in water level, which is related to marine overwash on high tides when the berm level is still relatively low.

Water levels before breaching events varied between 0.69 and 2.31 m MSL for the period March 2005 to October 2006. These high breaching levels are associated with periods where the mouth stayed closed for an extended time (weeks to months) allowing the sand berm at the mouth to build up to level > 2.3 m MSL. This value of 2.3 m is surprisingly low by comparison with the average of 3.0 to 3.5 m MSL for South Africa's coastline (Perissinotto *et al.* 2004) and may be related to regular overwash which removes the berm crest and prevents berm build-up or localised deflation due to wind erosion in the north-eastern corner of the berm. The lower breaching levels are related to a brief mouth closure of only a few days before the estuary breached again as a result of river inflow or marine overwash.

Table 2. Summary of the breaching events for the period March 2005 to October 2006.

Breached		Closed		Days open
Date	Water level	Date	Water level*	
08/03/05	0.95	13/03/05	0.76	5
11/04/05	1.52	14/04/05	0.63	2
03/05/05	1.19	04/05/05	0.63	1
15/05/05	1.18	18/05/05	1.01	3
07/11/05	2.31	09/11/05	0.70	2
13/11/05	1.06	16/11/05	0.88	3
23/06/06	2.25	26/06/06	0.69	3
03/08/06	1.69	16/08/06	0.61	13
25/08/06	1.25	31/08/06	0.66	6
04/09/06	0.69	05/09/06	0.55	1
07/09/06	0.90	13/09/06	0.54	6
19/09/06	1.14	20/09/06	0.82	1
27/09/06	1.59	29/09/06	0.60	2
04/10/06	0.88			

\*Note: The water level for a closing event was taken at the first indication that the tide was no longer freely flowing in the estuary.

Mouth closure occurred at water levels varying between 0.54 and 1.01 m MSL. The average water level is estimated to be 0.76 m. With the exception of the level reached on 18 May 2005 (1.01 m), closure occurred in a narrow 0.3 m band ranging between 0.54 and 0.88 m. This indicates some consistency in the closing forces at the East Kleinemonde mouth. The lowest water level reached during the recorded period was 0 m MSL in October 2006, after the mouth was scoured deeply by the preceding flood. Mouth opening events in general were very brief during this study, lasting between 1 and 6 days. Only one breaching event, i.e. that which occurred on 3 August 2006 after the major flood, lasted longer than a week.

### River inflow

These data are based on the daily mouth observations and on the simulated flow data provided by D.A. Hughes. Daily observations of the East Kleinemonde record five mouth states: 1) Mouth closed; 2) Mouth closed with little marine overwash; 3) Mouth closed with much marine overwash; 4) Mouth open; and 5) Water trickling out. Table 3 summarises the percentage occurrence of these states from 1993 to 2003.

Table 3. The percentage occurrence (days) of the different mouth states from 1993 to 2003 of the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Cowley unpublished data).

Year	Closed	Little overwash	Much overwash	Open	Trickling out
1993	86.6	10.7	0.3	2.5	0.0
1994	74.0	21.4	1.4	3.3	0.0
1995	42.2	51.5	4.1	2.2	0.0
1996	87.2	10.4	1.6	0.8	0.0
1997	81.1	14.5	1.4	3.0	0.0
1998	97.0	1.9	0.8	0.3	0.0
1999	100.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
2000	84.2	6.8	1.1	7.9	0.0
2001	71.0	12.1	0.3	15.1	1.6
2002	76.4	6.0	3.0	13.2	1.4
2003	62.7	14.5	5.2	17.5	0.0
Average	78.4	13.6	1.7	6.0	0.3

Table 4 shows the number of days the East Kleinemonde Estuary was open in a month for the period February 1993 to December 2003. The observed mouth state is recorded as open and should not be confused with states related to overwash or small trickles of estuary water overtopping the berm. The mouth of the Kleinemonde Estuary stayed open for between 1 and 28 days during the observation period.

Table 4. Daily observations of the open mouth status of the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

Year	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
1993		3	0	0	0	0	0	0	6	2	0	1
1994	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	5	0	0	0	5
1995	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1996	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
1997	0	0	0	3	2	6	0	0	0	0	0	0
1998	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
1999	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
2000	0	0	4	16	0	0	0	0	0	0	9	0
2001	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	11	13	3	21	7
2002	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	16	28	4	0	0
2003	0	0	0	0	21	13	7	0	0	19	4	0

Table 5 gives the summarised average monthly volume of river inflow for the period February 1993 to Sep 2003. The months with open mouth conditions are highlighted in blue in Table 5.

Table 5. Simulated monthly flow volumes for the East Kleinemonde Estuary (million m<sup>3</sup>).

Year	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
1993	0.008	0.003	0.000	0.009	0.003	0.049	0.016	0.037	0.186	0.058	0.000	0.180
1994	0.120	0.050	0.010	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.287	0.096	0.000	0.000	1.240
1995	0.454	0.021	0.013	0.126	0.041	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.003	0.051	0.017
1996	0.000	0.000	0.010	0.003	0.000	0.000	0.004	0.002	0.000	0.000	1.064	0.370
1997	0.005	0.000	0.002	0.258	0.106	0.344	0.113	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.000	0.000
1998	0.000	0.000	0.436	0.147	0.001	0.000	0.019	0.034	0.026	0.010	0.002	0.008
1999	0.003	0.000	0.008	0.003	0.000	0.000	0.130	0.043	0.022	0.339	0.111	0.000
2000	0.389	0.130	0.919	0.306	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.016	0.085	0.240	0.071
2001	0.045	0.015	0.023	0.040	0.011	0.000	0.145	0.083	0.145	0.047	0.134	0.051
2002	0.002	0.000	0.000	0.004	0.001	0.000	0.333	2.316	1.839	0.373	0.046	0.025
2003	0.003	0.000	0.000	0.033	3.841	1.282	0.027	0.015	0.002			

Table 6 gives the summarised average monthly river flow (in  $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the period February 1993 to September 2003. The months with open mouth conditions are highlighted in blue in the simulated runoff table.

Table 6. Simulated monthly flows for the East Kleinemonde Estuary in  $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ .

	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
1993	0.003	0.001	0.000	0.003	0.001	0.019	0.006	0.014	0.072	0.022	0.000	0.067
1994	0.045	0.021	0.004	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.107	0.037	0.000	0.000	0.463
1995	0.170	0.009	0.005	0.049	0.015	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.020	0.006
1996	0.000	0.000	0.004	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.001	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.410	0.138
1997	0.002	0.000	0.001	0.100	0.040	0.133	0.042	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
1998	0.000	0.000	0.163	0.057	0.000	0.000	0.007	0.013	0.010	0.004	0.001	0.003
1999	0.001	0.000	0.003	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.049	0.016	0.008	0.127	0.043	0.000
2000	0.145	0.054	0.343	0.118	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.006	0.032	0.093	0.027
2001	0.017	0.006	0.009	0.015	0.004	0.000	0.054	0.031	0.056	0.018	0.052	0.019
2002	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.002	0.000	0.000	0.124	0.865	0.709	0.139	0.018	0.009
2003	0.001	0.000	0.000	0.013	1.434	0.495	0.010	0.006	0.001			

Table 7 is a summary of breaching events and related simulated runoff flow that caused mouth opening for the period February 1993 to September 2003. The table also shows the number of days the system stayed open during a breaching event. Based on the observed daily mouth-status record, open mouth conditions occurred during 28 months for the 10-year period February 1993 to September 2003 in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Of the 28 opening events, 22 lasted for longer than a day. The total monthly volume of river water flowing into the estuary that is associated with events ranged between 0.003 and 3.841 million  $\text{m}^3$  for the months in which prolonged openings occurred. Some of the prolonged open mouth events were associated with high flows in preceding months and, if one were to exclude these from the association, the estuary seems to stay open for prolonged periods when the river flow is greater than 0.2 million  $\text{m}^3$  (or  $0.08 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ). Five of the 28 opening events merely drained the system before it closed again. The total monthly volume associated with these latter events ranged between 0.008 and 1.064 million  $\text{m}^3$  (or  $0.003$  and  $0.41 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ ) for the months in which very short openings occurred. Observed river inflow that is required to breach the East Kleinemonde Estuary corresponds very well with provisional estimates. Based on a surface area of  $\sim 30 \text{ ha}$  the estuary would require between 300 000 and 600 000  $\text{m}^3$  to initiate a breach. This translates to an average monthly inflow of about 0.1 to  $0.2 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ .

Table 7. Summary of breaching events and related simulated runoff to the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

Date		Simulated flow		Days open	Comment
		million $\text{m}^3$	$\text{m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$		
1993	Feb	0.003	0.001	3	<i>Record starts</i>
	Sep	0.186	0.072	6	
	Oct	0.058	0.022	2	<i>Remained open due to high flows in preceding month</i>
	Dec	0.180	0.067	1	
1994	Jan	0.120	0.045	1	
	Feb	0.050	0.021	1	
	Aug	0.287	0.107	5	
	Dec	1.240	0.463	5	
1995	Jan	0.454	0.170	8	
1996	Nov	1.064	0.410	1	
1997	Apr	0.258	0.100	3	
	May	0.106	0.040	2	
	Jun	0.344	0.133	6	
1998	Dec	0.008	0.003	1	
2000	Mar	0.919	0.343	4	
	Apr	0.306	0.118	16	
	Nov	0.240	0.093	9	

		Simulated flow			
2001	Aug	0.083	0.031	11	<i>Previous month had high flow</i>
	Sep	0.145	0.056	13	
	Oct	0.047	0.018	3	<i>Remains open due to high flows in preceding month</i>
	Nov	0.134	0.052	21	
	Dec	0.051	0.019	7	<i>Remains open due to high flows in preceding month</i>
2002	Aug	2.316	0.865	16	
	Sep	1.839	0.709	28	
	Oct	0.373	0.139	4	
2003	May	3.841	1.434	21	
	Jun	1.282	0.495	13	
	Jul	0.027	0.010	7	<i>Remains open due to high flows in preceding month</i>

There is a weak relationship between the river inflow and the number of days the system remained open after the breaching event. One of the main reasons for the wide discrepancy between flow and length of opening events is high variability in the closing forces, e.g. storminess and wave heights at sea. This model might also be further refined if measured or simulated daily flow data were used instead of simulated monthly flows.

### Bathymetry

Figure 6 illustrates the relative water depths of the East Kleinemonde Estuary relative to MSL. The surface area of the estuary varies between 35 000 after a breaching to 477 000 m<sup>2</sup> when the water level is high in the system (Table 8). Similarly the volume in the estuary varies between 16 000 m<sup>3</sup> and 664 000 m<sup>3</sup> depending on the water level and the height of the sand bar at the mouth (Table 8).

Table 8. Surface area and volume of the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

Depth	Area (m <sup>2</sup> )	Volume (m <sup>3</sup> )
-2.00	143	4
-1.75	676	91
-1.50	1 499	350
-1.25	2 620	838
-1.00	4 238	1 674
-0.75	6 683	2 988
-0.50	11 174	5 100
-0.25	21 021	9 002
0.00	35 061	15 657
0.25	92 100	31 097
0.50	152 222	61 082
0.75	216 815	106 429
1.00	282 489	168 540
1.25	340 066	246 313
1.50	389 171	337 503
1.75	423 427	438 914
2.00	451 973	548 054
2.25	477 488	663 885
2.50	502 313	785 882
2.75	525 539	913 694
3.00	547 695	1 047 239

## Volumetric calculation

The volume of water in an estuary depends on the balance between river inflow and seepage, evaporation losses and in- and outflow of groundwater. River inflow to the Kleinemonde Estuary was calculated as a function of the difference in water levels (m) over a set period (day) (see Figure 7 and 8). The volume of the estuary were estimated for different water levels through the relationship  $y = 86499x^2 + 94894x - 0.2$ .

Median river inflow for 2005 and 2006 was  $0.04 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  and  $0.03 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  respectively, while average river inflow was  $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  (2005) and  $0.14 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  (2006). The calculated median inflow is somewhat higher than the simulated inflow of  $0.01 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ , while the average simulated inflow is surprisingly similar at  $0.12 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ , considering that the calculated inflow does not include periods when the mouth was open and flow was high.

The drawback of this method is that the approach is only valid for periods that the estuary mouth is closed. As soon as the estuary breaches, tidal action becomes an additional factor in the equation. This method therefore does not lend itself towards calculating the flow that initiates a breach event or help maintain an open mouth condition in an estuary. However, the method can be used in the absence of any river inflow data to validate simulated river inflow for low-flow periods when gauging stations are often at their least accurate.

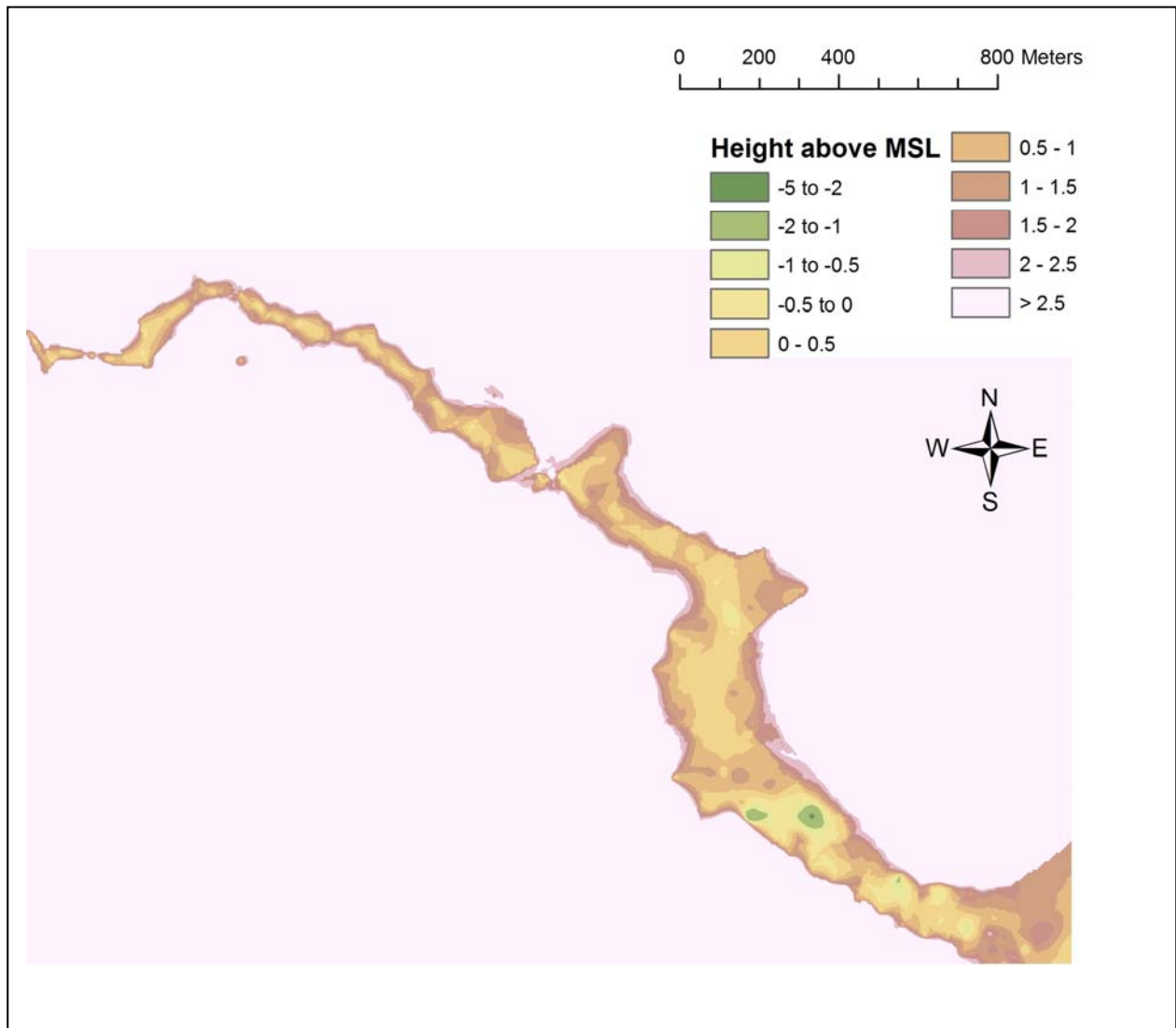


Figure 6. Depth to MSL (m) of the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

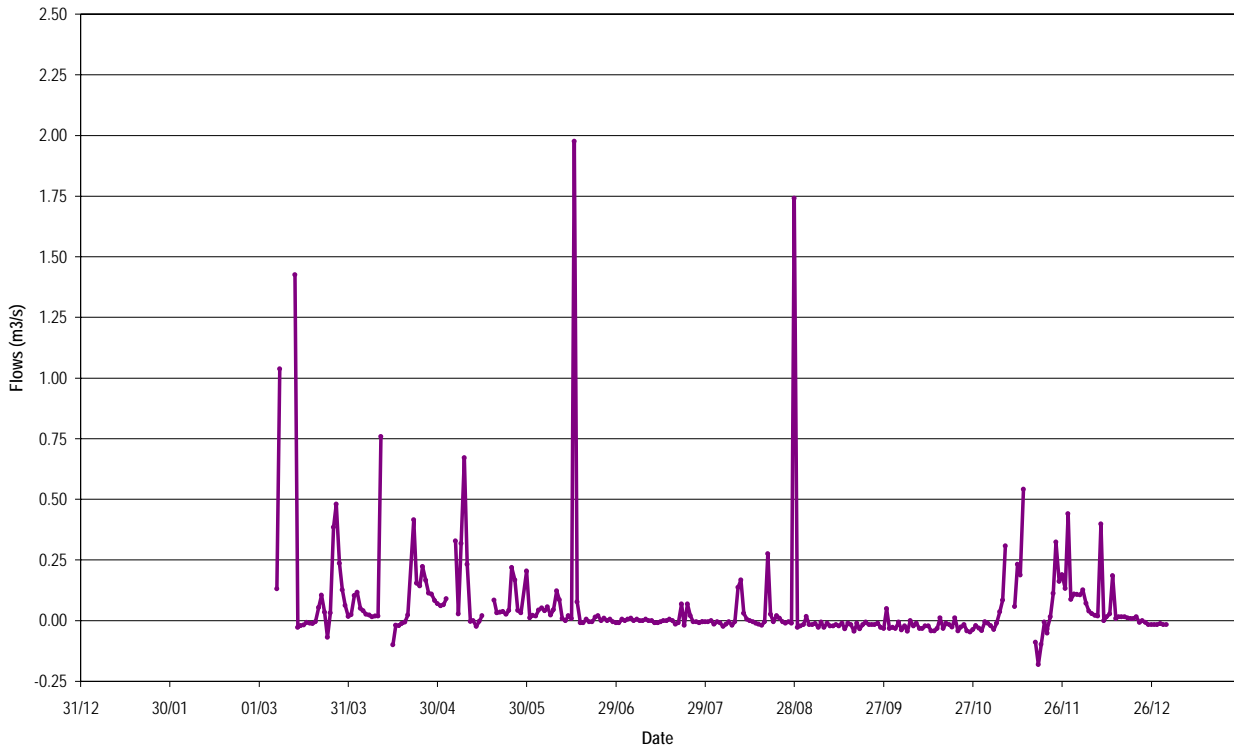


Figure 7. Calculated flow rates ( $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the East Kleinemonde Estuary in 2005.

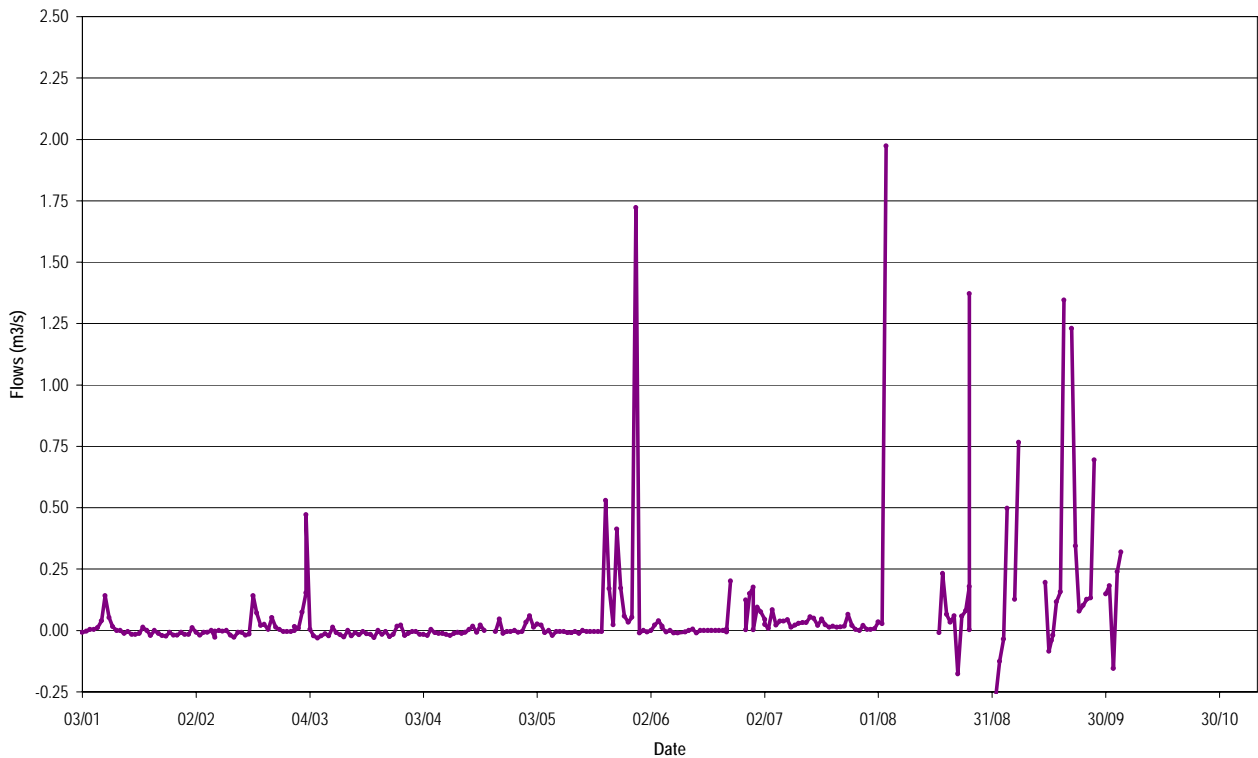


Figure 8. Calculated flow rates ( $\text{m}^3 \text{s}^{-1}$ ) for the East Kleinemonde Estuary in 2006.

Negative flows are indicative of evaporation and seepage losses through the berm. For example, in 2005 negative flow between  $-0.01$  and  $-0.05 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  were calculated for September and October (see Table 9). As spring is still a relatively cool time of the year and the surface area of the estuary is small, these losses can be attributed to seepage through the berm. Unfortunately, some groundwater or river inflow may well have contributed to the volume of water (i.e. water level) in the system and considerable higher seepage and evaporation values would then be expected.

Table 9. Calculated losses from the East Kleinmonde Estuary.

Date	Water level (m)	Seepage or evaporation rate (m <sup>3</sup> s <sup>-1</sup> )
17/06/05 - 21/07/05	1.9	0.000
29/08/05 - 5/11/05	2.3	0.021
12/01/06 - 16/02/06	1.5	0.011
04/03/06 - 17/04/06	1.6	0.011

Evaluations of the water levels after a breaching event indicate that the estuary very seldom breaches and lowers the berm level below 0.5 m MSL. At this level, water losses can be due to an outflow via a small outflow channel (overtopping) or seepage through the berm. Tidal influence also plays a role, as it will reduce (or reverse) seepage during high tides. For the purpose of this study seepage is assumed to be zero m<sup>3</sup> s<sup>-1</sup> at 0.5 m MSL.

### Salinity distribution

Regular salinity measurements were conducted during 2006. Salinity data were, more often than not, showed a homogenous water body while stratification was mostly observed in the upper reaches where freshwater enters the system, but also during an open mouth state. Therefore, to provide a summary of changes in salinity over the measuring period, salinity data were averaged for each measuring trip (note: in certain instances high and low tide observations were conducted on the same day). Figure 10 illustrates the response in average salinity to changes in water levels in the East Kleinmonde Estuary. The average salinity for the measuring period was 23.3 psu, with a range of 14.5 to 31.8 psu. During the closed mouth state the estuary's salinity fluctuated between 15 to 23 psu. Shortly after a breaching event the salinity in the system increased to more than 30 psu. Because of the small size of the estuary, salinity was very responsive to the tidal cycle during the open state with an average increase of 4 psu noted on the flood tide.

### Overwash

During 1993 to 2006 the East Kleinmonde Estuary was predominately closed (74.4%), with marine overwash events occurring for 15.4 % of the time and the mouth open for very limited periods (9%). In 2006 the estuary was open for 32.6%, which is significantly above the average for open mouth conditions (see Table 10 and Figure 9). Closed mouth conditions occurred for 41.6% of the time, while overwash occurred for 15.1% of the time.

Four overwash events were also observed (B. Mackenzie pers. comm.) during the study period (see Table 11). Relatively small changes in salinity were correlated with these overwash events, some of which may be related to the sampling method and the averaging of values over the entire estuary.

Figure 9 illustrates the fluctuation in water level, salinity and overwash events in the East Kleinmonde Estuary for 2006. Overwash was observed on 16 February 2006 during the day. It is likely that an overwash occurring during the night of 15 February 2006 elevated the salinity (by 1.1 psu).

The overwash event of 3 March 2006 represents a good example of a significant inflow of marine water at a water level of ~1.5 m MSL. The average salinity in the system increased by about 2.5 psu due to this marine inflow. On 18 March 2006 overwash elevated the salinity by 0.9 PSU.

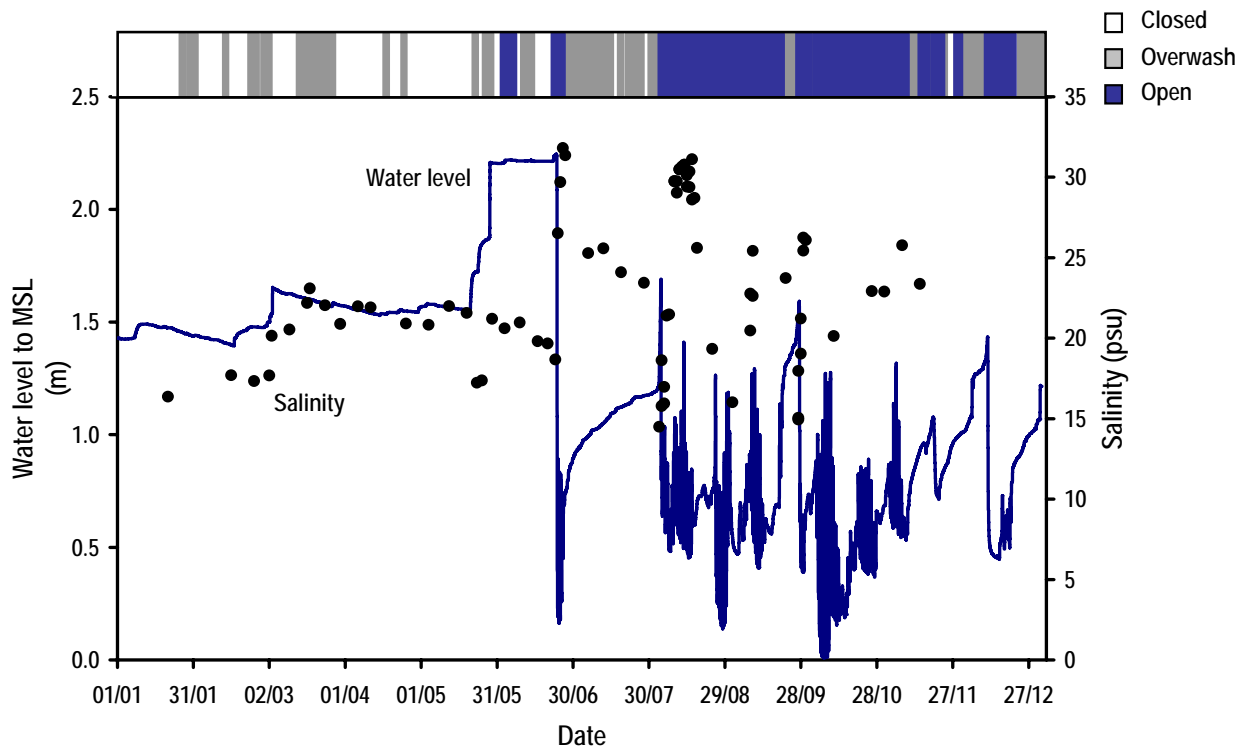


Figure 9. Water levels, salinity and marine overwash events in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for 2006 (water level indicated by the continuous line and salinity by dots).

Table 10. Mouth status of the East Kleinemonde Estuary from January to December 2006.

Month	Day of month																																		
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31				
J'06																																1			1
F			1	1												2												1	1	1					
M	1	1	2												1		1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1					
A																		1							1										
M																							1					1	2	1					
J			3		4		4					1	1	1	1									4	3	3	3	2	1	1	1	1			
J	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1				1				1	1	1	1	1	1	1					1	
A	1	1	2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	
S	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	1	2	1	1	1	3	3	3	3	3		
O	3	1	1	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	
N	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	1	1	1	1	3	3	3	2	2	3	3	3	3	3	1					3	3	1				
D	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	1		3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3			1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	

Table Key:

	Mouth closed
1	Mouth closed with small overwash
2	Mouth closed with large overwash
3	Mouth open
4	Trickling out

Table 11. Observed marine overwash events in the East Kleinemonde Estuary for 2006.

Date of overwash	Salinity change (psu)	From → To	Date of previous measurements	Data Set
15-16/02/06	1.1	16.4 → 17.7	21/01/06	P Cowley
03/03/06	2.5	17.7 → 20.2	02/03/06	B Mackenzie
18/03/06	0.9	22.2 → 23.1	17/03/2006	P Cowley
23/05/06	-4.4	21.6 → 17.2	19/05/06	B Mackenzie
28/05/06	3.8	17.4 → 21.2	23/05/06	P Cowley
26/06/06	2.1	29.7 → 31.8	25/06/06	B Mackenzie
12/07/06	0.3	25.3 → 31.8	06/07/06	B Mackenzie

On the 23 May 2006 an overwash event is related to a big increase in water level but a related initial decrease of 4 psu in salinity. On 28 May 2006 a large overwash event increased the salinity in the system again by 3.8 psu. Figure 9 shows that after the significant decrease in salinity, values recovered again to pre-event values, which indicate that the increase in water level was related to both freshwater and marine inflow during that period. Overwash was also observed during the breaching event of 26 June 2006 and was likely the cause. The overwash event of 12 July 2007 only resulted in a small 0.3 psu increase in salinity.

In summary, overwash contributes to the salinity balance in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Salinity increases of between 0.3 and 3.8 psu were correlated with observed overwash events. Lower values (<1.0 psu) are associated with small overwash events, while the larger increases (>2 psu) are associated with significant overwash events.

#### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This study would not have been possible without regular *in situ* observations made by B. Mackenzie.

#### RECOMMENDATIONS

The following recommendations are based on the findings of this study:

- Continuous water level recorder data provide essential data for investigations into estuarine mouth behaviour. Such recorders should be installed in all temporarily open/closed systems in South Africa.
- It is recommended that DWAF confirm the benchmark of the East Kleinemonde Estuary water level recorder as this provides the baseline data for a number of further calculations.
- Simulated monthly runoff data do not provide an accurate enough prediction of the mouth state of a small estuary such as the East Kleinemonde. It is recommended that in future, estuarine scientists be provided with simulated daily flows to the estuary, covering at least 15 – 20 years, to assist in developing predictions at the time scales operating in such small systems.
- Volumetric calculations based on water level recordings and local bathymetry can provide data on the volume of water entering the estuary under closed mouth conditions. Unfortunately, this method does not distinguish between runoff from the catchment and overwash from the sea. A further consideration is that this method cannot provide estimates of the volume of flow associated with freshettes and floods when a mouth is open and can therefore not assist in calculating the flows required to maintain an open mouth condition. Volumetric calculations of temporarily open/closed estuaries can be used to validate simulated daily flow in the absence of measured flow.

#### REFERENCES

Perissinotto, R., Blair, A., Connell, A., Demetriades, N.T., Forbes, A.T. Harrison, T.H., Lyer, K., Joubert, M., Kibirige, I., Mundree, S., Simpson, H., Stretch, D., Thomas, C., Thwala, X. & Zietsman, I. 2004. Contribution to information required for the implementation of Resource Directed Measures for estuaries (Volume 2). Responses of the biological communities to flow variation and mouth state in two KwaZulu-Natal temporarily open/closed estuaries. Water Research Commission Report No. 1247/2/04.

**Appendix D**

**Specialist Report:  
Coastal Processes and Sediment Dynamics**

**AK Theron  
(CSIR, Stellenbosch)  
TG Bornman  
(NMMU, Port Elizabeth)**

## INTRODUCTION

The hydrodynamics specialist report has discussed mouth conditions, impacts of river flow and tidal flow, which are all intrinsically related to the sediment dynamics and morphology of estuaries. The remaining driver of sediment dynamics in estuaries is linked to coastal processes and this aspect will be examined in more detail here.

Within the coastal zone, there are a number of processes that can transport varying amounts of marine sediment to estuary mouths (e.g. Beck, *et al.* 2004). Marine sediments that have been transported close to the mouth by such processes are then potentially available to be transported into the estuary itself, mainly by means of tidal flow through the mouth (often in conjunction with wave action). There are also a few other processes (such as wind action and wave overwash), which can transport marine sediment directly into the estuary, even when the mouth is closed.

### Sediment grain size

Information from CSIR (2000) contains sediment and survey data from the East and West Kleinemonde estuaries. Sand samples taken from the mouth areas of these estuaries indicated an average median sediment grain size (D50) of about 250  $\mu\text{m}$ . Badenhorst (1988) also analysed sediment and survey data from these estuaries. Three vibracores taken near the West Kleinemonde bridge all showed median grain sizes (D50) of about 250  $\mu\text{m}$ .

Sediment samples collected along three beach profiles (Figure 1) from the lower, middle and upper beach during four sampling periods (12 April, 10 July, 12 August and 10 September) in 2006 had a mean particle size of  $266 \pm 7 \mu\text{m}$  ( $n = 40$ ). The medium to fine sand (D50) was moderately to well sorted. No gravel, silt or clay was recorded in the samples. The largest sand fraction was made up of medium to fine sand (Figure 2). On 12 April the sand along the three transects had a higher percentage of medium and coarse grained sand than recorded during the other sampling periods later in the year (Figure 2). No significant difference was recorded between the percentage of medium and fine grained sand in July, August and September. The large flood in August appears to have increased the organic content of the beach sand, especially along Transect 2 situated between the two estuaries (Figure 3).

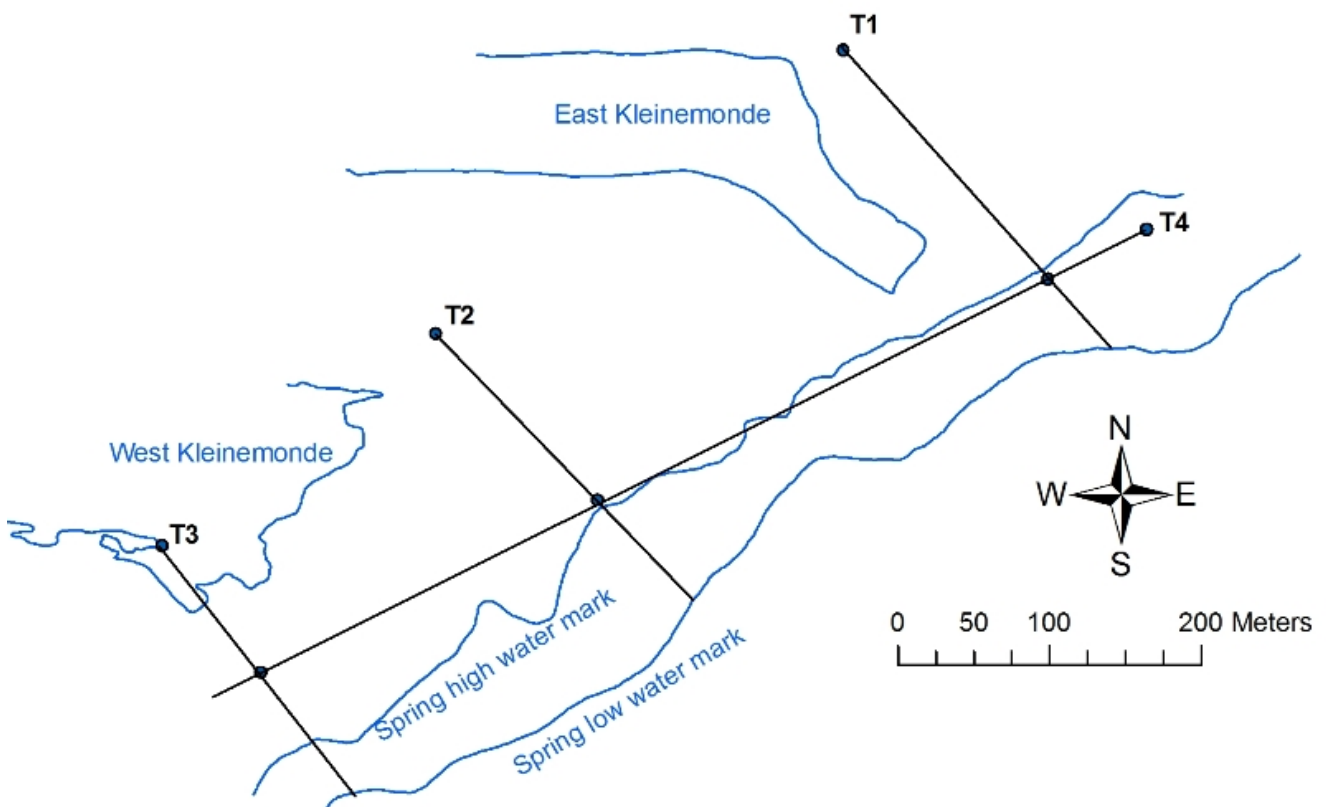


Figure 1. Study site map showing the position of the 4 transects in relation to the East and West Kleinemonde estuaries and the spring low and high water mark of the sea.

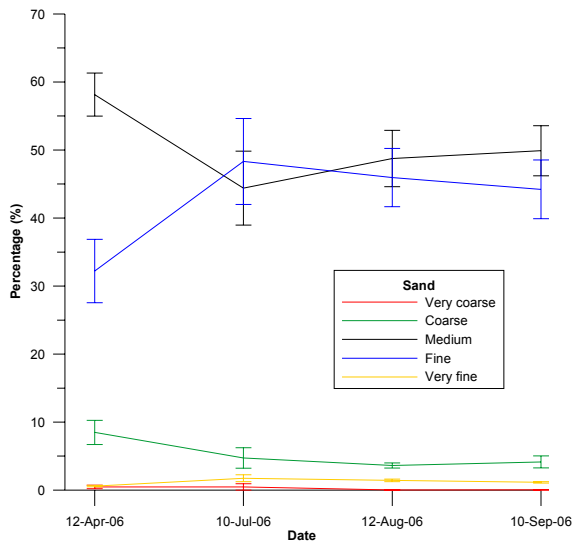


Figure 2. The combined percentage sand fraction for Transects 1, 2 and 3 over the four sampling periods (n = 9)

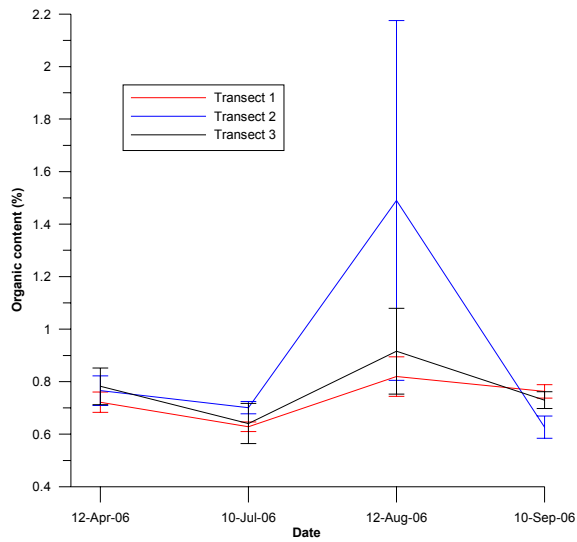


Figure 3. Percentage organic content of the sediment along Transects 1, 2 and 3 during the four sampling periods (n = 3)

### Beach profiles

To determine the degree of exposure of a beach, it is important to know both the beach slope and the grain size because these parameters are interlinked (Wiegel 1964).

CSIR (2000) shows that typical beach slopes on the western side of the West Kleinemonde mouth (31 January 1988 and 7 July 1988) between 0 and +2 m MSL were about 1 in 18. From Badenhorst (1988) beach slopes on the western side of the combined mouth area (i.e. both East and West Kleinemonde) were calculated to be about 1 in 21, while beach slopes on the eastern side of the combined mouth area were about 1 in 24.

Beach transects and transects along the crest of the berm were surveyed on 12 April, 10 July, 12 August and 9 September 2006. The three beach profiles are respectively located on the eastern side of East Kleinemonde Mouth, in the middle of the two systems and on the western side of West Kleinemonde mouth (Figure 1). They extended from as near to the dune crest to as far into the sea as practically possible and covered a range of different environmental conditions. (Ideally, the following conditions should be covered: storm event (cold front), strong local onshore wind conditions, typical wind and wave conditions and a very calm day).

#### Transect 1

Approximately 1.5 to 2 m (vertically) of sand was removed from Transect 1 between April and July 2006. Little change occurred between then and September 2006.

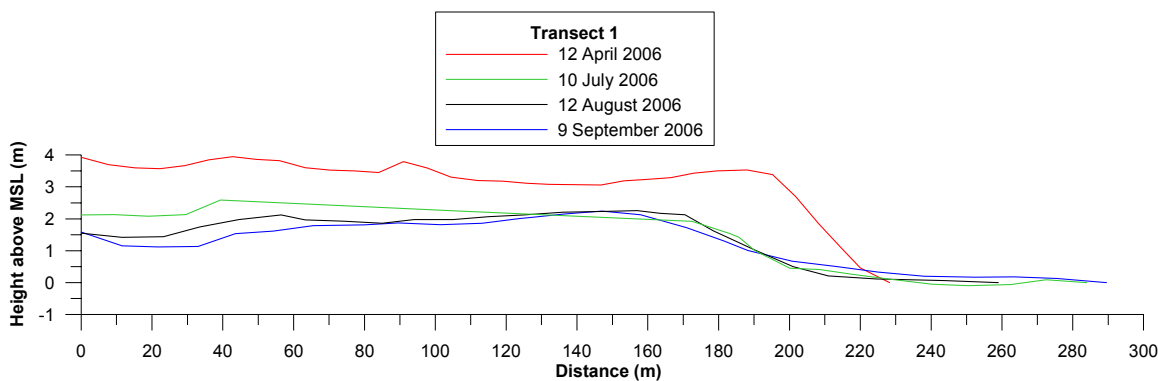


Figure 4. Profile of Transect 1 over time.

### Transect 2

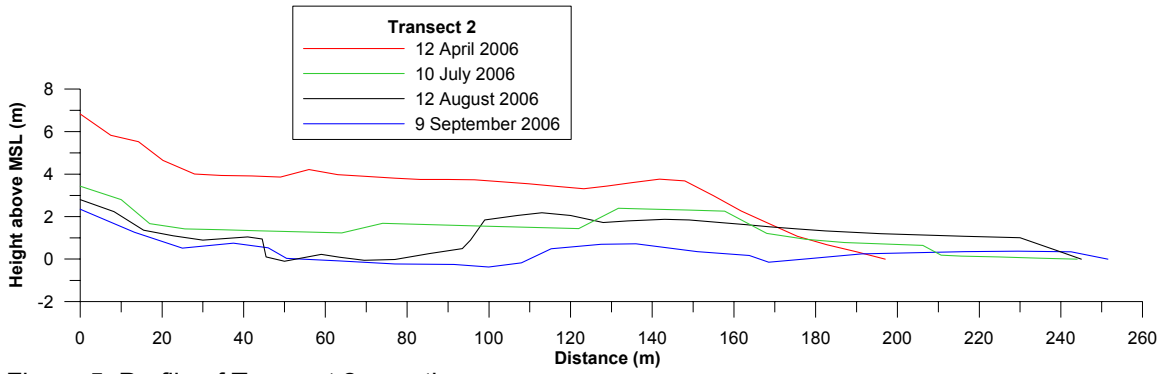


Figure 5. Profile of Transect 2 over time.

Transect 2 showed similar changes to transect 1 with large volumes of sediment removed between April and July 2006. The West Kleinemonde Estuary breached in August, but then closed quickly (the West Kleinemonde channel is situated between 50 and 90 m on the x-axis). Note that the berm is still elevated in that area, i.e. West Kleinemonde was still perched and the breach had not been sufficient to scour out all the sediment in the mouth. Following further heavy rain the West Kleinemonde Estuary breached completely in September 2006 and large volumes of sediment were removed from the mouth area.

### Transect 3

Transect 3 showed fewer changes over time because of its position on the berm to the west of the West Kleinemonde Estuary.

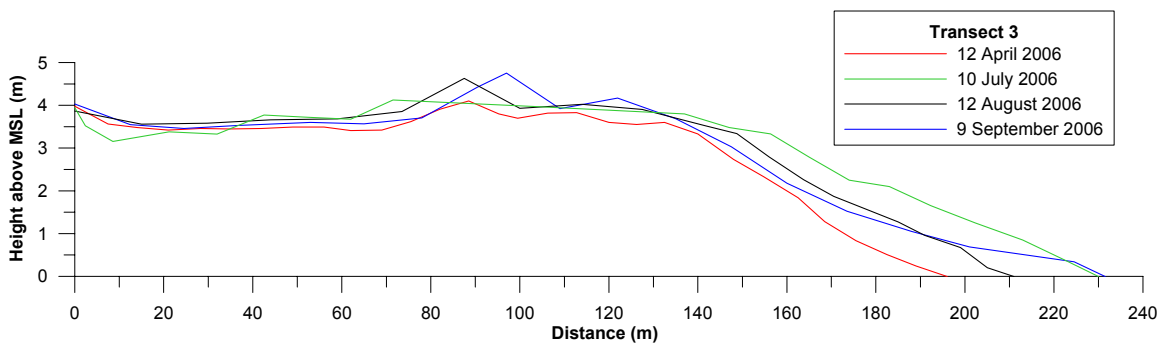


Figure 6. Changes in the profile of Transect 3 between April and September 2006.

### Transect 4

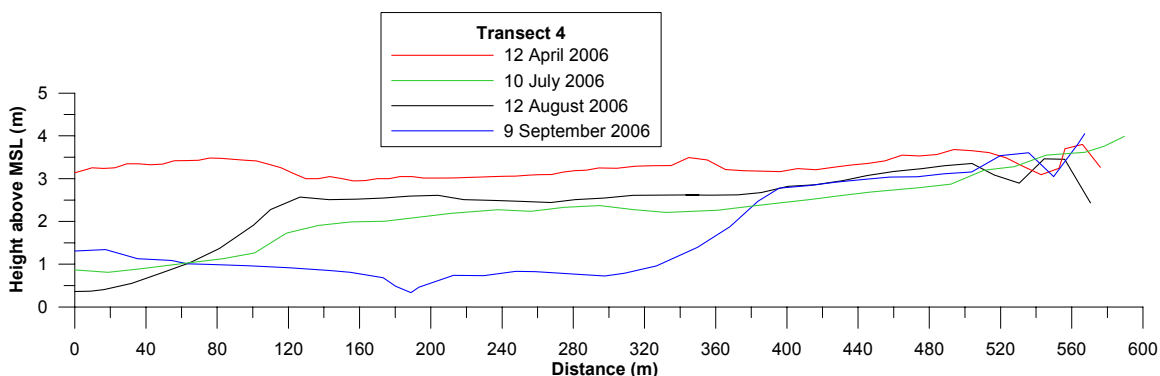


Figure 7. Changes in the profile of Transect 4 between April and September 2006.

Large changes occurred across the berm after April 2006. By July, the East Kleinemonde Estuary had breached briefly and, at the time of sampling, was in a semi-closed perched state and the only water exchange was via marine overwash. In August 2006 both estuaries breached, but the West Kleinemonde Estuary closed quickly again and remained perched, with only surface water draining and with some marine ingress. The West Kleinemonde Estuary breached completely between August and September 2006 and a larger ebb flow discharge was recorded in the West compared to the East Kleinemonde Estuary on 9 September 2006, i.e.  $0.6 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  in the East and  $2.4 \text{ m}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  in the West Kleinemonde estuaries respectively.

## Coastal hydrodynamics

Mean wave height at the outer breaker zone off this estuary typically ranges between about 1 m and 3 m (mostly 1.5-2.5 m), but during rare extreme conditions this can probably range between 0.5 m and 5.5 m. Observed estimates (B. Mackenzie pers. comm.) give a range of 0.5 m to 4 m, with an average of about 2 m.

The degree and type of wave breaking determines the rate of energy dissipation and is also an important parameter in other near-shore processes. Spilling waves gradually dissipate energy while plunging waves dissipate most of their energy at the breakpoint. Collapsing and surging waves dissipate energy close to the shoreline. The wave breaker type at the East Kleinemonde Estuary mouth is usually spilling (rolling down gradually from the top), but sometimes becomes plunging where the top of the wave crashes down onto the foot in one go, especially during offshore or obliquely offshore wind conditions. Mackenzie's (pers. comm.) observations confirm that the wave breaker type is mostly spilling.

The surf-zone width influences the amount of energy dissipation in the surf-zone. A wide surf-zone with many re-breaks means that energy is dissipated over a wider area further away from the shore. Based on an analysis of 13 sets of aerial photographs dated from 1938 to 2004, surf-zone widths (total distance from outer breakpoint to waterline) opposite the mouth area typically range from about 160 m (low waves) to 300 m (high waves). Estimates based on about 69 in-situ visual observations from April to November 2006, give a range of 40 m to 250 m, with an average of about 120 m. However, during extreme conditions the width probably moves outside this range: exceptionally calm - width reduces to approximately 35 m, major sea storm - width greater than 300 m.

The number of re-breaks (i.e. the wave stops breaking, reforms and breaks again) within the total surf-zone is usually one, ranging from none to two as indicated by both photographs and in-situ observations. A shore-parallel bar and trough system is often observed, but weak rip currents are only occasionally seen in or adjacent to the mouth area.

Beaches are globally categorised according to one of six types, viz. dissipative beaches, four classes of intermediate beaches and reflective beaches (e.g. Battjes 1974). Reflective beaches have a steep beach face with surging breakers that are reflected back towards deeper water. Dissipative beaches have flat beach slopes and the wave energy is dissipated gradually in deeper water further away from the beach. Based on the nature of the surf-zone, breaker type and beach slope, conditions at the East Kleinemonde Estuary mouth are usually dissipative to intermediate, but seldom reflective although the beach profiles for April did indicate a reflective state.

Black Rock Point is located about 1.5 km southwest of the East Kleinemonde mouth (Figure 8). The open bay east of Black Rock Point, within which the mouth is located, has similarities with so called "half heart" or "log-spiral" bays. Due to Black Rock Point, the mouth area is sheltered from inshore waves approaching from the west, with reduced sheltering as the incident wave direction changes to south-southwest. The mouth area is fully exposed to wave direction from south-southwest to about easterly. The east-northeasterly to northeasterly sector is protected by Great Fish Point.

## SEDIMENT DYNAMICS

The aeolian-headland-bypass system at Black Rock Point together with surf- and swash-zone sediment transport, provide an ample supply of sand to the mouth area from the west. The wide sand beach and dunes to the east (Figure 8) also supply large amounts of sand to the mouth area from the east during south-easterly to easterly wave conditions.

Sediment transport in the nearshore region is usually categorized as longshore (parallel to the shoreline) or cross-shore (perpendicular to the shoreline). Based on the model of Kamphuis (Kamphuis 1991, Schoonees & Theron 1996) and average wave height conditions of 2 m, a wave period of 12 s, a breaker wave angle of 1-2°, a median sand grain diameter of 0.25 mm and a beach slope of 1 in 21, an average potential longshore transport of 700 000 m<sup>3</sup> to 1 900 000 m<sup>3</sup> per annum is predicted. The CERC model (CERC 1984) predicts about half of these values. Wave directions near the outer breakpoint off the mouth are mostly close to shore-normal. However, waves breaking with small angles from the west (i.e. up-coast longshore current generated) occur more frequently than waves breaking from the east (i.e. down-coast longshore current). The actual net longshore sediment transport, which is usually up-coast is also dependent on the amount of sediment available to be transported and is probably much less than the potential transport rate. Typical shorter-term net cross-shore rates during a storm would be in the order of a few m<sup>3</sup> m<sup>-1</sup> hour<sup>-1</sup> for 24 hours (most southern African sea storms have durations of a few hours to a few days).

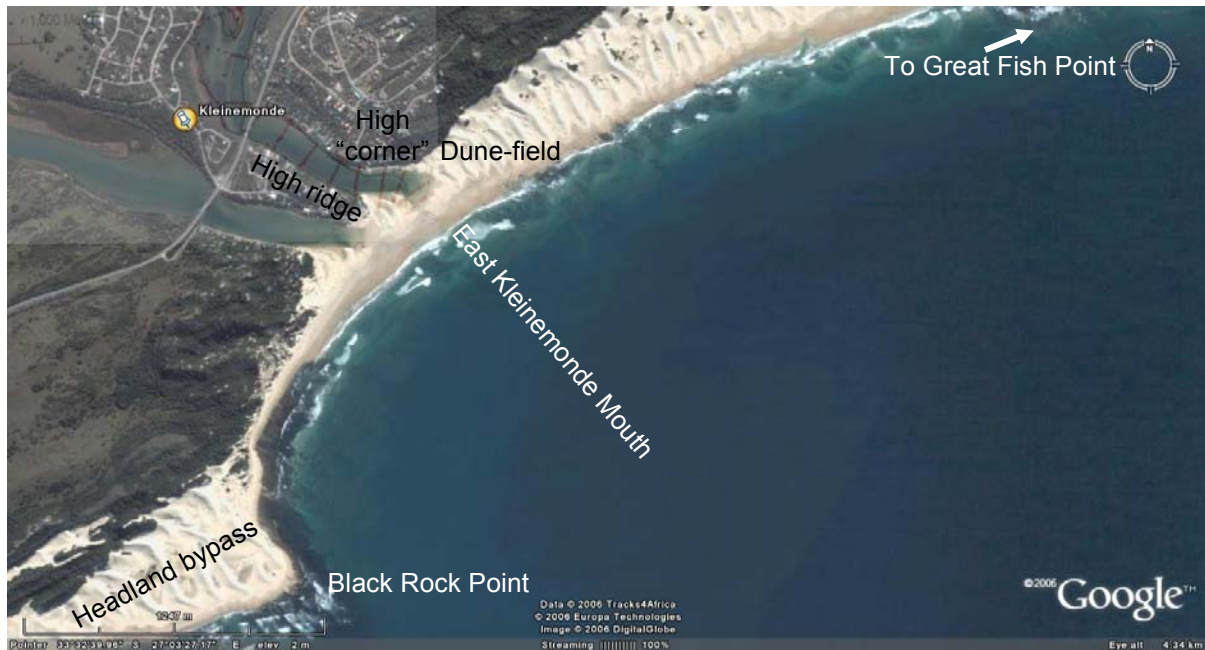


Figure 8. Satellite photograph of Kleinemonde Mouth coastal area.

The total net rate of possible sedimentation, and even the instantaneous sediment transport rate in the estuary, is orders of magnitude less than the estimated longshore or cross-shore transport rates, which move coastal sediments into the estuary mouth area. Even if the longshore transport rate is sometimes nil, large amounts of marine sediment is usually stirred up by wave action. A more than ample supply of marine sediment is therefore usually present at the estuary mouth, for potential transport into the estuary and mouth closure. Thus the amount of marine sediment intrusion into the estuary is mainly dependent on the net transport capacity of the ebb and flood tidal flows near the mouth, and most probably not on the amount of sediment available outside the mouth. Even the relatively smaller amounts of direct marine sediment intrusion due to wash over of the berm or aeolian transport could be of the same order of magnitude as the possible total rate of net long-term sedimentation in the estuary. It is necessary to note that it has not been proven or factually established that the East Kleinemonde Estuary is undergoing net long-term sedimentation. The literature shows that the sediment balance in estuaries often relies on a subtle balance between dominant flood and ebb tide flows, as well as on catchment sediment yield and river flood regime (Theron *et al.* 2002).

The type of wave breaking, the extent of near-shore currents and the strength of the backwash are all directly related to the slope of the tidal face of the beach. An increase in this slope will lead to more severe surf conditions, with more sediment entrainment and availability for transport into the estuary mouth. The wave and surf-zone characteristics described above confirm that medium to relatively high wave energy conditions occur relatively close to the estuary mouth, largely during high tide, when the then narrower surf-zone includes the steeper part of the beach profile and the water depth increases over the outer sandbar allowing more wave energy to pass. Sediment loads are entrained by the turbulent wave action and carried into the estuary mouth area where the sediment is deposited in this lower energy environment, which consequently has a lower sediment carrying capacity. When this deposition rate exceeds the erosion potential of ebb-tidal and river outflow, a net sediment build-up occurs. If this situation continues for long enough, the mouth is closed.

Thus, besides river inflow and tidal flow, wave conditions, together with marine sediment availability, also play a major role in estuary mouth dynamics and state. Wave data recorded off East London which is approximately 100 km northeast show, for example, that during the period March 2005 to February 2006 both the median and extreme wave heights (1% exceedance) were only slightly larger than the long-term (1992-2005) values for East London, due mainly to more stormy conditions during the spring and summer seasons. More specifically, it can be shown that of the 13 mouth closure events identified in the hydrodynamics section (Appendix C), at least 4 can be directly correlated with sea storms (high wave events). Based on wave recordings off East London these are the events of 9 November 2005, 26 June 2006, 31 August and 20 October 2006.

## **Aeolian transport**

The main wind directions are approximately parallel to the coastline, with significantly more wind from the west-southwest sector than from the east-northeast quadrant (Figure 8). The large dune fields in the vicinity confirm extensive aeolian activity. The crests of the dune ridges are aligned approximately perpendicularly to the shoreline (or south-southeast to north-northwest). However, the local “layout” and topography, result in the major aeolian input being from the east-northeast sector.

Due to the high ridge between the two mouths (Figure 5) and the low East Kleinemonde Estuary area, shore parallel and obliquely onshore winds from the easterly side are channelled around the “corner” of the higher area north of the East Kleinemonde mouth and up the estuary. Thus, much wind-blown sand is deposited into the estuary mouth area from the large dunefield on the easterly side. From historical aerial photographs and *in situ* observations it seems that the mouth area is always filled in from the east-southeast due to aeolian and perhaps also wave driven sediment transport.

## **Berm dimensions**

Besides also being related to wave conditions, sediment characteristics and sometimes also aeolian transport, berm formation and berm dimensions obviously have a direct impact on mouth closure and breaching, over-wash into estuaries and seepage (both to and from the sea).

Historical aerial photographs show that the berm width is typically of the order of 200 m. Estimates based on the 2006 observations conducted by B. Mackenzie give an average width of 70 m, with a maximum of about 120 m.

Berm height could potentially range from as low as +0.5 m MSL up to a maximum of +5 m MSL, excluding dunes superimposed on top of the berm. Based on the models of Nielsen and Hanslow (1991), average wave conditions of 2 m, wave period of 12 s and beach slope of 1 in 21, berm crest elevations of 1.2 m to 2.9 m MSL are predicted depending on state of the tide. From estuary water level recordings (see hydrodynamics section), it can be derived that during March 2005 to November 2006, berm crest elevations ranged from about +0.95 m to +2.3 m MSL. Bearing in mind the significant effect of duration, the theoretical predictions and derived elevations are considered to correspond well. The observed estimates (Mackenzie, pers. comm.) of berm crest height above water level in the estuary, give an average of 35 cm to a maximum of 106 cm.

The surveyed beach transects and transect along the crest of the berm indicate that on a number of occasions, berm crest elevations typically ranged between about +2 to +3.5 m MSL when the mouth was closed.

## **Mouth and estuary channel configuration**

The position of the water line in both estuaries as well as the spring high and low tide line was mapped using a GPS with ArcPad software on 28 January, 12 April, 10 July, 12 August and 9 September 2006. The positions were compared from one date to the next in GIS maps below (Figures 9-13).

The surveys and transects along the crest of the berm provide some data on the mouth channel dimensions i.e. the width and the depth of the outflow channel, during open mouth conditions. Brief descriptions of the channel configuration in conjunction with the fixed-point photography provide further information. Estimates based on about 69 *in situ* visual observations conducted by B. Mackenzie (pers. comm.) from April to November 2006, give an average channel width of only 8 m, with a maximum of about 20 m. The comparative narrowness of the mouth channel is related to the relatively small breaching volume of the estuary, small catchment, lack of substantial wave shelter and the abundant supply of marine sediment.

**January vs April 2006**

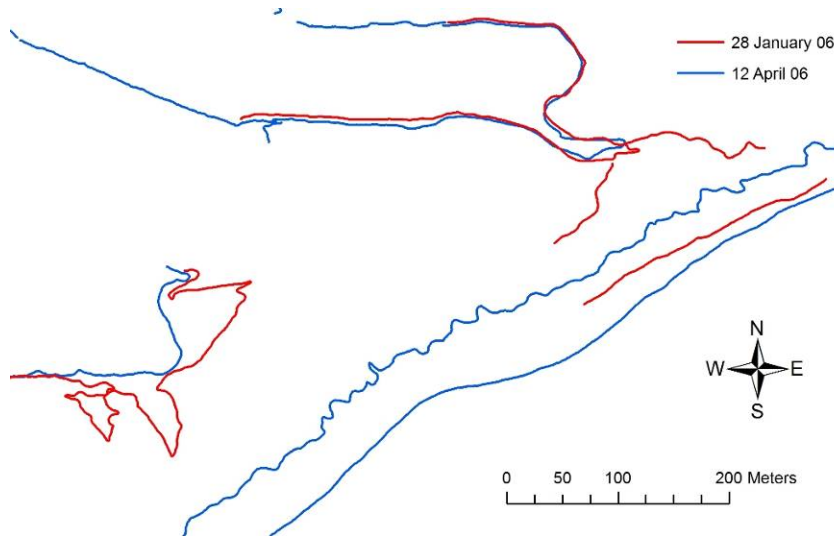


Figure 9. Position of the mouths and waterlines in January and April 2006.

**April vs July 2006**

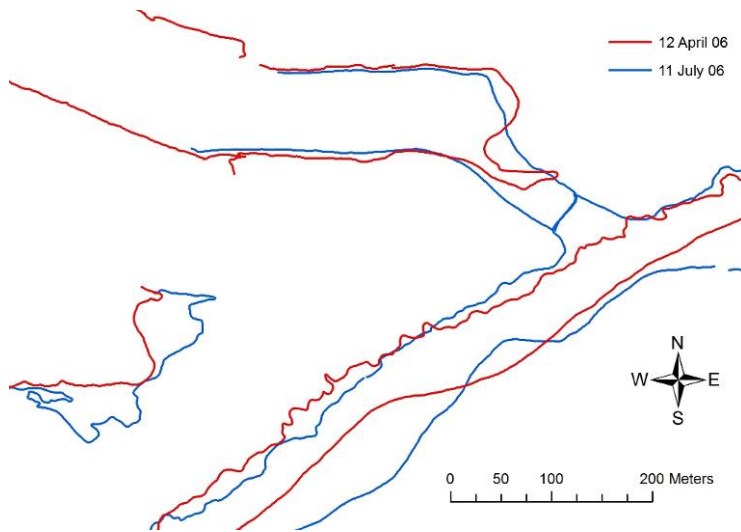


Figure 10. Position of the mouths and waterlines in April and July 2006.

Between April and July the East Kleinemonde Estuary breached briefly and by 11 July was in a semi-closed state with only marine overwash entering the estuary during spring high tide.

### July vs August 2006

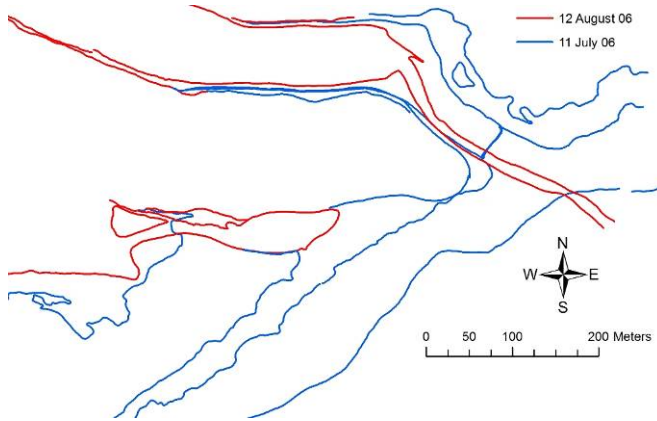


Figure 11. Position of the mouths and waterlines in August and July 2006.

Early in August both estuaries breached. The West Kleinemonde closed soon after breaching and the berm remained elevated in front of the West Kleinemonde (See Figure 3).

### August vs September 2006

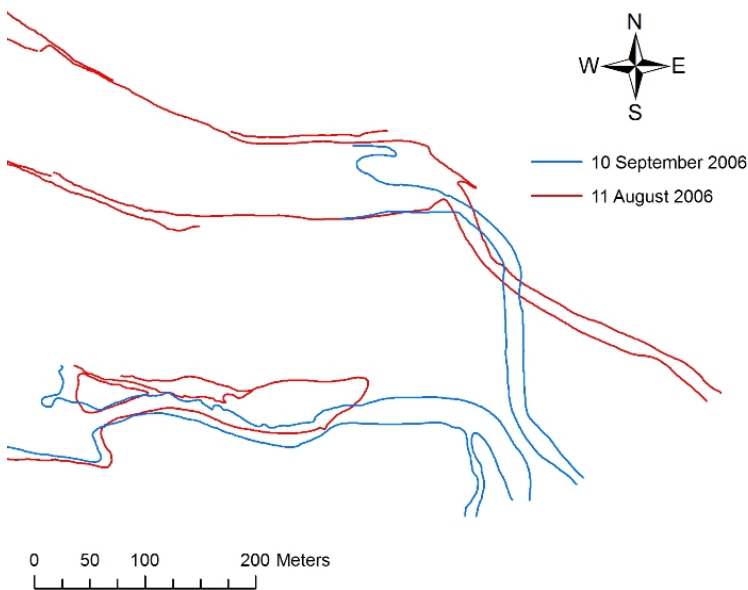


Figure 12. Position of the mouths and waterlines in August and September 2006.

The mouth of the East Kleinemonde Estuary remained open for the whole period but migrated towards the west by more than 100 m. The West Kleinemonde Estuary breached completely and was flowing out very strongly.

Figure 13 shows the difference in beach width between the September dissipative conditions and April reflective conditions. The grain size of the reflective beach in April was significantly coarser than the fine sand typical of dissipative beaches.

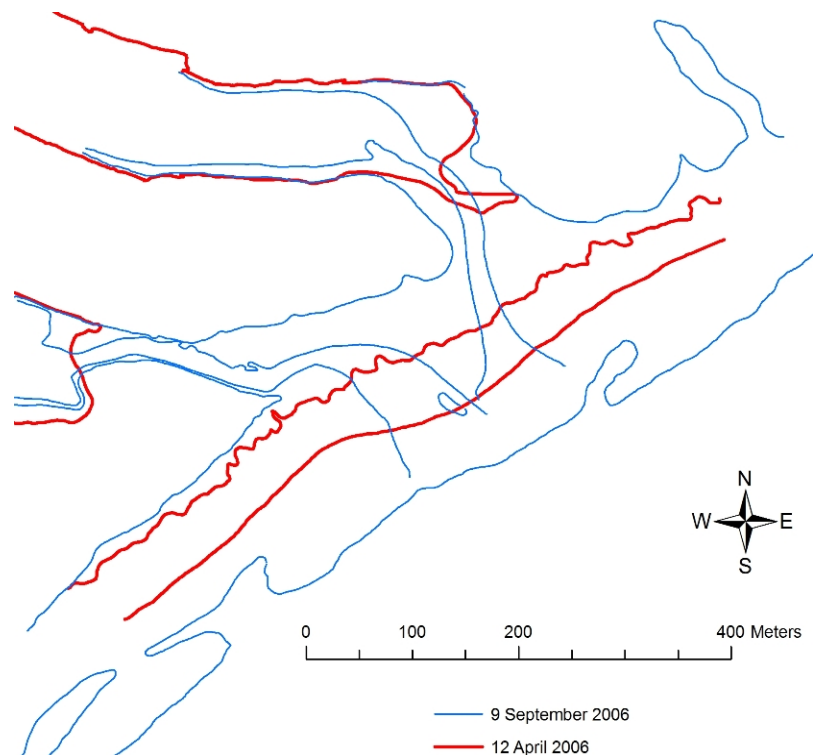


Figure 13. Position of the mouths and waterlines in September and April 2006.

Historical aerial photographs (1938-2004) indicate that the main direct anthropogenic impact on the estuarine morphology upstream of the mouth has resulted from the road-bridge and embankments constructed in the early 1960s. The bridge opening permanently fixed the deep channel against the west bank. However, it seems that in this area, the channel was always deeper towards the western side because it was on the outside of the bend. After construction of the bridge, the eastern sand bank downstream of the bridge has widened compared to the pre-bridge configuration.

## REFERENCES

- Badenhorst, P. 1988. Report on the dynamics of the Kleinemonde West and East estuaries (CSE 13 and 14). CSIR Report EMA-T 8805, Stellenbosch. 31 pp.
- Battjes, J.A. 1974. Computation of set-up, longshore currents, run-up and overtopping due to wind-generated waves. PhD thesis, Technical University of Delft, Delft.
- Beck, J.S., Kemp, A., Theron, A.K., Huizinga, P. & Basson, G.R. 2004. Hydraulics of estuarine sediment dynamics in South Africa: Implications for estuarine reserve determination and the development of management guidelines. WRC Report No. 1257/1/04. Pretoria, South Africa.
- CERC. 1984. Shore protection manual. Vol. 1 and 2. Department of the Army, U S Army Corps of Engineers, CERC, Vicksburg, Mississippi.
- CSIR. 2000. South African estuaries. Data report on topographical surveys for selected estuaries: 1985 - 1999, Volume II - Eastern Cape. CSIR Report ENV-S-C 2000-120B. Environmentek, Stellenbosch.
- Kamphuis, J.W. 1991. Alongshore sediment transport rate. *Journal of Waterways, Port, Coastal, and Ocean Engineering*. ASCE 117(6): 624-640.
- Nielsen, P. & Hanslow, D.J. 1991. Wave runup distributions on natural beaches. *Journal of Coastal Research* 7(4): 1139-1152.
- Schoonees, J.S. & Theron, A.K. 1996. Improvement of the most accurate longshore transport formula. 25<sup>th</sup> International Conference on Coastal Engineering, Orlando, Florida. ASCE 3: 3652-3665.
- Theron, A.K., Diedericks, G.P.J., Huizinga, P., Basson, G.R. & Kemp, A. 2002. Measurement and modelling of sediment dynamics in estuaries. In: *Enviro Flows 2002*. Proceedings of the International Conference on Environmental Flows for River Systems, Cape Town.
- Wiegel, R.L. 1964. *Oceanographical engineering*. Fluid Mechanics Series. Prentice-Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs. 532 pp.

**Appendix E**

**Specialist Report: Water Quality**

**S Taljaard**

**(CSIR, Stellenbosch)**

**PT Gama**

**(Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, Port Elizabeth)**

**G Snow**

**(Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, Port Elizabeth)**

## INTRODUCTION

Specific hypotheses were proposed for the water quality component of this study. They were as follows:

1. Closure of TOCEs results in a marked change in the characteristics and/or distribution patterns of *physico-chemical variables* (e.g. salinity, turbidity and DO) compared with the open state. Within 1 month after mouth closure the water column becomes almost homogenous with respect to *salinity, turbidity and dissolved oxygen*.
2. Because small TOCEs, such as the East Kleinemonde, are usually shallow (<2 m), low *dissolved oxygen* is not a major concern because of wind mixing. However, low oxygen can become a problem if there is a high organic loading, for example from the die-back of benthic macroalgae.
3. Where the river is a major source of *inorganic nutrients*, as is the case for the East Kleinemonde, reduction in freshwater inflow results in nutrient depleted conditions in the water column because there is no significant *in situ* regeneration of inorganic nutrients into the water column of TOCEs.

Taking into account these specific hypotheses, a generic conceptual model on the water quality characteristics of small TOCEs was proposed by Snow & Taljaard (2006). The conceptual model, and this study, primarily focused on physico-chemical variables (i.e. temperature, salinity, pH, turbidity and dissolved oxygen) and inorganic macronutrients (i.e. dissolved nitrate, nitrite, total ammonium, inorganic phosphate, reactive silicate and total phosphorus). Although organic nutrients, e.g. particular organic carbon and nitrogen, either entering from the catchments or generated within estuaries, can also be an important food source to estuarine biota, it was not possible to include these within the current research budget. However, they require further investigation, not only in terms of organic inputs from the catchment, but also with regard to the exchange of organic nutrients across the estuarine-marine boundary.

The conceptual model identified three dominant states in which small TOCEs can exist, namely:

1. Mouth open: when the mouth is open to the sea, allowing seawater intrusion during high tide with river inflow introducing freshwater into the upper reaches. A horizontal (and possibly vertical) salinity gradient exists in the estuary.
2. Mouth semi-closed: where the berm height prevents continuous seawater intrusion during high tide (i.e. seawater intrusion is usually limited to spring high tide). However, the berm is not high enough to prevent water draining from the estuary into the sea. During this state, salinity in the water column is near homogenous, although some vertical and longitudinal stratification may be evident immediately after closure. Depending on the height of the berm and conditions at sea, sporadic seawater overwash into the estuary can occur.
3. Mouth closed: where the height of the berm prevents seawater from entering the estuary as well as water draining from the estuary into the sea. Low volumes of river water might still be entering the estuary and sporadic overwash of seawater can occur depending on conditions at sea and berm height. At the onset of this state, vertical stratification usually develops as a result of low density freshwater flowing across higher density saline water. Through entrainment of freshwater into the more saline bottom layer, as well as wind mixing forces, the estuary gradually changes into a homogenous brackish water body (i.e. salinity between 10 to 25 psu).

Depending on factors such as estuary size, beach profiles and mouth protection, all three of these states can occur (3-phased systems) or only the open and closed states (2-phased systems). Although the East Kleinemonde Estuary is classified as a 3-phased system, it was only possible to sample the estuary during an open and closed mouth state during this study in 2006.

A simple conceptual model of the water quality (or biogeochemical) structure and characteristics associated with each of these states are described in a review prepared for this study (Snow & Taljaard 2006). The results presented here will be tested against the hypotheses proposed for the water quality component (see above), as well as the proposed water quality conceptual model provided in the review report.

## MEASUREMENT PROGRAMME

### Sampling Programme

In order to test the hypotheses of the water quality conceptual model, the following measurements were taken in the East Kleinemonde Estuary:

- *Water column measurements* to investigate the influence of river inflow and tidal exchange on water quality in the estuary sampled during closed (State 3) and open mouth (State 1) conditions.
- *Microcosm measurements* to investigate nutrient exchange across the sediment-water interface.

### **Water column (influence of river inflow and tidal exchange)**

Water column samples were collected from 10 stations along the length of the estuary, as well as from the sea, on the following occasions (Figure 1):

- 18 March 2006 (closed mouth state)
- 8/9 September 2006 (open mouth state).

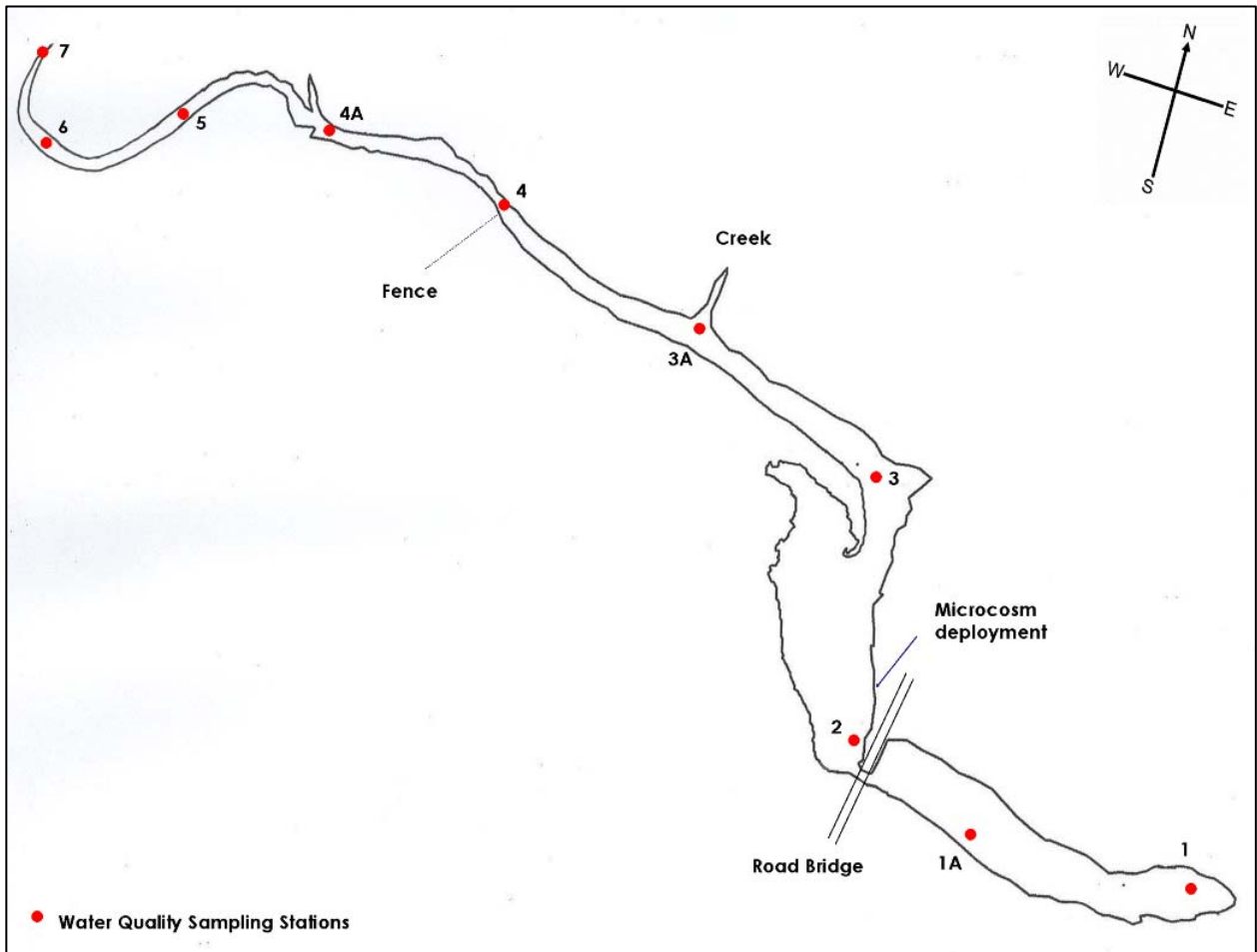


Figure 1. Map showing water quality sampling stations in the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

Depth profiles of temperature, salinity, pH and dissolved oxygen were collected at each station, while samples for dissolved nitrate, nitrite, total ammonium, inorganic phosphate, total phosphorus and reactive silicate analysis were collected from the surface and bottom waters. Bottom water samples were collected using a Student's horizontal sampler. Additional datasets of salinity, temperature, dissolved oxygen and turbidity were collected for the period March 2006 to November 2006 (Mackenzie pers. comm.).

### **Microcosms (sediment-water exchange)**

A microcosm study was undertaken in September 2006 using a customised experimental design used by the CSIR (Stellenbosch) on similar studies conducted in Maputo Bay (Figure 2). The microcosm chambers were deployed in a muddy subtidal area (Figure 1). Muddy areas are considered to be depositional areas, where organic material used in the re-mineralisation process accumulates and where a stable habitat is created for the benthic microalgae responsible for photosynthetic processes at the sediment-water interface.

Two microcosms were deployed during this exercise at a subtidal location just upstream of the road bridge (Figure 1). One light chamber included photosynthetic processes and one dark chamber excluded photosynthetic processes. The light chamber had an inner bottom diameter of 0.385 m and a volume of 12 l, while the dark chamber had an inner bottom diameter of 0.390 m and a volume of 10 l. A container of water was collected at the beginning of the experiment to act as a control sample. Water from this container was used to replace water in the chambers during sampling. Samples from the chambers were collected through a closed circuit syringe system, where a known volume of water (50 ml) was be extracted from the chambers

and a similar volume of water flowed back into the chambers (Figure 2). Unfortunately the systems could not be fitted with stirrers. However, to simulate stirring, a 20 ml sample of control water was flushed back and forth twice through the syringe system prior to each sampling. Dye tests showed that this technique was effective in mixing water within the chamber. Temperature, salinity, pH and dissolved oxygen were logged at 1 minute intervals in the light chamber using an YSI meter while 60 ml samples for macronutrient analyses were collected hourly from both chambers, being replaced with water from the control sample that was also sampled hourly.



Figure 2. Microcosm apparatus used during September 2006, showing the light chamber, dark chamber and the closed circuit syringe system that was used to take samples.

### **Analytical Equipment and Procedures**

Physico-chemical data were measured *in situ*, using an YSI Meter – 6600 for water column measurements and a YSI meter - 556 MPS for the microcosm study. Macro-nutrient samples for both the water column and microcosm studies were filtered in the field through 0.45  $\mu\text{m}$  Millipore filters, with the exception of those used for total phosphorus. Samples were stored in polyethylene sampling bottles and frozen until further analysis.

Water column and microcosm samples were analysed by the CSIR's accredited laboratory in Stellenbosch using an Auto-analyser and the methods as described in CSIR (1997).

## **RESULTS AND DISCUSSION**

### ***Water column***

### ***Salinity***

Salinity profiles measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during the closed state (18 March 2006) and open state (8-9 September 2006) are presented in Figures 3a and b. On 18 March 2006, when the mouth had been closed for an extended period, the estuary was brackish (23-25 psu) showing only a slight horizontal gradient (Figure 3a). However, some rain in the catchment just prior to sampling resulted in a very thin layer (< 0.5 m) of fresher water in the upper reaches, overlying the more brackish bottom water.

Salinity distribution measured on 8 and 9 September 2006, when the mouth had been open to the sea for some time (Figure 3b), were distinctly different to those observed during the closed state. Not only were there strong horizontal and vertical salinity gradients present, but there was also a marked difference in salinity distribution between low and high tide. The degree to which salinity distribution would differ between high and low tide is, however, dependent on the extent of tidal intrusion that is determined by the depth of the mouth and volume of river inflow.

These observations fit the conceptual model proposed for TOCEs, where in the closed state these estuaries generally display a homogenous brackish water column, but develop strong longitudinal and sometimes vertical salinity gradients, during the open state (Snow & Taljaard 2006). They also support the hypothesis that closure of TOCEs results in a marked change in the distribution pattern of physico-chemical variables when compared to the open state.

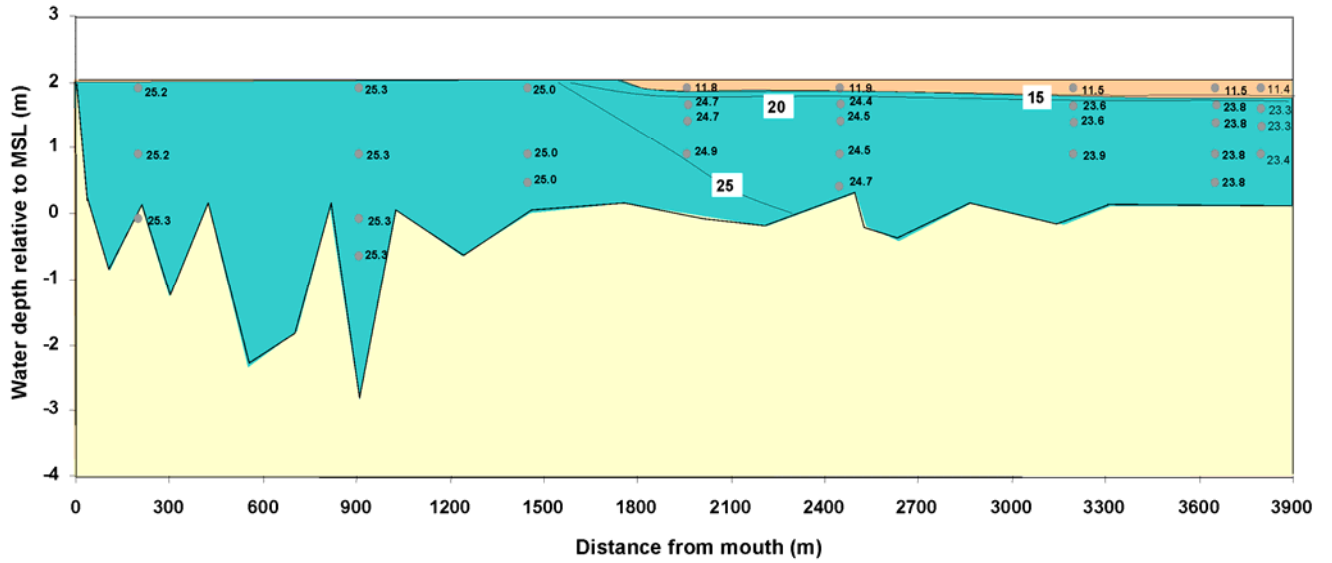


Figure 3a. Salinity profile measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary on 18 March 2006 (closed mouth).

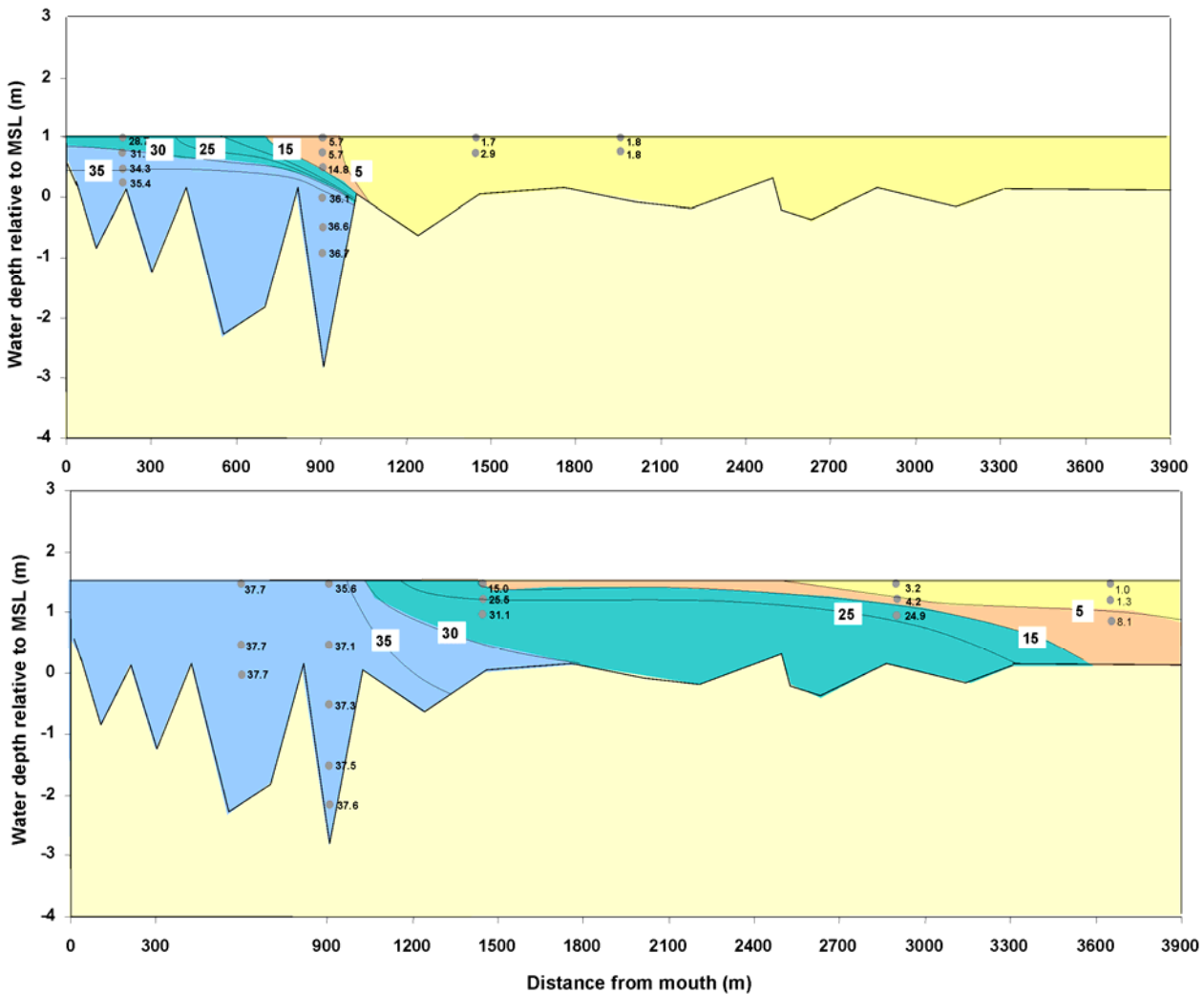


Figure 3b. Salinity profile (psu) measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary on 8 September 2006 (low tide = upper profile) and 9 September 2006 (high tide = lower profile).

## Temperature

Temperatures measurements taken in the East Kleinemonde Estuary, plotted against salinity data, are provided in Figure 4. This figure shows that there is no distinct seasonal pattern in salinity but that temperature had a distinct seasonal pattern over the period March 2006 to November 2006. Results show that summer temperatures are generally higher (20-25°C) compared with winter temperatures (13-20°C). These results also agree with the conceptual model, which proposes that water temperature variations in TOCEs are usually a function of seasonal trends in atmospheric temperature (Snow & Taljaard 2006).

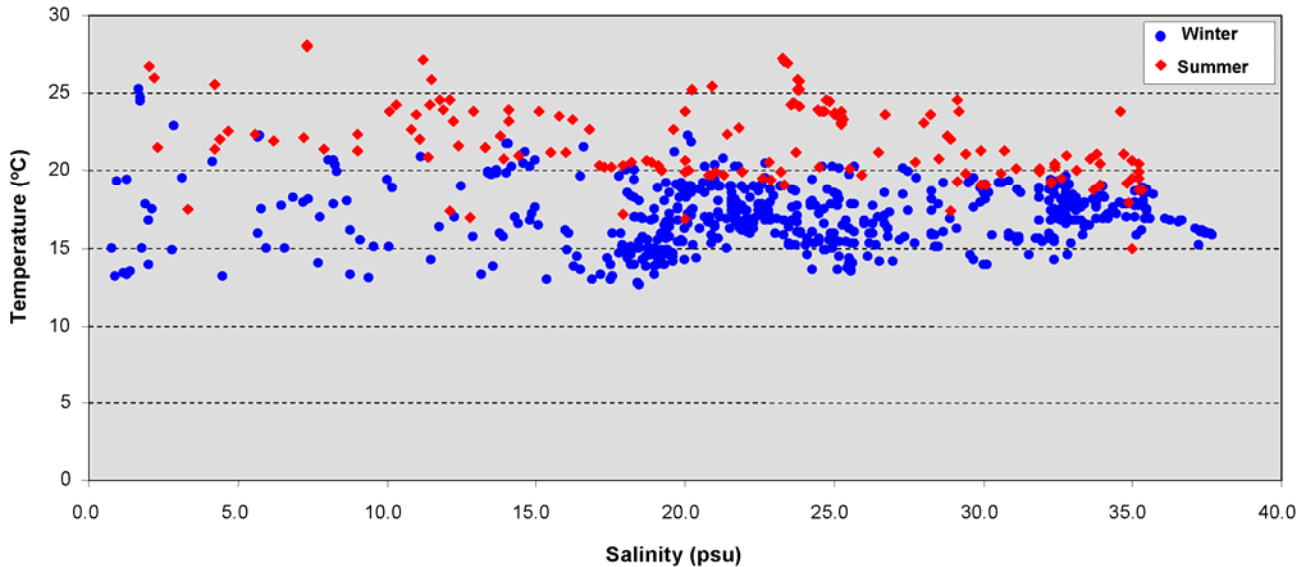


Figure 4. Temperature versus salinity measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during summer and winter (March to November 2006).

## pH

pH values did not show any marked variation at different salinity values, along the estuary or between surveys, ranging between 7.7 and 8.3 (Figure 5), as proposed in the conceptual model, where pH levels within TOCEs were expected to range between 7 and 8.5 (Snow & Taljaard 2006).

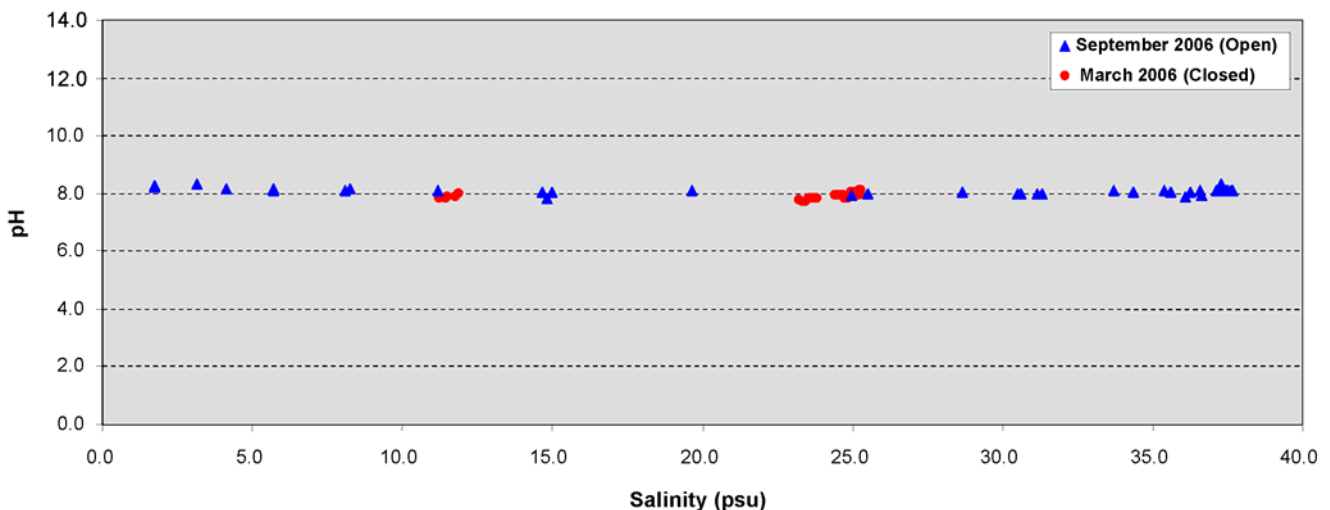


Figure 5. pH versus salinity measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during March to November 2006.

## Dissolved Oxygen

Figure 6 shows the variation in dissolved oxygen (DO) concentration as a function of water salinity during open and closed states for the period March to November 2006. When the mouth was closed a distinction is made between surface (<1 m) and bottom (>1 m) water measurements. These results clearly show that during the open state when salinity was low as a result of fresh water inflow, the estuary was well oxygenated, with DO levels never dropping below 4 mg  $\ell^{-1}$ . During the closed state there was greater variation in DO concentration. Bottom water was well oxygenated with DO concentrations only dropping below 2 mg  $\ell^{-1}$  on a few occasions when the mouth had been closed for some time.

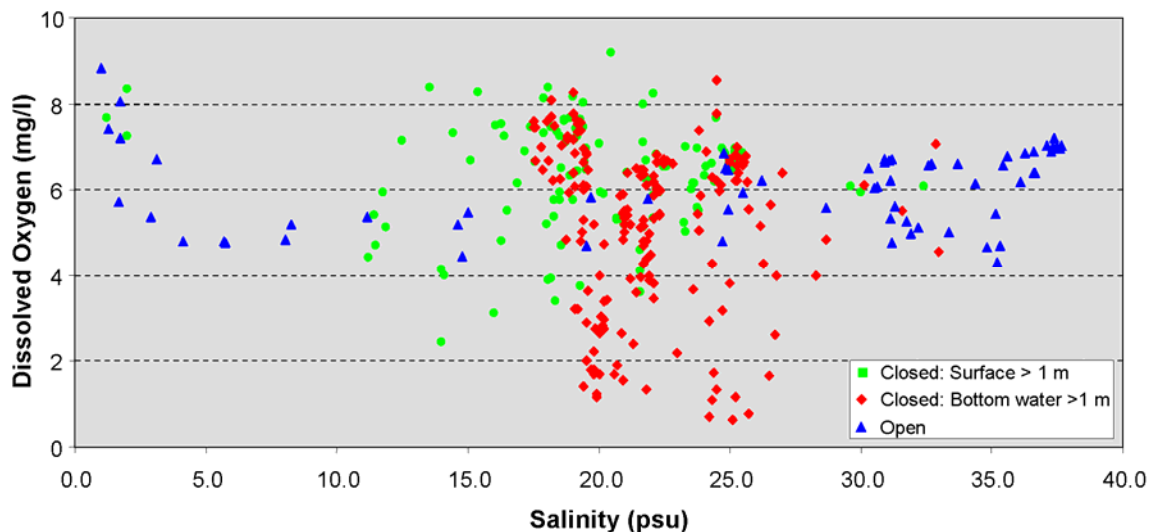


Figure 6. Dissolved oxygen versus salinity in the East Kleinemonde Estuary from March to November 2006, under closed (surface and bottom water) and open mouth states.

These observations fit the conceptual model and support the hypothesis that DO levels in the bottom water can become hypoxic during a closed state. This is somewhat unexpected, particularly for a shallow system such as the East Kleinemonde. However, deep quiescent zones (e.g. Station 2) did have low DO levels at a depth >1 m owing to strong density differences between bottom and top layers of the water column, which prevented mixing. Similar hypoxic to anoxic conditions have been observed in shallow systems like the Maitland Estuary (Gama *et al.* 2005). A possible explanation could be that these low oxygen events are caused by prolonged periods of very calm weather, when there is no wind mixing that generally prevents such conditions from developing in shallow estuaries.

### Turbidity

Figure 7 illustrates turbidity distribution patterns measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary, in relation to salinity, for open and closed states during the period March to November 2006. There does not seem to be a clear distinction between turbidity for open or closed states, except that turbidity levels >100 NTU tend to occur during the open state. This is attributed to a stronger freshwater influence during the outflow phase because river water generally has higher turbidity than seawater.

The assumption that the system is probably more turbid during open states compared to closed states is also supported by the Secchi disc readings taken during March 2006 (closed) and September 2006 (open), where readings were lower during the open state than when the system was closed (Table 1).

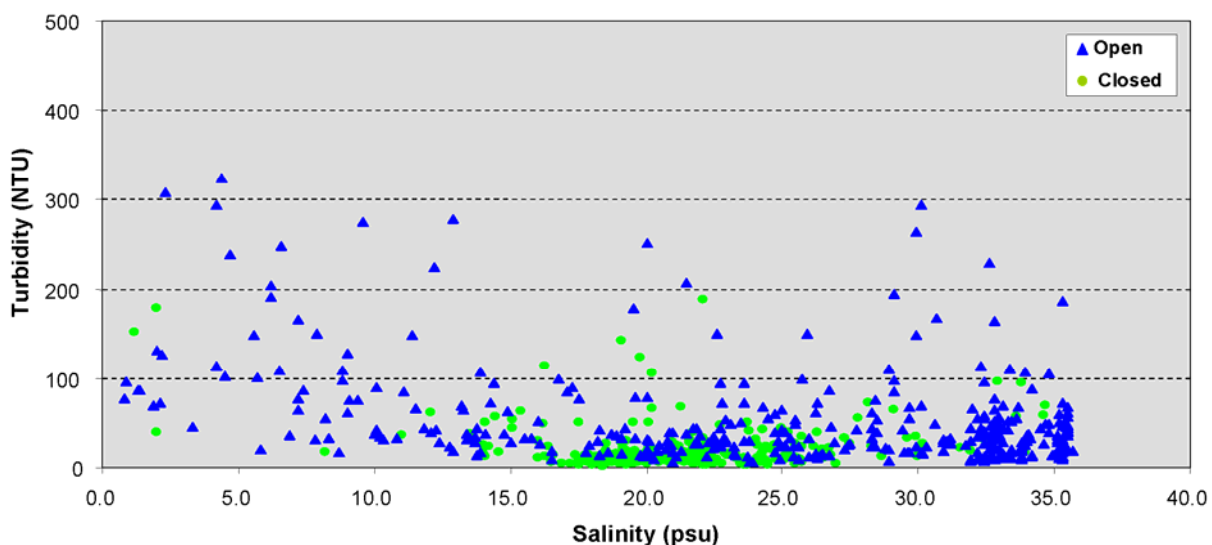


Figure 7. Turbidity versus salinity measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary from March to November 2006, under closed and open mouth states. The salinity axis illustrates the influence of seawater intrusion.

Table 1. Secchi disc depths (m) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary (March - September 2006).

Station	March 2006 (closed)	September 2006 (open, with strong river influence)
1	> 1.75	0.65
2	1.45	0.18
3	1.22	0.1
4	-	-
5	1.1	-

### ***Inorganic nutrients***

Figures 8a-c provide property-salinity plots for dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN), total phosphorus (TP), and dissolved inorganic phosphate (DIP) measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary in March 2006 (closed state) and September 2006 (open state). The concept of assessing inorganic nutrient versus salinity by comparison with a theoretical line representing conservative mixing of riverwater and seawater has been used previously (e.g. Head 1985, Balls 1994). The use of a mixing diagram shows nutrient concentrations plotted against salinity along the estuarine gradient. Mixing diagrams provide a convenient method for displaying the net effect of nutrient processes within estuaries, whereby deviation from the conservative mixing line is used to interpret results. For example, downward curvature in the mixing diagram implies nutrient uptake, while upward curvature implies nutrient release.

In the East Kleinemonde Estuary, results showed that during March 2006, after an extended period of mouth closure, the system was depleted of DIN, TP and DIP (Figure 8a and b). Although DRS were still present in significant concentrations, it was still much lower compared to the open state (Figure 8c).

During the open state (September 2006), DIN concentrations (mainly comprising nitrate-N) entering the estuary via the river were exceptionally high ( $>2500 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ ), probably due to agricultural enrichment in the catchment. DIN concentrations in the estuary showed a very strong linear correlation ( $r^2 = 0.95$ ) with salinity, suggesting that concentrations in the water column were largely a function of mixing between river and seawater (Figure 8a). A similar trend was observed for DRS during the open state (Figure 8c).

By subtracting DIP concentrations from TP it appears that during the open state, phosphorus entered the estuary mainly in the particulate form, with the sea being the major source (Figure 8b). Adsorption of phosphorus onto particulate materials can occur either onto cohesive non-biological particles, for example fine sediment particles ( $<60 \mu\text{m}$ ), or on organic particles, e.g. microalgae, zooplankton and allochthonous debris (Nixon *et al.* 1996). These particulate substances can have their origin from the catchment through river inflow (i.e. as suspended sediment loads and debris), from autochthonous regeneration within the estuary (e.g. re-suspension of sediments and/or localised phytoplankton blooms), or through organic material entering from the sea (e.g. organic debris). In the East Kleinemonde Estuary, the non-linear relationship between salinity and TP (downward curvature) suggests removal of TP from the water column towards the middle reaches, probably due to settling of particulate matter from the water column as a result of reduced turbulence.

Inorganic nutrient characteristics in the East Kleinemonde Estuary largely fit within the conceptual model proposed for TOCEs. During the open state, nutrient concentrations are mainly influenced by concentrations in the inflowing river and seawater, while the distribution of nutrients within the estuary is a function of mixing, i.e. follow the conservative mixing line. Strong water exchange and short flushing times limit the influence of other physical and biochemical processes on water column nutrient distribution patterns. Results from the East Kleinemonde also indicated that after prolonged closure, water column inorganic nutrients largely became depleted. This also agrees with the hypothesis that during prolonged periods of mouth closure, water column nutrients become depleted, probably because there is no significant *in situ* regeneration of inorganic nutrients into the water column.

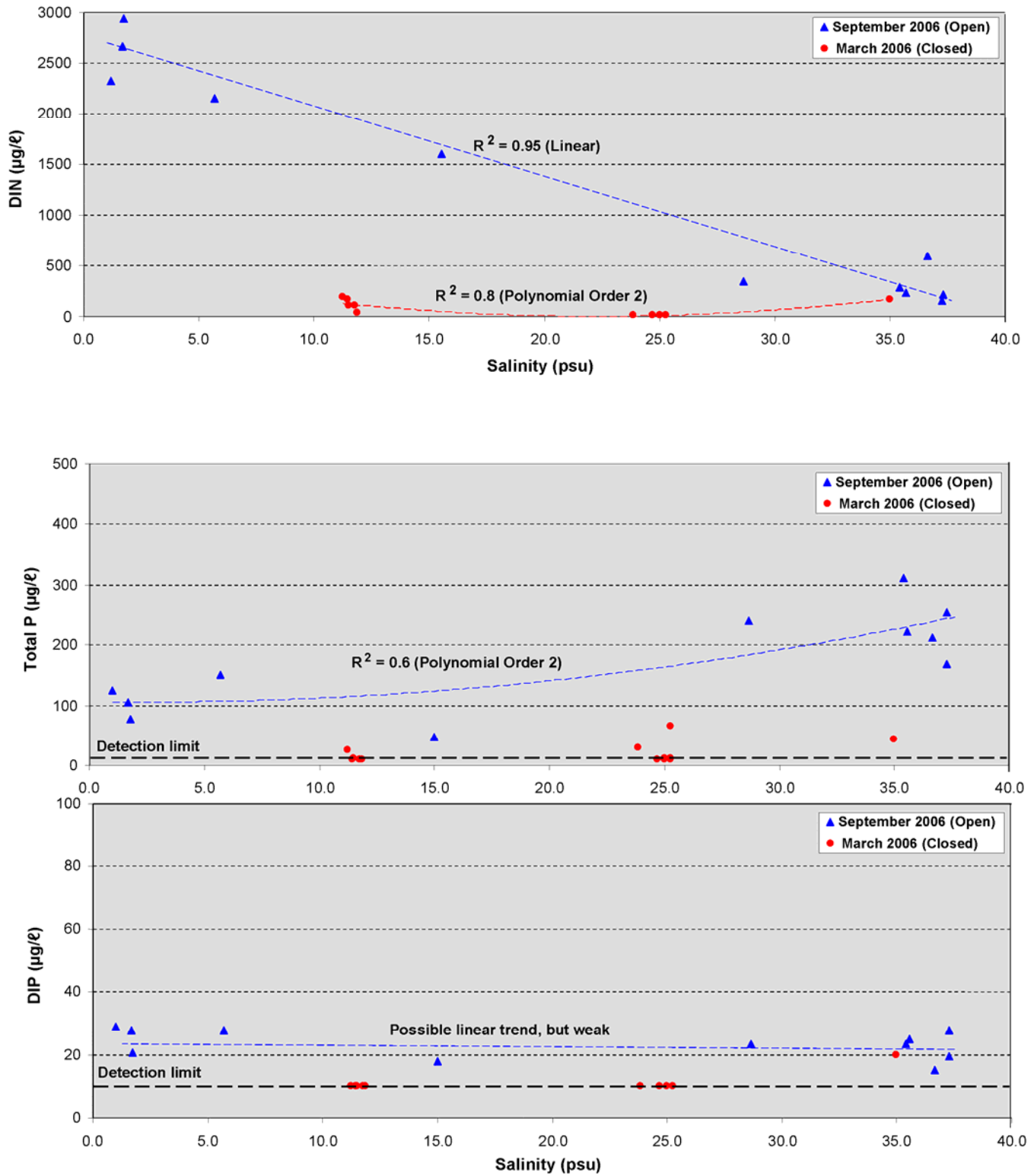


Figure 8. (a) Dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN) versus salinity measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during March 2006 (mouth closed) and September 2006 (mouth open). (b) Total phosphorus (P) versus salinity measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during March 2006 (mouth closed) and September 2006 (mouth open). (c) Dissolved inorganic phosphorus (DIP) versus salinity measured in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during March 2006 (mouth closed) and September 2006 (mouth open).

### **Microcosm studies (sediment-water column exchange)**

Although the microcosm study initially set out to quantify nutrient fluxes so as to test the hypothesis that in smaller TOCEs these fluxes across the sediment-water interface (linked to sediment biochemical processes such as remineralisation) are too small to act as a significant source of inorganic nutrients to the water column (largely as a result of low benthic organic matter loading), experimental difficulties and shortage of equipment (only one set of chambers was available for the second experiment) compromised the scientific integrity of the experiment. However, it was still considered useful to present the data obtained during the second microcosm experiment (8-9 September 2006), albeit limited, as it did provide information that would be useful to any follow-up experiment of this kind. Conditions in the sediment and interstitial water measured at the time of the microcosm experiment are provided in Table 2.

Table 2. Average concentrations (n = 4) measured in interstitial water during the microcosm experiment.

Variable	Concentration
Salinity (psu)	15
Dissolved Nitrite-N ( $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ )	13
Dissolved Nitrate-N ( $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ )	104
Total dissolved Ammonium-N ( $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ )	119
Dissolved inorganic phosphate (DIP) ( $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ )	50
Total phosphorus (interstitial water) ( $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ )	774
Dissolved reactive silicate ( $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ )	2669
Chlorophyll a ( $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$ ) and ( $\text{mg m}^{-2}$ )*	10.7
Total organic matter** ( $\text{mg g}^{-1}$ ) and ( $\text{g m}^{-1}$ )	0.7 and 825

\* Methods as per Snow & Adams 2006 \*\*Determined by loss on ignition

Temperature variation measured during the microcosm experiment in the light chamber showed a distinct diurnal signal with temperature decreasing towards the late afternoon and increasing again the next morning after sunrise (Figure 9a). This illustrated that temperature in the estuary's water column is largely a function of atmospheric temperature variation. Salinity was initially constant ( $\sim 2$  psu) and then started to increase with the onset of the initial flood tide over a period of about 7 hours to about 12-15 psu, where it remained for the remainder of the experiment. The pH level remained uniform throughout the experiment within a narrow range (7-7.6). The DO correlated with the photosynthesis-respiration cycle with DO levels dropping markedly just after sunset and reached near zero during the night. A rapid increase in DO levels was observed the following morning when concentrations returned to around 5-6  $\text{mg l}^{-1}$  within an hour after sunrise (Figure 9a).

DIN concentrations (mainly comprising nitrate-N) measured during the microcosm experiment varied throughout (Figure 9b). Concentrations in the light and dark chambers showed similar trends where DIN concentrations decreased from  $\sim 2700 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  at the onset of the experiment to  $\sim 500 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  after 24 hours, although the rate of decrease in the light chamber seemed to be slightly higher. Concentration in the control container also decreased with time, but to a lesser extent compared to concentrations in the light and dark chambers: concentrations decreased from  $\sim 2700 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  at the onset of the experiment to  $\sim 1500 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  after about 24 hours. This suggested that primary production (requiring light which was not available in the dark chamber) was probably not the dominant process resulting in the decrease in DIN concentrations in the chambers over the incubation period. Although the decrease in DIN concentrations in the control (that excluded fluxes across the sediment-water interface) initially followed a similar trend to that observed in the chambers, the rate at which concentrations decreased reduced markedly after about 6 hours, compared with the chambers. This suggested that in both chambers fluxes across the sediment-water interface (resulting from processes other than primary production) contributed markedly to the decrease in DIN concentrations (in addition to processes in the water column), particularly after about 6 hours into the experiment. Based on measurements in the light chamber the decrease in DIN concentrations showed a strong inverse linear correlation to salinity (Figures 9a and b). Considering that mean DIN concentrations in the interstitial water was markedly lower ( $246 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ ) than in the chamber ( $\sim 2706 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ ) and that the salinity was markedly higher in the interstitial water ( $\sim 15$  psu) than in the chamber ( $\sim 2$  psu) at the onset of the experiment, it is likely that physical diffusion processes across the sediment-water interface was dominantly responsible for the reduction in DIN concentration (and increase in salinity) in the chamber, initiated by the differences in the concentrations of these variables in the interstitial water and water column at the onset of the experiment.

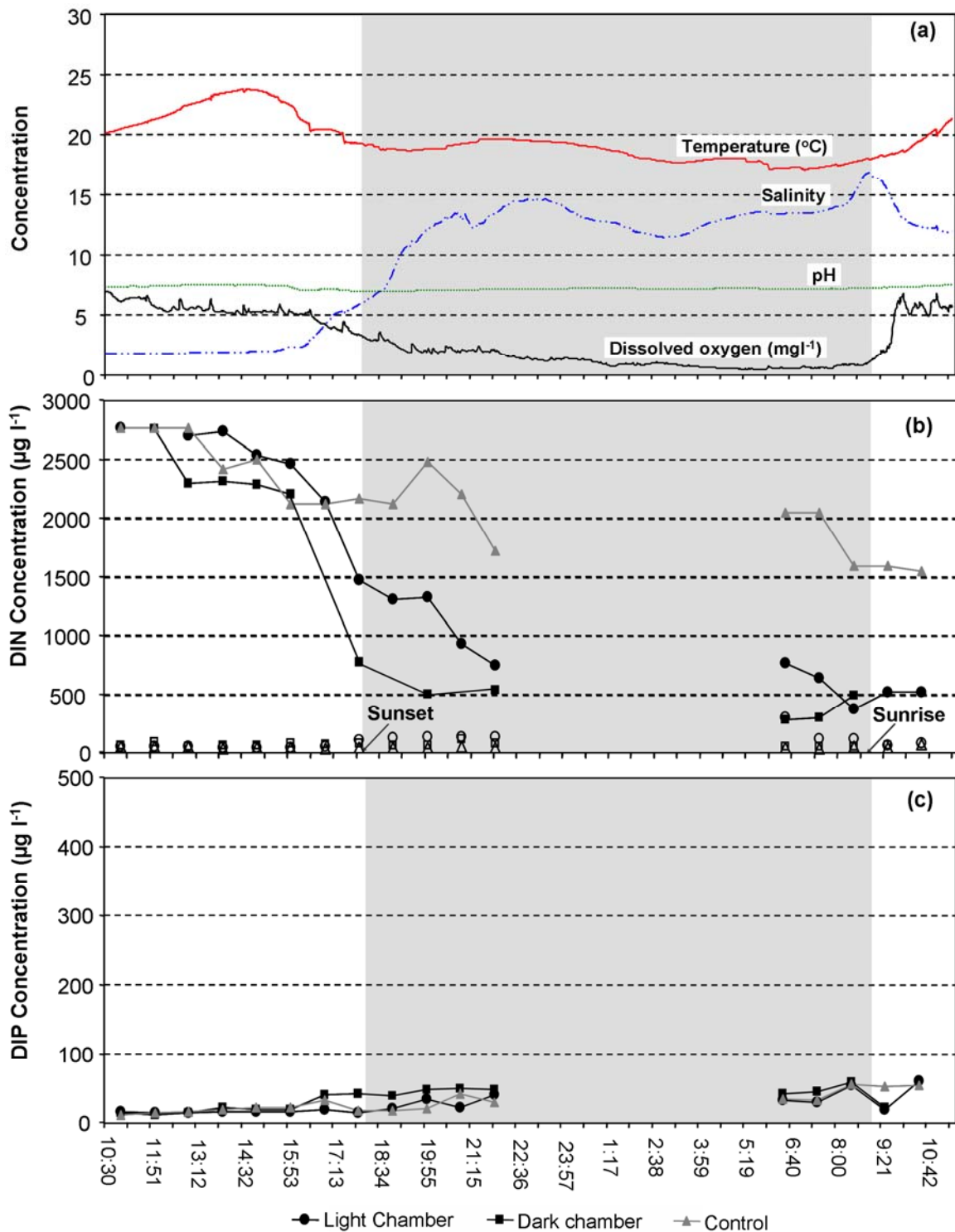


Figure 9: Time series data collected during the microcosm experiment in the East Kleinemonde Estuary on 8-9 September 2006 (a) physico-chemical variables (temperature, salinity, pH and DO) recorded in the light chamber (b) DIN concentrations recorded in the light and dark chambers, as well as the control as represented by the filled markers [ammonium-N concentrations for the different chambers and control are represented by corresponding unfilled markers] and (c) DIP concentrations recorded in the light and dark chambers, as well as the control.

DIP concentrations in both chambers and the control remained low throughout the experiment, only increasing slightly from  $< 20 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  at the onset of the experiment to  $\sim 50 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  after about 24 hours (Figure 9c). Similar trends in the chambers and the control suggested that fluxes across the sediment-water interface probably did not have a marked influence on water column DIP concentrations during this experiment.

Even though water column and benthic primary productivity (chlorophyll a) was not measured in the chambers or the control to verify that the reduction in DIN concentrations was largely not the result of primary production processes, this suggestion was supported by DO concentrations recorded in the light chamber where DO concentrations gradually decreased during the experiment (decreasing from 7 mg  $\ell^{-1}$  at the onset of the experiment to <1 mg  $\ell^{-1}$  after about 22.5 after about 22 hours) (if primary production processes were utilising significant amounts of nutrients from the water column, DO concentrations would have increased, specifically during the period prior to sunset) (Figure 9a). However, a rapid increase in DO concentrations was recorded the next morning (as soon as direct sunlight reached the chamber) increasing from <1 mg  $\ell^{-1}$  to ~6 mg  $\ell^{-1}$  within an hour (Figure 9a). This sudden increase in DO concentrations coincided with a sudden drop in salinity from ~16 psu to ~12 psu over the same period. It is unlikely that primary production processes were the source of the fast increase in DO levels, considering the preceding situation. Given that a similar increase was recorded in the salinity physical diffusion processes across the sediment-water interface could have resulted in this sudden change, although it was not evident what would have resulted in such a sudden increase in DO concentrations and salinity in the interstitial water (no time series data were collected from interstitial waters during the experiment). Although visual observations did not suggest any leaks into the chamber at the time, this cannot be outright excluded as a reason for this sudden change. Follow-up experiments are therefore needed in order to verify this observation.

Although the data and information from the microcosm experiment in the East Kleinemonde Estuary were too limited to properly quantify nutrient fluxes across the sediment-water interface (linked to sediment biochemical processes such as remineralisation), results suggested that in an area characterised by low total organic matter concentrations (mean = 0.7 mg  $g^{-1}$ ) and low benthic primary production (mean chlorophyll a concentrations in upper 1 cm of surface sediment = 10.7  $\mu g g^{-1}$ ) such fluxes were probably not a significant source of nutrients to the water column of the estuary. However, further data is required to show that the sediment characteristics of the study site are truly representative of the larger East Kleinemonde (and other small TOCEs) and that results of this microcosm experiment is representative (e.g. by doing replicates at a number of sites along the estuary). It is also recommended that follow-up experiments in the estuary be undertaken during a closed mouth state so as to avoid rapid variability in variable concentrations in the water column and interstitial water (e.g. as a result of strong tidal fluxes), as well as to reduce potential variability associated with light availability (e.g. as a result of variations in water level) during the experiment.

## CONCLUSIONS

The following key conclusions are drawn from this study:

- In general, the East Kleinemonde Estuary fits within the conceptual model proposed in terms of the structure and water quality characteristics of TOCEs under the closed and open states in terms of salinity, temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen, turbidity and inorganic nutrients.
- Results from preliminary microcosm studies seem to support the general hypothesis that in South African TOCEs, *in situ* regeneration of inorganic nutrients through biochemical processes (e.g. remineralisation) are probably not significant in supplying inorganic nutrients to the water column, although these processes may well be important in supplying nutrients for benthic production.
- The East Kleinemonde Estuary appears to be similar to other southern and western Cape estuaries that lie in low rainfall areas with moderate to high evaporation. These become well-mixed systems during the closed state – and sometimes become more saline if the closed state is prolonged. This is in contrast to the KwaZulu-Natal TOCEs which become increasingly fresh during the closed state (Perissinotto *et al.* 2004).

## REFERENCES

- Balls P.W. 1994. Nutrient inputs to estuaries from nine Scottish east coast rivers; influence of estuarine processes on inputs to the North Sea. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 39: 329-352.
- Gama, P.T., Adams, J.B., Schael, D.M. & Skinner, T. 2005. Phytoplankton chlorophyll a concentration and community structure of two temporarily open/closed estuaries. Prepared for Water Research Commission, WRC No. 1255/1/05, Pretoria.
- Goeck, B.C. 2005. A comparative study of benthic nutrient fluxes in the intertidal sediments of estuarine ecosystems. PhD Thesis, University of Port Elizabeth.
- Head PC (ed). 1985. Practical Estuarine Chemistry. Estuarine and Brackish-water Sciences Association Handbook. Cambridge University Press.

- Nixon, S.W., Ammerman, J.W., Atkinson, L.P., Berounsky, V.M., Billen, G., Boicourt, W.C., Boyton, W.R., Church, T.M., Ditoro, D.M., Elmgren, R., Garber, J.H., Giblin, A.E., Jahnke, R. A., Owens, N.J.P., Pilson, M.E.Q. & Seitzinger, S.P. 1996. The fate of nitrogen and phosphorus at the land-sea margin of the North Atlantic Ocean. *Biogeochemistry* 35: 141-180.
- Perissinotto, R., Blair, A., Connell, A., Demetriades, N.T., Forbes, A.T., Harrison, T.D., Iyer, K., Joubert, M., Kibirige, I., Mundree, S., Simpson, H., Stretch, D., Thomas, C., Thwala, X. & Zietsman, I. 2004. Contributions to information requirements for the implementation of Resource Directed Measures for estuaries. Volume 2: Responses of the biological communities to flow variation and mouth state in two Kwazulu-Natal temporarily open / closed estuaries. WRC Report No. 1247/2/04. Report to the Water Research Commission by the Consortium for Estuarine Research and Management.
- Snow, G.C. & Adams, J.B. 2006. Response of micro-algae in the Kromme Estuary to managed freshwater inputs. *Water SA* 31(1): 71-79.
- Snow, G.C. & Taljaard, S. 2006. Water Research Commission TOCE K5/1581 Literature Review Report.

## **Appendix F**

### **Specialist Report: Microalgae**

**PT Gama  
(Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, Port Elizabeth)**

## INTRODUCTION

The East Kleinemonde Estuary (33°32'S, 27°03'E) (Figure 1) is a temporarily open/closed estuary (TOCE) that lies within the warm temperate biogeographical region of the Eastern Cape Province (Whitfield 1992). Most TOCEs, as presently understood, are regulated by the amount of river flood flow that is received. The quantity of the inflow is primarily controlled by the size of the catchment including regional climate that influences rainfall patterns. Microalgae (i.e. phytoplankton and microphytobenthos) in a number of these estuarine systems form the base of primary production and thus are an important contributing source of carbon to higher trophic levels (Day 1981).

Since TOCEs are characterised by being cut-off from the sea for a period of time, i.e. months to years, the physical isolation of estuarine water from the sea has a profound influence on the microalgal biomass production, cell densities and community structure. Closed mouth conditions support extensive microphytobenthic communities at the expense of the phytoplankton because water column macronutrients are generally low. Recent studies on estuarine microalgae in TOCEs have, by and large, revealed that biomass as chlorophyll *a* in the microphytobenthos (MPB) form the dominant fraction over the phytoplankton (Perissinotto *et al.* 2000, Froneman 2002a, 2002b, Perissinotto *et al.* 2002, Gama *et al.* 2005). Microphytobenthos biomass has been estimated to be as much as two to three fold greater than that of phytoplankton, mainly when the mouth is closed. Water column stability, light quality and the availability of nutrients from ground water (sediment/water column interface) has been suggested as the reasons for such high biomass values. However, no studies have demonstrated a close link between the quantity of groundwater nutrients, their availability and increased MPB biomass.

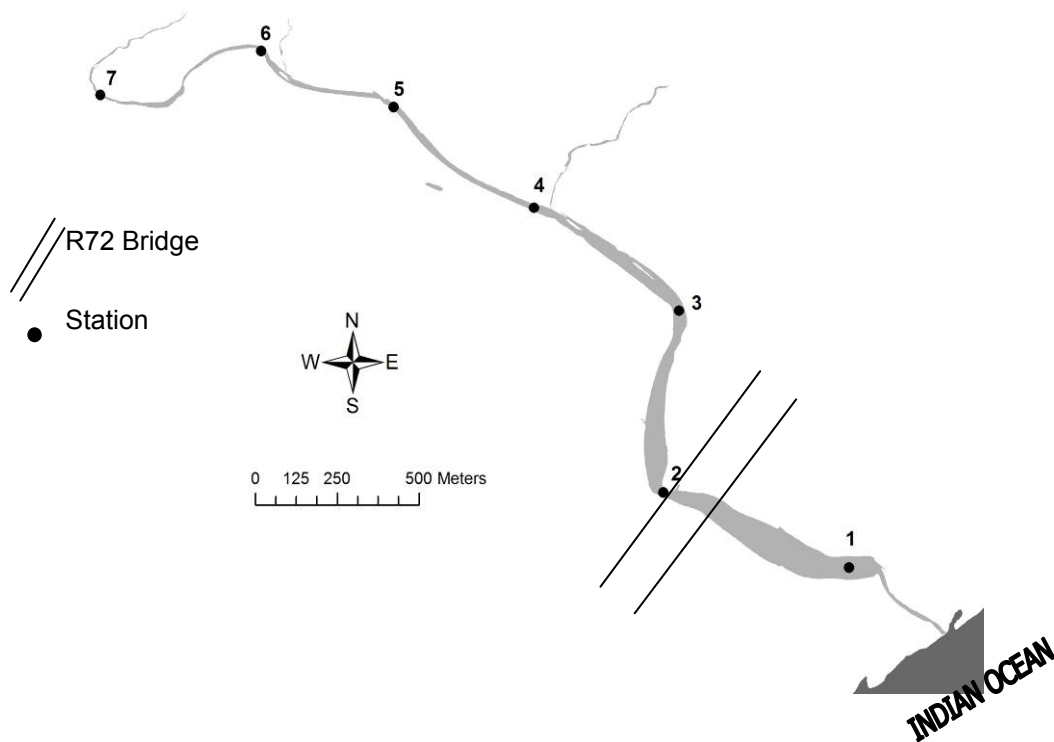


Figure 1. Sampling stations in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during this study.

The botanical component of the East Kleinemonde Intermediate Resource Directed Measures (RDM) study of the East Kleinemonde project required data on microalgae. Data requirements for the reserve determination involved a monthly microalgal survey over a whole year to measure biomass estimates and community structure within in the estuary. The RDM study assessed the present state of the microalgal community, predicted the natural condition and how much the East Kleinemonde Estuary would deviate from its present state under a variety of hypothetical flow scenarios. Mouth opening events from increased river inflow have been shown to significantly influence microalgal chlorophyll *a* concentrations and species composition (Perissinotto *et al.* 2000, Froneman 2002a, Gama *et al.* 2005, Skinner *et al.* 2006).

## **MATERIALS AND METHODS**

### **Duration and Sampling Strategy**

The duration of the project was from 2005-2007 and the field study from March-October 2006. The results reported here cover the latter eight month period. The sampling strategy included quarterly (March, July and September), monthly (March-October), weekly (27 June-19 July) and daily (23-27 June) surveys.

### **Physico-chemical parameters and chlorophyll *a* biomass**

Vertical profiles of the water column were measured at 0.25 m and at 0.5 m intervals for down welling irradiance using a Li Cor 190 underwater 4 $\pi$  quantum sensor linked to a Li Cor 1000 data logger, temperature, salinity, dissolved oxygen, and conductivity using a YSI-650 MDS display logger connected to a YSI-6 series sonde. Horizontal and vertical sampling of physico-chemical variables were carried out monthly and following hydrological events such as mouth breaching and/or closed mouth conditions. These measurements were carried out during high and low flow conditions. Samples for microalgal chlorophyll *a* concentration were collected at five stations along the length of the estuary. Following a flood when the mouth opened, water samples were taken daily for 3-5 days, then weekly for 3-4 weeks in order to capture rapid changes in chlorophyll *a* concentration as a result of changes in river flow after the initial mouth breaching. Duplicate water samples for chlorophyll *a* were collected to estimate phytoplankton biomass (Pérez *et al.* 2006). Phytoplankton community samples were collected using a 3 l Student's horizontal-water sampler from the top (0.5 m below the water surface) and bottom (0.5 m from the sediment bottom) and placed in double distilled pre-washed 1000 ml opaque wide-mouth polyethylene bottles.

Water column samples for chlorophyll *a* analysis were size-fractionated and serially filtered through a 20  $\mu$ m nitex screen (microphytoplankton), a 2.7  $\mu$ m Whatman GF/D filter paper (nanophytoplankton) and through a 1.2  $\mu$ m Whatman GF/C filter paper (picophytoplankton). All filter surfaces were pre-treated with a few drops of a saturated solution of MgCO<sub>3</sub> and placed in darkened 20 ml vials, extracted for 24 hr in 90% acetone and kept at 0-4 °C. Triplicate samples for microphytobenthos chlorophyll *a* were taken quarterly along the length of the estuary (Figure 1) using a 20 mm (ID) corer and placed in 30 ml ethanol for further analysis (Rodriguez 1993). Microalgal community composition was assessed from quarterly samples that had been preserved following standard phytoplankton techniques. Sub-samples were enumerated using a Neubauer haemocytometer under a light microscope at 400x magnification. Phytoplankton taxa were identified to species level where possible, but certainly to the nearest genus using the following identification keys (Bold & Wynn 1981, Prescott 1989, Tomas 1997).

In June 2006, the estuary mouth breached and following this, two stations in the upper reaches were not sampled because the water level was too low. The data from the remaining three stations were not significantly different thus the phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* data from each station was pooled and is reported as an average across all stations.

### **Statistical analysis**

Significant differences between data for the effects of sampling date, site and water depth were tested using a three-way analysis of variance (ANOVA). One- and two-way ANOVA analyses were used to test for significant differences between sites and sampling dates with multiple comparisons among pairs of means performed using the Tukey's method (Quinn & Keough 2002).

## **RESULTS AND DISCUSSION**

### **Physico-chemical parameters**

During the study period there were a couple of heavy rainfall events in the catchment that changed the frequency and duration of the mouth stats. Prior to the first sampling run in March, the mouth of the estuary had remained closed for several months. General patterns and specific features pertaining to measured parameters will be referred to as these are used to relate physico-chemical data to those of the microalgae. The mouth was closed prior to the first sampling in March and remained closed until June, when two days of sustained rainfall caused the mouth to breach. During this closed-mouth period the water depth reached a maximum of 6 m at Station 2. Water transparency there, measured with a Secchi disk, ranged between 2.0-2.5 m whereas when the mouth was open it was as low as 0.2 m. When the mouth opened, seawater entered and a vertical and horizontal salinity gradient was established, with salinity levels ranging from oligohaline (1-15 psu) to polyhaline (>30 psu) in the upper and lower reaches, respectively.

Strong freshets following rainfall >50 mm breached the mouth allowing estuarine and seawater to mix. The river water had a high load of silt and suspended matter. These freshwater inputs were responsible for bringing in increased macronutrients that account for improved microalgal production. As discussed in the chapter on water quality, nutrient input as DIP (dissolved inorganic phosphorus), DRS (dissolved reactive silica) and DIN (dissolved inorganic nitrogen,) rose over 2, 5 and 10-fold respectively with the increased river flow compared to previous concentration levels when the estuary had been closed.

#### Daily and weekly phytoplankton chlorophyll a responses

After breaching for the first time on 23 June there were intermittent periods of mouth closure lasting for several weeks. The water column phytoplankton chlorophyll a response after the mouth breached was very variable, ranging from 2.8-17.9  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ . The lowest concentration, 2.8  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ , occurred on the first day after the breach, while the highest concentration of 17.9  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  was recorded two days later on the 25 June (Figure 2).

Just prior to the breaching event, nanophytoplankton formed the greatest contributor to total chlorophyll a biomass at all five stations. This nanophytoplankton size-fraction contributed over 80% of the total chlorophyll a while the picophytoplankton contributed about 18% and microphytoplankton 2%. After the breaching, the pico- and microphytoplankton became important and their contributions to total chlorophyll a increased to as much as 75% and 20% respectively. These contributions were also highly variable and may indicate a variation in the availability of macronutrients plus possibly an unequal utilisation of the different phytoplankton size groups (Fernández *et al.* 2003). In addition, the relatively small size of the estuary and increased river flow during the open mouth state gave rise to a short residence time which precluded the necessary time required for the microalgae to establish, develop and reproduce.

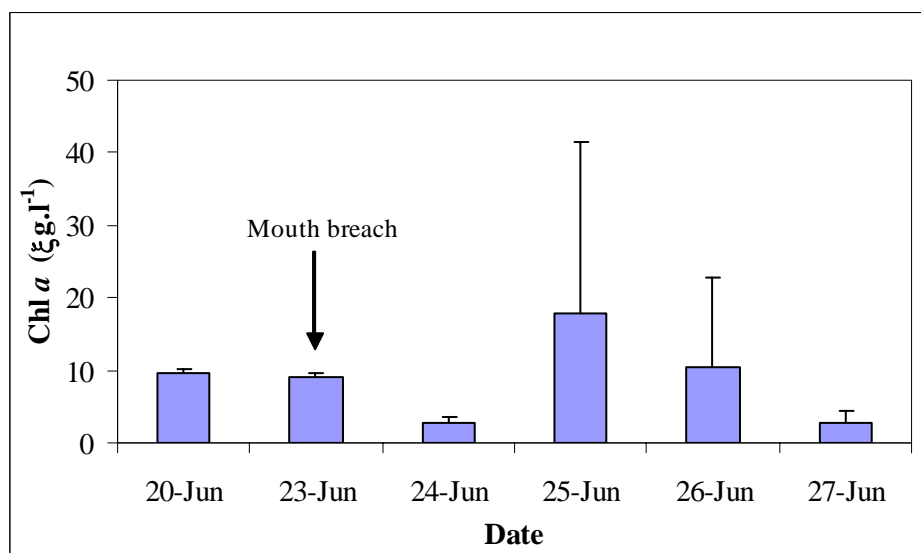


Figure 2. Mean daily chlorophyll a concentration taken over six-days (20-27 June 2006) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. The arrow indicates the day the mouth opened. Vertical lines represent  $\pm 1$  S.E.

Previous studies in KwaZulu-Natal TOCEs have shown that the nanophytoplankton group can contribute in excess of 75% to the total phytoplankton chlorophyll a biomass under both open and closed mouth conditions (Perissinotto *et al.* 2004). The present study indicates that, although highly variable, picophytoplankton was the dominant size-fraction immediately after the strong influx of river water that caused the estuary mouth to breach (Figure 3). The weekly phytoplankton chlorophyll a response was characterised by a significant reduction ( $P < 0.05$ ) in concentration at stations 1-3. Prior to the opening of the mouth, the chlorophyll a concentration in the estuary averaged 9.5  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  but after a week this had decreased to 2.8  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ . Weekly monitoring for the next four weeks showed a gradual increase in chlorophyll a, which peaked at 19.8  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  by week five (Figure 4). This pattern was consistent throughout the water column with no significant differences between the surface and bottom layers ( $P > 0.05$ ).

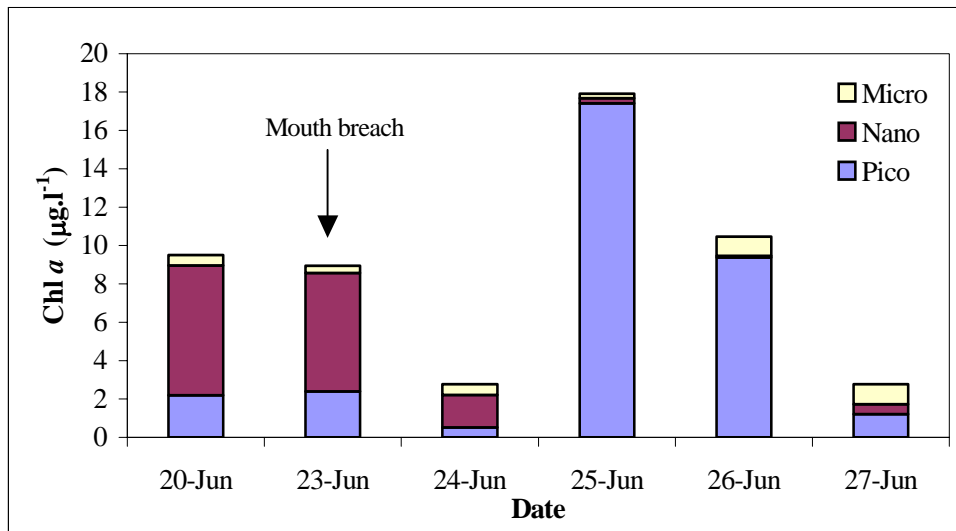


Figure 3. Contribution of the different size-fractions to total phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* measured daily over five days (23-27 June 2006). Arrow indicates day of mouth opening.

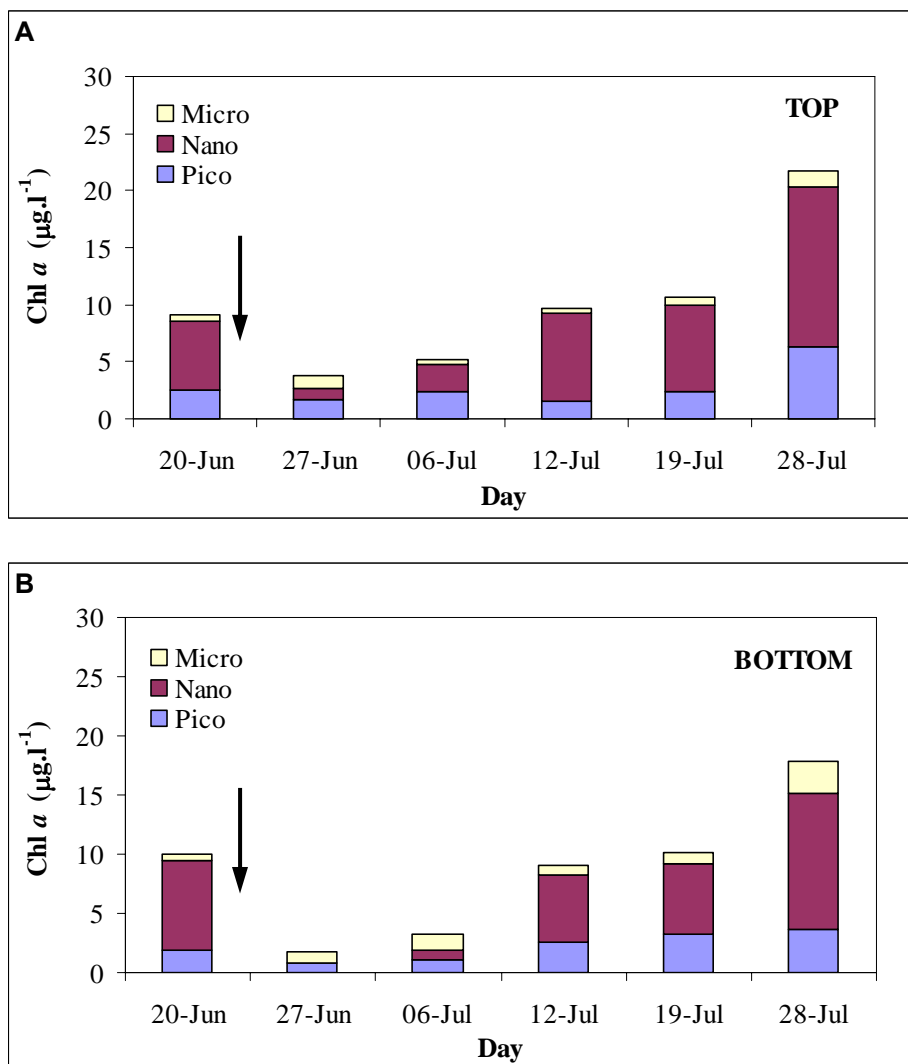


Figure 4. Weekly phytoplankton size-fractionated chlorophyll *a* concentrations taken over six weeks (20 June - 28 July 2006) from the (A) top and (B) bottom layers of the water column (Micro = microphytoplankton, Nano = nanophytoplankton, Pico = picophytoplankton). Arrow shows approximate date when the mouth opened (3 days after 20 June).

In terms of phytoplankton size-structure, although the chlorophyll *a* concentrations were low, the pico-, nano- and microphytoplankton size classes were equally represented throughout the water column one week after the mouth opened. This suggests that all size classes were equally susceptible to the strong river flow that caused the breach. As the river flow eased over the next four weeks, coupled with an increase in the mixing of seawater and freshwater, there was a gradual community recovery with the nano- and picophytoplankton showing the greatest response by contributing ~67 and 27% respectively to total chlorophyll *a*. This is possibly a result of the establishment of a relatively stable riverine and estuarine interface, referred to as the REI zone by Snow *et al.* (2000). This zone is characterised as the region within the water column of maximum phytoplankton biomass brought about by the chemical interactions of particulate organic and inorganic material that form aggregations or flocules when seawater and freshwater mix (Snow *et al.* 2000). The phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* biomass levels recorded five weeks following the opening of the mouth were the highest during the study period (Figure 5). This increase may also be indicative of the time required by phytoplankton to re-establish after a breach by rapidly exploiting the newly available mineral nutrients.

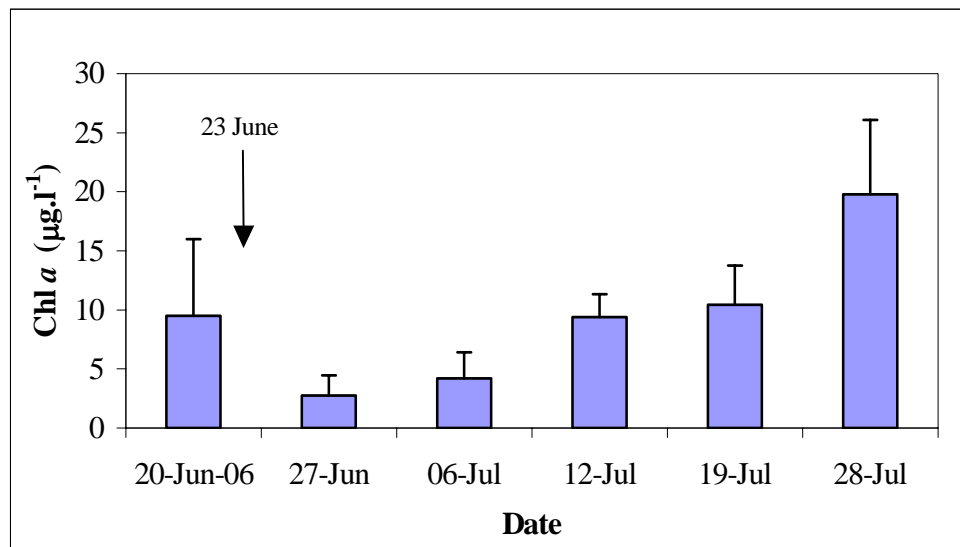


Figure 5. Mean weekly phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* concentrations sampled over six weeks (20 June - 28 July 2006). Arrow shows approximate date when the mouth opened (3-days after 20 June). Vertical bars  $\pm$  1SE.

Although there was vertical salinity stratification in the water column during the open mouth state, phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* biomass was not affected by it and there was no vertical stratification of the chlorophyll *a* biomass. Water column chlorophyll *a* distribution patterns did not show significant differences between surface and bottom waters ( $P > 0.06$ ), although some higher concentrations at the surface did exist in the middle reaches of the estuary. A reduction in freshwater flow and an increase in the mixing of seawater and freshwater coupled with a more stable water column environment appear to have generated the suitable conditions for enhanced chlorophyll *a* biomass production by week five. From these data, it seems that five to six weeks are necessary to establish high phytoplankton biomass after a significant breach of the mouth. This observation is in line with what has been reported regarding the period required to produce maximum phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* biomass in estuaries located on the Cape south coast (e.g. Van Stadens Estuary), where a period of approximately eight to ten weeks were needed for the maximum chlorophyll *a* biomass after a breaching event (Gama *et al.* 2005). The phytoplankton size class that was dominant after that period in the Van Stadens Estuary was the microphytoplankton. Studies on the Kasouga (Froneman 2002a) have also demonstrated similar trends, particularly during and post an open mouth phase. This is in contrast to what has been observed in the present study where the dominant group was nanophytoplankton (Figure 4). Except for the period soon after breaching, the nanophytoplankton have been the dominant group in the estuary, contributing over 60% to total chlorophyll *a* biomass even when the mouth had been closed for several months.

The picophytoplankton was the second highest contributor to total chlorophyll *a* biomass, ranging between 1.08 and 5.10  $\mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ . The microphytoplankton showed high spatial and temporal variation. There were significant differences between means of the nanophytoplankton in the first week and six weeks after breaching ( $P < 0.05$ ). There were no significant differences between the means of the pico- and the microphytoplankton chlorophyll *a* biomass taken before the mouth was breached (i.e. first week) with those sampled on the sixth week. This suggests that by the sixth week the phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* biomass concentration had recovered to levels observed prior to the breaching event. It may also indicate that, for this estuary, the newly replenished stock of mineral nutrients may have been used up by the phytoplankton, in particular the pico- and nanophytoplankton size-fraction.

#### Monthly phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* responses

As with most eastern and southern Cape TOCEs, water column microalgal concentrations are typically low and the East Kleinemonde Estuary is no exception. Monthly phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* concentrations exhibited high spatial and temporal variability. A two-way ANOVA showed no significant differences between surface and bottom depths or among the five sites surveyed ( $P > 0.08$ ). There were also no significant differences between the monthly phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* biomass distribution patterns ( $P > 0.05$ ). The data was thus subsequently pooled across both depth and sites.

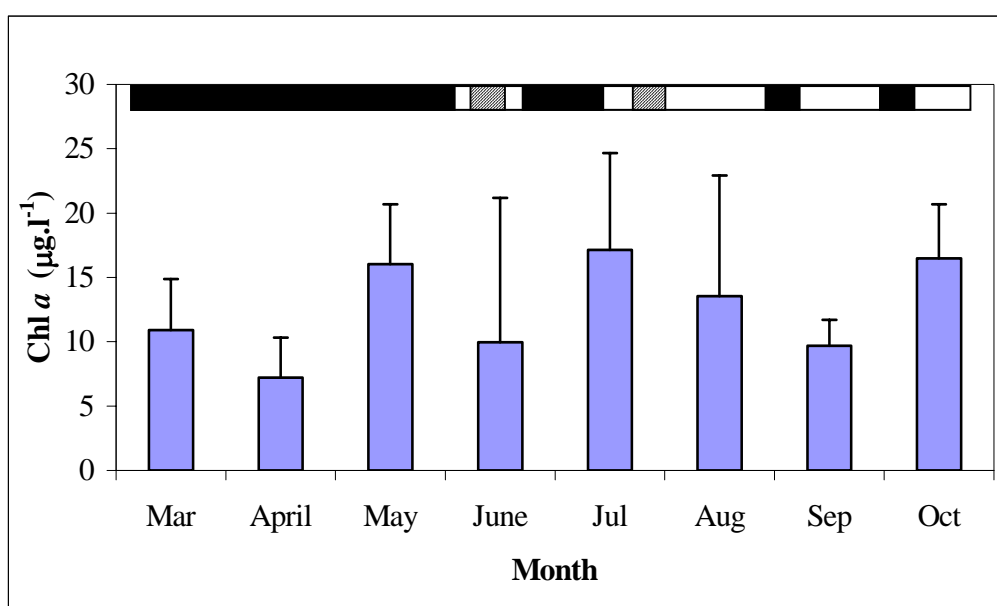


Figure 6. Mean monthly phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* concentrations taken between March and October 2006 in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Vertical lines represent  $\pm 1$  S.E. The horizontal bar denotes the three mouth states open bar-open mouth, solid bar-closed mouth, stippled bar overwash.

During the first three months of the study the mouth of the estuary was closed and phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* concentrations reached their peak in May ( $16.03 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ ). Throughout this period the nanophytoplankton were the dominant group with the micro- and picophytoplankton generally co-dominant as the second highest contributor to total chlorophyll *a* (Figure 6). April had the lowest phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* with  $7.02 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$ . The monthly maximum was  $17.13 \mu\text{g l}^{-1}$  in July six weeks after the mouth opened. A series of intermittent mouth opening and closings including periods of overwash followed for a few days before the mouth remained open for several weeks.

The phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* biomass distribution did not follow a seasonal pattern and were generally evenly distributed over all the months sampled. Seasonality does not appear to be a strong factor controlling phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* biomass in this system, although in the Van Stadens Estuary chlorophyll *a* biomass has been positively correlated with temperature (Gama unpublished data). As with most TOCEs, river flow in the East Kleinemonde has a major influence on phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* concentration and its spatial distribution. After the initial mouth breaching event there were other intermittent mouth opening and closing events that were followed by a longer period of mouth opening, which influenced phytoplankton chlorophyll *a* levels. These irregular mouth states had the effect of reducing as well as stimulating phytoplankton production (Figure 7).

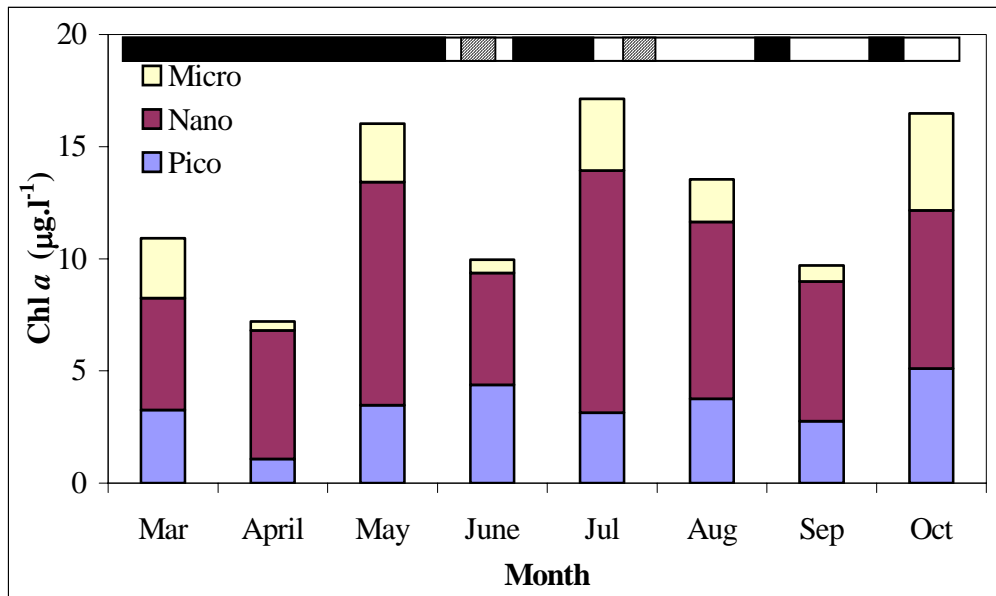


Figure 7. Monthly size-fractionated phytoplankton chlorophyll a concentration measured from March-October 2006 in the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Micro = microphytoplankton, Nano = nanophytoplankton, Pico = picophytoplankton). The horizontal bar denotes the three mouth stages (open bar = open mouth, solid bar = closed mouth, stippled bar = overwash).

Temporal phytoplankton chlorophyll a distribution patterns measured at the monthly scale may not be adequate in revealing phytoplankton responses as these temporal scales are too coarse and infrequent to capture the rapid changes experienced by small-sized phytoplankton forms (i.e. pico- and nanophytoplankton). Changes in the phytoplankton size structure over short-time scales (e.g. days and weeks) may uncover essential ecological features that may influence food web dynamics that are not observed over longer time scales (Jacquet *et al.* 2002). Although highly variable, the chlorophyll a data that were collected daily during the study, does indicate crucial phytoplankton ecophysiological response traits that maybe lost when monitoring regimes are infrequent or over long periods. A number of TOCEs have generally been characterised as naturally nutrient poor (Froneman 2002a, Gama *et al.* 2005) and thus may show increased sensitivity to sudden altered nutrient supplies (Perissinotto *et al.* 2003, Piehler *et al.* 2004) resulting in the unnatural alteration of the food web and trophic balance.

#### *Quarterly phytoplankton, microphytobenthic chlorophyll a and community responses*

Seven major phytoplankton species were identified in the East Kleinemonde Estuary that belonged to four distinct functional groups (i.e. diatoms, flagellates, dinoflagellates and microflagellates). During March, diatoms were the dominant group at most stations contributing 62% with cryptophytes and dinoflagellates constituting the second highest contributions of 15% and 13% respectively (Table 1). There were no clear spatial distribution patterns observed with the naviculoids and nitzschiods dominant at all the stations. Microflagellates constituted about 10% of the total cell densities in March and made up over 17% in July. A shift in the phytoplankton community composition in July showed the diatoms being replaced by dinoflagellates and cryptophytes, and this similar pattern held throughout September. The high frequency of mouth openings during the study period precluded an extended closed mouth state necessary to test if species diversity declines after a prolonged closed mouth condition. Thus, species diversity remained unchanged when comparing the time before and after the June mouth opening event ( $H' = 0.4$ ).

Table 1. Major species enumerated at each station along the East Kleinemonde and their associated percent abundance.

East Kleinemonde Stations Surveyed										
Month	Station 1		Station 2		Station 3		Station 4		Station 5	
		%		%		%		%		%
Mar	Nav.	43.2	Nav.	34.3	Nav.	39.3	Nav.	28.4	Nav.	26.8
	Nitz.	20.5	Nitz.	21.7	Nitz.	30.7	Nitz.	35.9	Nitz.	30.9
	Microf.	6.3	Microf.	12.8	Microf.	9.8	Microf.	6.5	Microf.	16.5
	Pro.	17.4	Cry.	17.7	Cry.	4.7	Cry.	18.7	Cry.	17.7
	Per.	12.3	Per.	13.5	Per.	15.0	Per.	10.5	Per.	8.5
Jul	Eun.	24.6	Cry.	27.4	Cry.	40.2	Eun.	15.0	Cry.	21.7
	Cry.	11.4	Microf.	23.4	Microf.	17.3	Cry.	33.7	Microf.	12.4
	Nav.	16.5	Nav.	10.2	Nav.	9.3	Nav.	11.2	Nav.	18.2
	Per.	34.1	Per.	20.0	Per.	21.0	Per.	15.5	Per.	18.0
	Pro.	12.9	Pro.	19.3	Pro.	12.3	Pro.	24.6	Pro.	29.3
Sep	Eun.	12.8	Eun.	15.2	Cry.	23.6				
	Rhod.	16.9	Cry.	16.3	Rhod.	14.2				
	Nav.	18.7	Nav.	15.8	Nav.	12.5	ND		ND	
	Per.	29.4	Per.	30.7	Per.	34.7				
	Pro.	21.2	Pro.	22.1	Pro.	15.0				

Key to abbreviations: Cry. = *Cryptomonas* spp.; Eun. = *Eunotia* spp.; Nav. = *Navicula* spp.; Nitz. = *Nitzschia* spp.; Microf. = microflagellates; Pro. = *Prorocentrum* spp.; Per. = *Peridinium* spp.; Rhod. = *Rhodomonas* spp.; ND = No Data collected.

Prior to the sampling survey in March after the long closed state of about 9 months, the microphytobenthos (MPB) did not show any strong spatial distribution pattern. It was characterised by very low chlorophyll *a* concentrations averaging 7.32  $\mu\text{g g}^{-1}$  sediment. Under closed mouth conditions these MPBs values are uncharacteristically low given the clear water conditions during that time. In most TOCEs MPBs tend to show high chlorophyll *a* biomass when the mouth has been closed for an extended period (Nozais *et al.* 2001, Froneman 2002b, Perissinotto 2002). As a result of the relative shallowness of the estuary the euphotic depth was always greater than the total depth, except at station-2 near the R72 bridge where the maximum depth >2 m when the mouth is closed.

In July, one week after mouth breaching, the MPB chlorophyll *a* concentration had increased 12 fold over the March levels although the concentration was higher in the mouth area than in the upper reaches (Figure 8). A one-way ANOVA revealed significant differences between March and July MPB chlorophyll *a* concentrations in the lower and middle reaches of the estuary ( $P < 0.001$ ). Microphytobenthic samples were collected a week after the mouth breached. Instead of the expected low concentration as a result of the fall in the water level and possible sediment scour during the breach, they showed higher chlorophyll *a* biomass in the lower reaches compared to the upper station. There were significantly higher MPB spatial patterns during July compared to March and September ( $P < 0.05$ ) (Figure 8). During July and September the mouth was open after it had been closed for less than a week. On both these occasions the MPB chlorophyll *a* biomass did not show any significant change after the mouth closed.

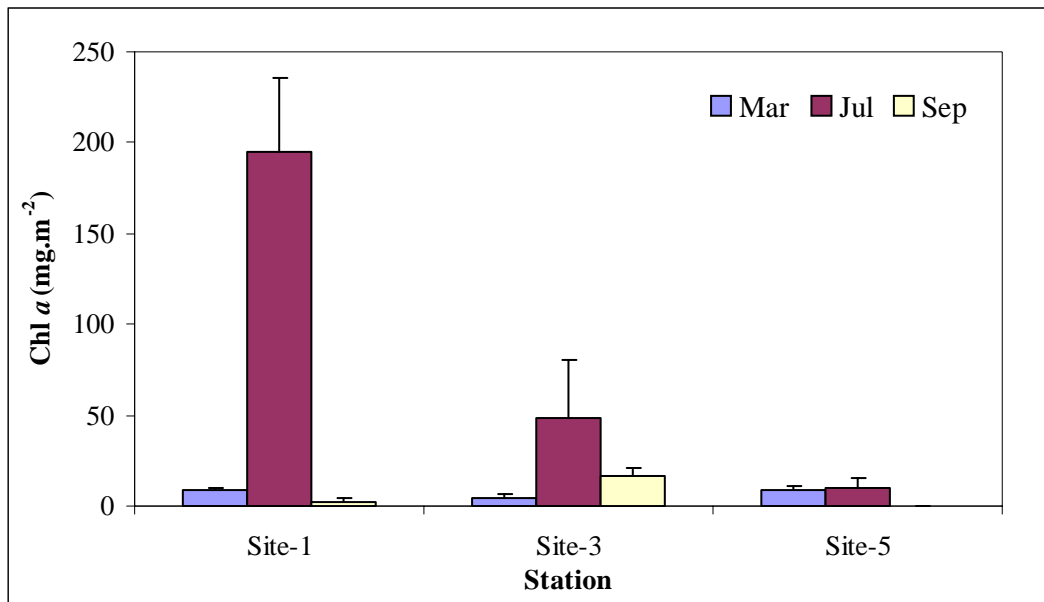


Figure 8. Mean microphytobenthic chlorophyll a concentrations taken in March, July and September 2006 from three sites along the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Mouth conditions at the time of sampling were March = closed, July and September = open. Vertical lines represent  $\pm 1$  S.E.

Increased nutrient inputs took place when the mouth was breached in winter as well as during the intermittent opening events in late winter. At these times the phytoplankton chlorophyll a biomass increased five to six weeks after each breach but the microphytobenthos chlorophyll a biomass showed an increase only a week after the mouth breached and most of the elevated concentrations occurred only in the lower reaches. This is possibly due to the sediment becoming stabilised sooner than the time necessary to create a favourable environment for increased phytoplankton production. By September MPB chlorophyll a biomass had declined to levels observed prior to the mouth opening, although during this period the estuary was experiencing many more mouth opening events than expected, which possibly disrupted the sediment and the development of benthic microalgae. It was not possible, therefore, to determine if a switch would have taken place from a phytoplankton driven production to one driven by benthic microalgae, as the chlorophyll a biomass levels in the sediments remained very low (see Figure 8). During this same period the phytoplankton chlorophyll a levels were at or near their highest levels. Under closed mouth conditions, seepage areas are generally associated with groundwater input into the estuary. Around these sites dense communities of MPB develop that are important in the biogeochemical cycling of minerals. In the East Kleinemonde Estuary samples were collected in March when the mouth was closed, however during the subsequent quarterly visits the mouth was open and the water level in the estuary had dropped and the previous collection sites were exposed and dry. The data for the March samples indicated a benthic microalgal community composed of mainly bacillariophytes, chlorophytes and mats of cyanobacteria with a proportional representation of 75%, 15% and 10% respectively.

## REFERENCES

- Bold, H.C. & Wynne, M.J. 1985. Introduction to the Algae. Prentice-Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey.
- Day, J.H. 1981. Estuarine Ecology: with particular reference to southern Africa. A.A. Balkema, Cape Town. 441 pp.
- Fernández, E., Marañón, E., Morán, X.A.G. & Serret, P. 2003. Potential causes for the unequal contribution of picophytoplankton to total biomass and productivity in oligotrophic waters. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 254:101-109.
- Froneman, P.W. 2002a. Response of the plankton to three different hydrological phases of the temporarily open/closed Kasouga Estuary, South Africa. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 55:535-546.
- Froneman, P.W. 2002b. Seasonal changes in selected physico-chemical and biological variables in the temporarily open/closed Kasouga estuary, Eastern Cape, South Africa. *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 27:117-123.
- Gama, P.T., Adams, J.B., Schael, D.M. & Skinner, T. 2005. Phytoplankton chlorophyll a concentration and community structure of two temporarily open/closed estuaries. Water Research Commission WRC Report No. 1255/1/05. 91 pp.

- Jacquet, S., Prieur, L., Avois-Jacquet, C., Lennon, J-F. & Vaultot, D. 2002. Short-timescale variability of picophytoplankton abundance and cellular parameters in surface waters of the Alboran Sea (western Mediterranean). *Journal of Plankton Research* 24:635-651.
- Nozais, C., Perissinotto, R. & Mundree, S. 2001. Annual cycle of microalgae biomass in a South African temporarily-open estuary: nutrient versus light limitation. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 223:39-48.
- Pérez, P., Estévez-Blanco, P., Beiras, R. & Fernández, E. 2006. Effect of Copper on the photochemical efficiency, growth, and chlorophyll a biomass of natural phytoplankton assemblages. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* 25:137-143.
- Perissinotto, R., Walker, D.R., Wooldridge, T.H. & Bally, R. 2000. Relationships between zoo- and phytoplankton in a warm-temperate, semi-permanently closed estuary, South Africa. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 51:1-11.
- Perissinotto, R., Nozais, C. & Kibirige, I. 2002. Spatio-temporal dynamics of phytoplankton and microphytobenthos in a South African temporarily-open estuary. 55:47-58.
- Perissinotto, R., Nozais, C., Kibirige, I. & Anandraj, A. 2003. Planktonic food webs and benthic-pelagic coupling in three South African temporarily-open estuaries. *Acta Oecologica* 24:307-316.
- Perissinotto, R., Blair, A., Connell, A., Demetriades, N.T., Forbes, A.T., Harrison, T.D., Iyer, K., Joubert, M., Kibirige, I., Mundree, S., Simpson, H., Stretch, D., Thomas, C., Thwala, X., & Zietsman, I. 2004. Contribution to information requirements for the implementation of resource directed measures for estuaries. Vol. 2. Responses for the biological communities to flow variation and mouth state in two KwaZulu-Natal temporarily open/closed estuaries. Water Research Commission WRC Report No. 1247/2/04. 165pp.
- Piehler, M.F., Twomey, L.J., Hall, N.S. & Paerl, H.W. 2004. Impacts of inorganic nutrient enrichment on phytoplankton community structure and function in Pamlico Sound, NC, USA. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 61:197-209.
- Prescott, G.W. 1962. *Algae of the Western Great Lakes Area*. C. Brown Co., USA.
- Quinn, G.P. & Keough, M.J. 2002. *Experimental design and data analysis for biologists*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK. 537 pp.
- Rodriguez, F.D.G. 1993. The determination and distribution of macrobenthic Chlorophyll-a in selected south Cape estuaries. MSc thesis, University of Port Elizabeth, Port Elizabeth.
- Skinner, T., Adams, J.B. & Gama, P.T. 2006. The effect of mouth opening on the biomass and community structure of microphytobenthos in a small oligotrophic estuary. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 70:161-168.
- Snow, G. C., Adams, J.B. & Bate, G.C. 2000. Effect of river flow on estuarine microalgal biomass and distribution. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science*, 51:255-266.
- Tomas, C.R. 1997. *Identifying Marine Phytoplankton*. Academic Press, Harcourt Brace & Company London.
- Whitfield, A.K. 1992. A characterization of southern African estuarine systems. *Southern African Journal of Aquatic Science* 18:89-103.

**Appendix G**

**Specialist Report: Macrophytes**

**T Riddin & JB Adams  
(Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, Port Elizabeth)**

## INTRODUCTION

Macrophyte community structure and composition in TOCEs is influenced by freshwater inflow, tidal exchange, salinity, water level fluctuations and sediment dynamics. Unlike many small TOCEs in KwaZulu-Natal and the south-western Cape whose mouths open seasonally following periods of high rainfall (Bennett 1989, Harrison & Whitfield 1995), the opening of the East Kleinemonde Estuary is unpredictable. The response of macrophytes in these estuaries is event driven. Biomass loss can either be partial or complete as a result of removal by floods or die-back in response to a drop in water level. The ability to colonise available space and re-establish after a disturbance is essential for the long-term persistence of communities and depends on the availability of propagules and the seed bank. The low species richness of macrophytes in TOCEs means that species lost due to changing physico-chemical conditions represents a loss of diversity. The East Kleinemonde Estuary historically had large beds of submerged macrophytes. However, since the early 2000s these have disappeared and the loss of habitat has resulted in the absence of key fish species, such as the estuarine pipefish (Whitfield & Cowley pers. comm.).

## MATERIALS & METHODS

In order to understand the spatial and temporal distribution of macrophytes plant cover abundance, biomass and seed bank structure was measured. Historical aerial photographs were assessed to determine the past vegetation status.

### Present status of macrophytes in East Kleinemonde Estuary

#### Vegetation map

A vegetation map for the present open mouth conditions was completed by Dr T. Bornman (Botany Department, NMMU). The survey included the capturing of photographic records, spatial data (GPS & ArcPad® version 6) and the collection of plant material for identification. The spring low and high water was mapped in August 2006 during the open mouth state to record the extent of tidal inundation (vertically and horizontally). These data combined with the DWAF water level data will be used in the vegetation model to predict the extent of inundation during open mouth conditions.

#### Plant cover abundance

Three permanent transects (Figure 1) were assessed on a monthly basis from March 2006. These transects were also monitored in 2005 on a quarterly basis (Bezuidenhout 2006) but this overlooked rapid changes and the sampling strategy was changed to monthly for 2006. Duplicate 1 m<sup>2</sup> quadrats were placed every 5 m along the length of each transect and vegetation was assessed for species percentage cover. Monthly colonisation rates (change in mean percentage cover) were calculated for each of the dominant species. The assessment in 2005 included sediment physico-chemical properties, namely electrical conductivity, sediment organic content, particle size, depth to groundwater and groundwater electrical conductivity. These properties did not influence the distribution of macrophytes and were therefore not continued in 2006. Water column physico-chemical conditions were measured monthly and daily when the mouth opened. Water depth was measured along each transect when the mouth was closed. To test the hypothesis that salt marsh dies within 120 days of inundation, regression analysis between cover abundance for *Sarcocornia perennis* and water depth was performed. Because the health of the vegetation at the time of sampling is a reflection of preceding water levels (Steinman *et al.* 2002), a one-, two-, three- and four-month time lag was used, i.e. the water depth in the preceding months.

#### Biomass

Optimum conditions for submerged macrophyte growth (stable water levels, clear water) were not present in the East Kleinemonde during 2006. The adjacent West Kleinemonde had almost pure stands of *Ruppia cirrhosa* due to extended mouth closure for two years. Biomass of *Ruppia* in this estuary was included to provide an indication of maximum potential biomass for the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Biomass was sampled in March, May and August 2006 in the West Kleinemonde Estuary and when the plants were present in the East Kleinemonde Estuary (March, May and June). Biomass was measured by clearing an area within a submersed bottomless bucket (30 cm Ø, n=4). All above and below-ground material was harvested and measurements represent total biomass. Samples were placed in sealed plastic bags and transported to the laboratory where they were washed free of animals, silt and debris, through a 1 mm sieve. Dry mass was determined after air-drying at 60°C for 48 hours until a constant dry mass was achieved. Results were expressed as g dry mass m<sup>-2</sup>.

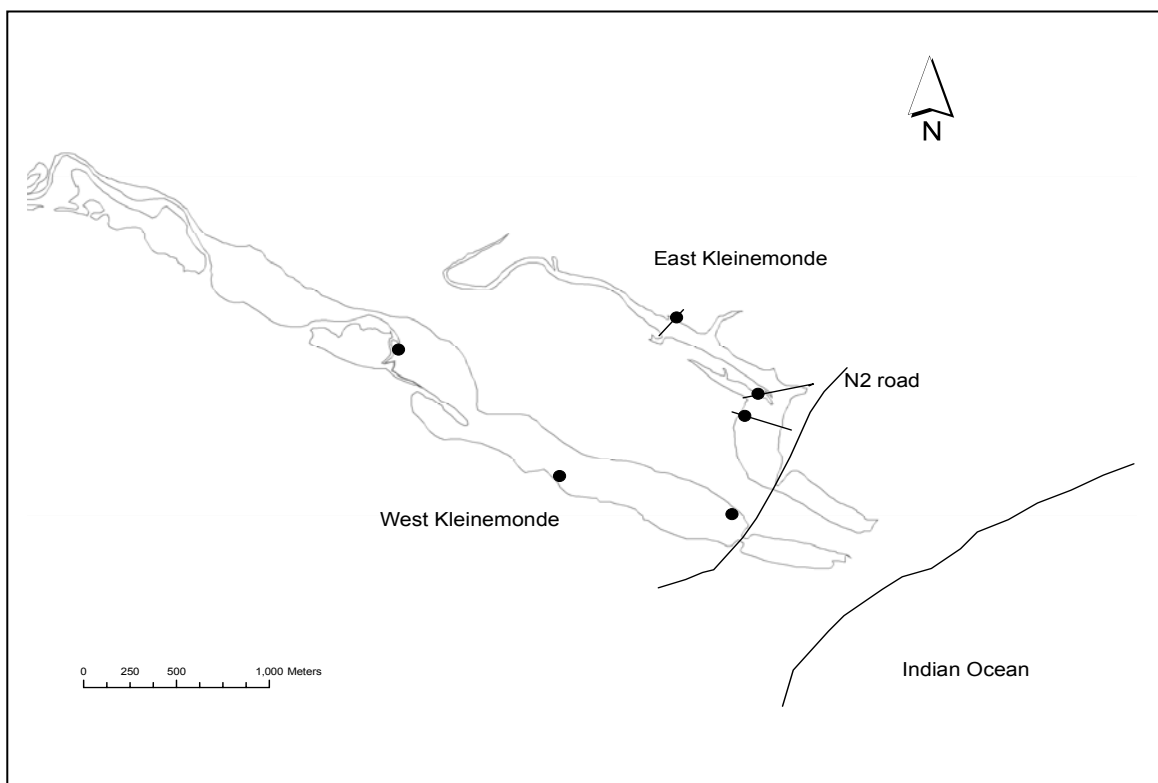


Figure 1. Location of the permanent transects for plant cover abundance (■) and seed bank sampling sites (●) in both the East and West Kleinemonde estuaries.

#### Seed bank structure

Sediment cores were collected from three sites in both the East and West Kleinemonde estuaries (Figure 1) in early autumn (19 March 2006). This time of collection represented the end of the growing season of the dominant species and seed bank replenishment was assumed to be high. Sediment was also sampled in May to determine the distribution of seed with depth and in August to determine the influence of flooding and mouth opening on the seed bank. These data are not included in this report. At selected sites, a 10 x 10 m plot was selected within which 45 random cores were sampled (4 cm Ø and 5 cm depth), representing a total collection surface area of 0.012 m<sup>2</sup> for each site. To account for the spatial heterogeneity of seed distribution, samples from each site were aggregated into 3 l buckets and homogenised. To test the potential for habitat development given ideal conditions, as well as to quantify seed banks, a 3x3 factorial experiment with three replicates per treatment was established in a glasshouse at Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (NMMU). Treatments represented three salinities; 0, 17 and 35 PSU and three water level conditions; exposed, waterlogged (pots in standing water) and submerged (inundated with 5 cm water). This provided a range of environmental conditions to promote maximum germination. The seedling emergence method was used to measure germination potential for different salinity and hydrological conditions (Peterson & Baldwin 2004, Boedeltjie *et al.* 2002, Baldwin *et al.* 2001, Baldwin *et al.* 1996, Leck & Simpson 1995, Van der Valk & Davis 1978). The cumulative number of seedlings present at the end of the incubation period was extrapolated to get the number of viable seeds per m<sup>2</sup>. Direct counts of the remaining sediment were done to determine total seed bank since some seeds may be dormant. Percentage germination indicates whether seed banks are transient (remaining in the sediment for less than one growing season) or persistent (more than one growing season).

#### Past status of macrophytes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary

A total of 11 aerial photographs obtained from the South African Department of Surveys and Mapping were used to assess historical vegetation changes. These spanned a 20-year period; the earliest was 1934 and the latest 2004. Photographic interpretation and quantitative mapping was done using ArcGIS™ Version 9.0 software.

## Predictive vegetation model

Elevation profiles for the three transects were measured using a Wild Heerbrugg Dumpy Level and the positions recorded using a GPS with ArcPad® (Version 7) software. These data give an indication of total area of inundation under open mouth conditions. Together with changes in cover abundance and past vegetation status, a predictive vegetation model for mouth condition and water level scenarios was formulated. This will be extended for the entire estuary using bathymetric data.

## RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

### Present status of macrophytes

Figure 2 shows the present distribution of vegetation in the East Kleinemonde Estuary under open mouth conditions. The potential area for submerged macrophyte development under favourable conditions, i.e. stable, clear water levels, has been included. The area covered by the different vegetation types is shown in Table 1.

Table 1. Area cover for each of the habitat types in the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

Estuarine vegetation type	Cover (ha)	Comments
Intertidal saltmarsh	2.45	<i>Sarcocornia perennis</i> dominant.
Supratidal saltmarsh	2.77	<i>Sporobolus virginicus</i> and <i>Sarcocornia pillansii</i> dominant, limited <i>Limonium scabrum</i> .
Saltmarsh mosaic	1.78	Mixture of <i>Juncus</i> spp., <i>Sarcocornia</i> spp., <i>Triglochin striata</i> , <i>Samolus porosus</i> , <i>Sporobolus virginicus</i> , <i>Bassia diffusa</i> and other sedges.
<i>Salicornia</i>	1.02	<i>Salicornia</i> sp. dominant. May become bare during exposed periods or submerged during closed mouth phases.
<i>Paspalum</i>	0.57	Wetland grass growing in the water, prefer closed and stable water levels.
<i>Juncus</i>	1.81	<i>Juncus kraussii</i> dominant but also <i>Juncus acutus</i> .
Reeds and sedges	1.01	<i>Phragmites australis</i> dominant.
Exposed mudbanks	9.83	Mudbanks exposed during spring low tide (open phase). These mudbanks had very limited vegetation growth during 2006, but may be colonised by <i>Sarcocornia</i> spp. during the open phase and submerged macrophytes during extended closed periods.
Estuarine water area	12.69	Measured during spring low tide (open phase). Includes side channels and streams influenced by tidal exchange.
Sandbank seaward of the bridge	1.78	Only large sandbank occurs seaward of the bridge. Mapped during spring low tide (open phase).
Total	35.71	
Potential submerged macrophytes	14.5	Given high, stable water levels and brackish (< 15 psu) conditions.

### Plant cover abundance

Figure 3 shows the change in the mean cover abundance for intertidal salt marsh (monospecific stands of *Sarcocornia perennis*), submerged macrophytes (averaged for *Ruppia cirrhosa*, *Chara vulgaris* and *Halophila ovalis* and reed and sedge stands (*Phragmites australis*) dominated. Data were averaged for the three transects and water level values of 0 m imply an open mouth. Table 2 shows the colonisation rates calculated as the average change in m<sup>2</sup> per year. Supratidal salt marsh is not presented because this community is only influenced by extremely high water levels under closed mouth conditions.

As water levels increased under closed conditions, the cover abundance of *Sarcocornia perennis* decreased. Regression analysis of mean cover abundance against water depth showed the strongest association of cover with water level one month preceding sampling ( $R^2 = 0.196$ ). The plants showed rapid recovery from existing material together with seedling establishment when water levels were low.

Submerged macrophytes increased under closed mouth conditions. This change took place exponentially (Figure 3). This is typical of studies elsewhere where *Ruppia* spp. recolonisation was shown to be a self-accelerating process because of positive feed back, i.e. increased plant cover increases light conditions and therefore increases growth (Hemminga & Duarte 2000). The submerged macrophytes colonise the open areas slower than *Sarcocornia* because growth occurs from seed since a complete loss of biomass occurred after each mouth opening as a result of desiccation and die-back. *Sarcocornia* by contrast recovered from existing vegetation because high water levels were not experienced for long enough to result in the complete removal of existing vegetation.

*Phragmites australis* showed a decrease in cover abundance under open mouth conditions, as well as with increasing water level (Figure 3). In systems where sedimentation poses a problem, colonisation values of  $0.15 \text{ ha yr}^{-1}$  (Siyaya Estuary, Benfield 1984) and  $0.13 \text{ ha yr}^{-1}$  (Nhlabane Estuary, Riddin 1999) has been recorded.

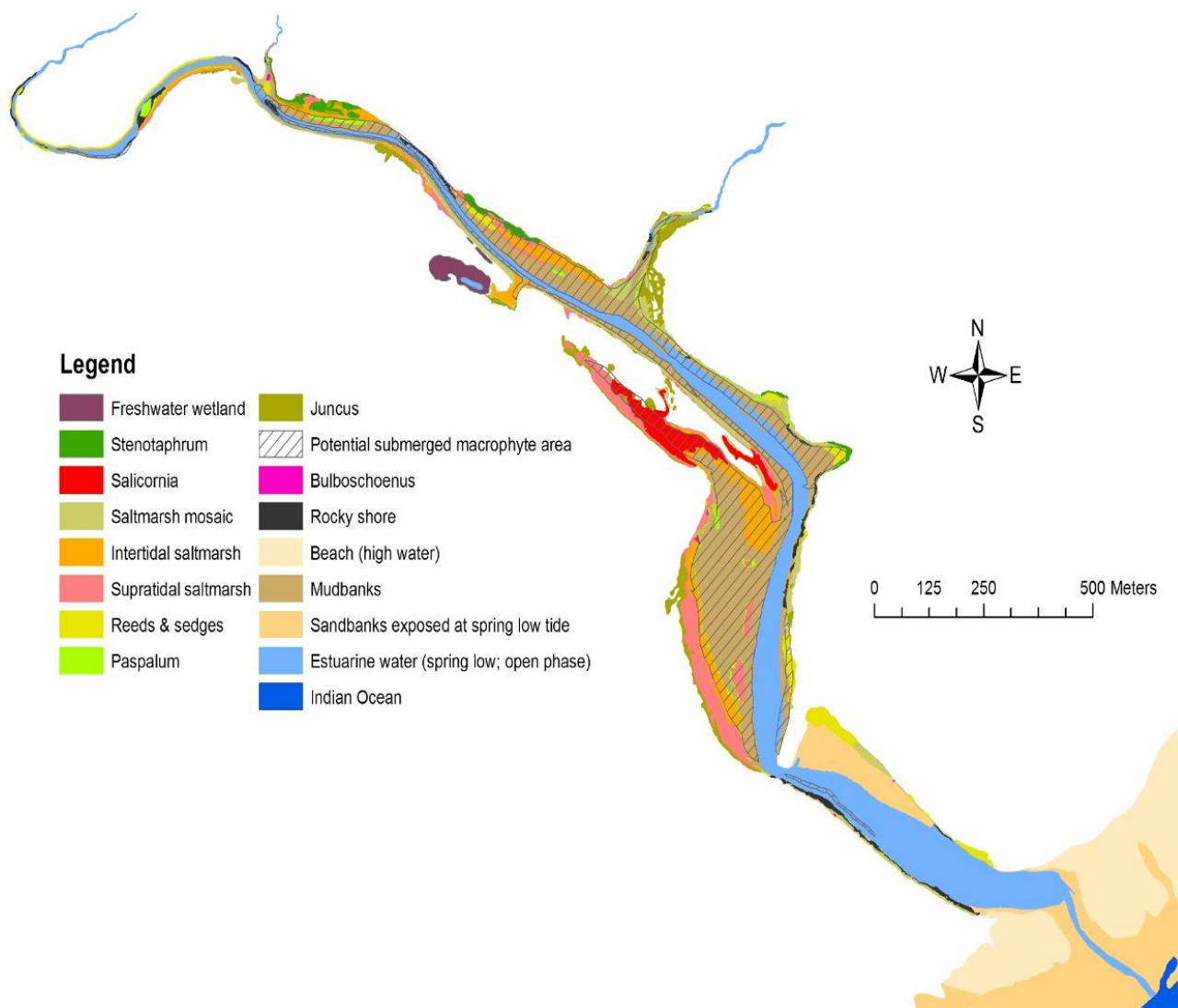


Figure 2. Vegetation map of the East Kleinemonde Estuary under 2006 open mouth conditions.

#### Plant biomass

Maximum potential biomass ( $2883 \text{ g dry mass m}^{-2}$  in August 2006) for *Ruppia cirrhosa* in the West Kleinemonde is shown in Figure 4. By comparison, the maximum value for East Kleinemonde was  $706 \text{ g dry mass m}^{-2}$ . This value would have increased had water levels remained stable for long enough. In Fra Ramon, a temporary lagoon in the Mediterranean, Gesti *et al.* (2005) found maximum biomass of  $800 \text{ g dry mass m}^{-2}$  where *Ruppia* had a perennial life cycle. They concluded that reproductive effort is highly plastic and this is an adaptation to temporarily flooded areas.

*Halophila ovalis* had a maximum biomass of 101 g dry mass m<sup>-2</sup>. *Halophila* populations are characterised by low biomass relative to other seagrasses (Duarte & Chiscano 1999). However *Halophila ovalis* has a fast leaf turnover, which enables it to act as a pioneer (Vermaat *et al.* 1995). Biomass in the Swan Canning Estuary (Western Australia) ranged from 60-120 g dry mass m<sup>-2</sup> (Hillman *et al.* 1995).

The maximum biomass for *Chara vulgaris* in the East Kleinemonde was 599 g dry mass m<sup>-2</sup> in June 2006. In sections along Transect 2 100% cover of this species was recorded. *Chara* species are the first colonising species after a disturbance and as a group they are usually regarded as indicators of healthy, clear-water ecosystems (Krause 1981). They are characterised by relatively high biomass, high plant density and low growth form (< 20 cm height). Other studies have reported biomass values between 20-200 g dry mass m<sup>-2</sup>, although up to 500 g have been recorded (Steinman *et al.* 2002, Fernandez-Alaez *et al.* 2002). Submerged macrophyte biomass increased in response to an increase in water level in both estuaries.

### Seed bank structure

The dominant species represented in the seed bank of both estuaries were *Sarcocornia perennis*, *Ruppia cirrhosa* and *Chara vulgaris*. *Potamogeton pectinatus* Linnaeus also occurred but in small amounts. Praeger (1913) and Combroux and Bornette (2004) found that seeds of *P. pusillus* can float for more than one day and their presence could be attributed to *ex situ* transport during a mouth opening event. The lack of *P. pectinatus* seeds may suggest that establishment is by fragmentation or individuals uprooted during floods and not by seeds. The first species to emerge in the laboratory study was *Sarcocornia* after three days. Similar observations were made in the field where seedling emergence occurred within one week of the water level dropping as a result of mouth opening. Other studies have also shown that the germination period in halophytes is very short, between 2 and 12 days (Rubio-Casal *et al.* 2002, Naidoo & Kift 2006, Naidoo & Naicker 1992).

The intermittent germination observed over the 91-day laboratory study is an adaptation of halophytes to unpredictable environments and occurs as a result of seed polymorphism, where the parent plant produces seed of different sizes. Seed densities for *Sarcocornia perennis* ranged from 11309-105121 m<sup>-2</sup>. These figures compare favourably with other studies where densities for *Salicornia europaea* were 32 096-142 906 m<sup>-2</sup> (Philipupillai & Ungar 1984). *Ruppia cirrhosa* emerged after 10 days, with some only emerging after 32-70 days of submergence. De Winton *et al.* (2000) reported emergence after 37 days of inundation. Seed density for *Ruppia cirrhosa* was 2947-5105 m<sup>-2</sup>. The pioneer species *Chara vulgaris* germinated after 10 days and seed density was 5105-22596 m<sup>-2</sup>. Van den Berg (1999) suggested that under closed canopies of *Chara*, oospore densities of about 10 000 m<sup>-2</sup> could develop. *Halophila ovalis* was not found in the seed bank, possibly because these plants are short and seed fall is immediately incorporated into the sediment from where there is limited dispersal. The areas where the sediment cores were taken did not have *Halophila* growing in them, and this species only occurred in the main channel along Transect 1.

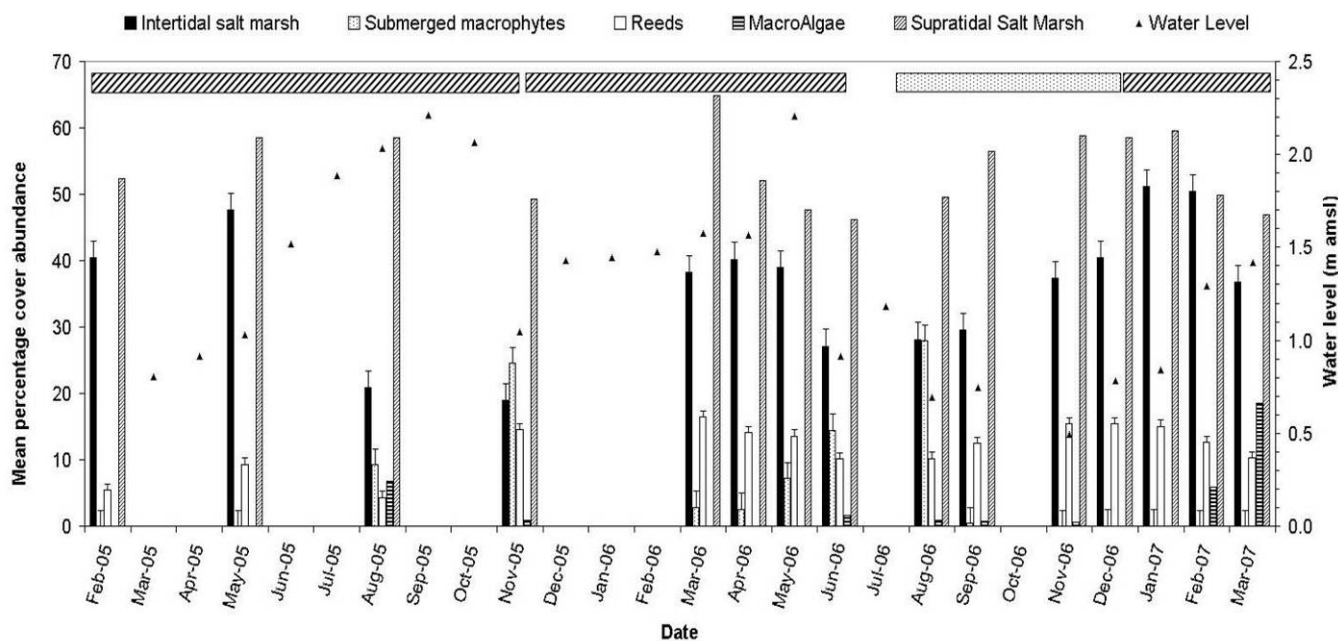
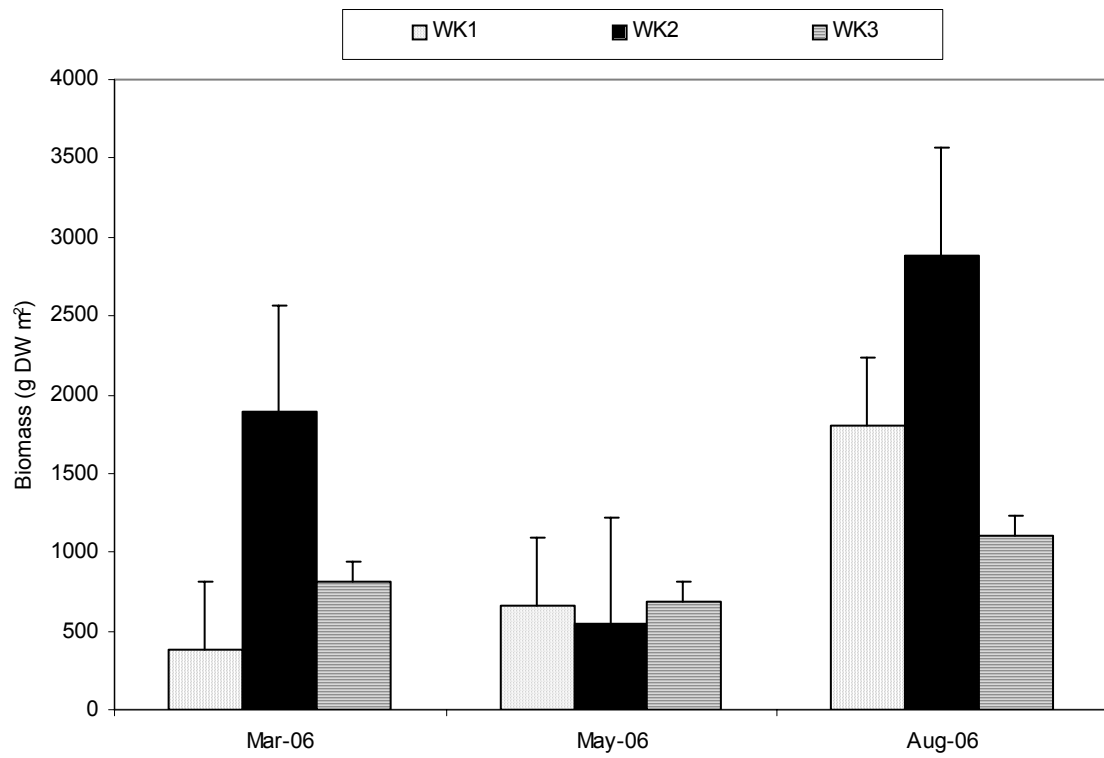


Figure 3. Change in average cover abundance of dominant macrophytes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during 2005 and 2006. A water level of 0 m represents open mouth, tidal conditions.

a)



b)

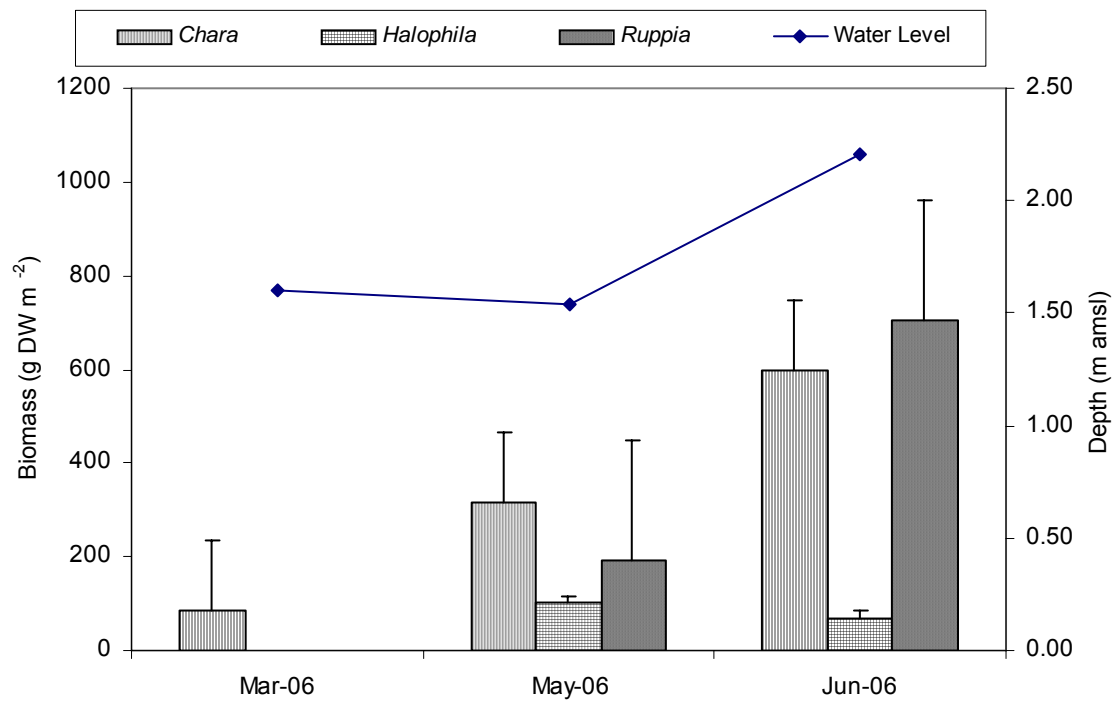


Figure 4. Biomass of *Ruppia cirrhosa* in West Kleinemonde Estuary (a). Biomass of submerged macrophytes in the East Kleinemonde Estuary (b).

## Past status of macrophytes

The past status of the macrophytes was assessed using aerial photographs in conjunction with discussions with residents and scientists who had either lived or worked in the area for some time. The following events had a significant effect on the macrophytes:

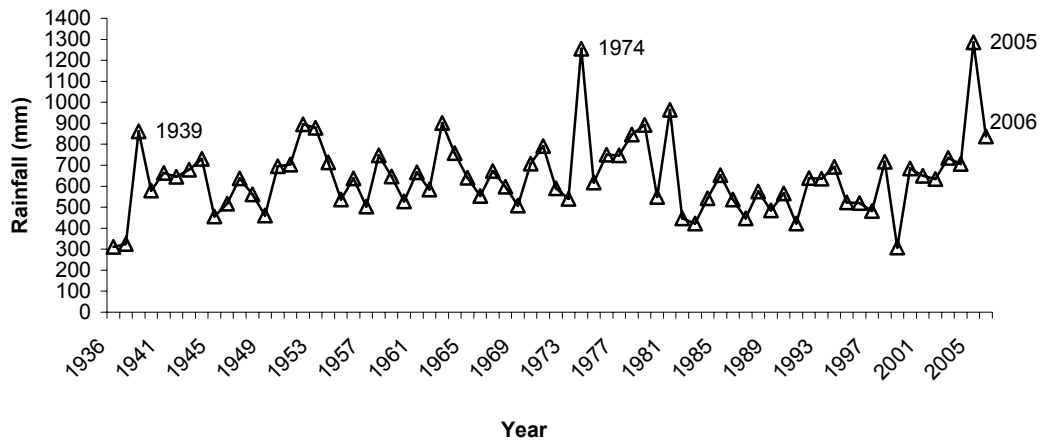
- Historical rainfall records (Figure 5a) show that in 1939, 1974 and now in 2005/2006 rainfall figures of 862.4 mm, 1254.7, 1286 mm (2005) and 836.5 mm (2006) were recorded. This indicates the occurrence of cyclical 1:30 year floods. The hypothesis is that these floods removed large quantities of sediment, reducing the base level of the estuary and increasing frequency and duration of mouth opening, as observed at present. Over time the estuary will once again build up due to the natural net gain of sediment.
- Construction of the R72 Bridge over the East Kleinemonde Estuary began in 1971. A report on the sediment dynamics of the East and West Kleinemonde (Badenhorst 1988) stated that the bridge had not influenced the rate of sedimentation in the estuary. However localised sedimentation is occurring downstream of the bridge on the east bank where *Phragmites australis* growth has been encouraged.
- Submerged macrophytes were extensive in the 1990s and early 2000s (14.5 ha, Figure 2) as a result of stable water level conditions following prolonged mouth closure (maximum of 2 years in the late 1990s, Figure 5b). The dominant species was *Ruppia cirrhosa*, but as salinity decreased with freshwater inflow, *Potamogeton pectinatus* grew. When the mouth opened in August 2001, large beds of *Potamogeton pectinatus* were still observed in the middle and upper reaches. Because the East Kleinemonde was perched, breaching probably resulted in only partial drainage. The estuary remained brackish as the small tidal exchange would not have caused salinity to greatly increase.
- Reed beds at the end of Transect 1 (on the east bank above the R72 bridge) have only established since 1995. Before this the submerged macrophyte *Ruppia cirrhosa* occurred there up to water depths of 1 m (Cowley pers. comm.). These changes can be attributed to disturbance of the banks due to residential development, fertilizer and freshwater runoff from the adjacent lawns.

## PREDICTIVE VEGETATION MODEL

The change in cover abundance of intertidal salt marsh in response to inundation shows that a water level of 1.5 m for two months had a negative influence. Using this information, together with elevation profiles of the three transects, present and past vegetation status and physico-chemical conditions, the following three estuary scenarios were proposed with respect to vegetation change (Figures 7, 8 and 9):

- Open mouth conditions (tidal)
- Closed mouth, low water levels < 1.5 m MSL
- Closed, high water levels > 1.5 m MSL.

a)



b)

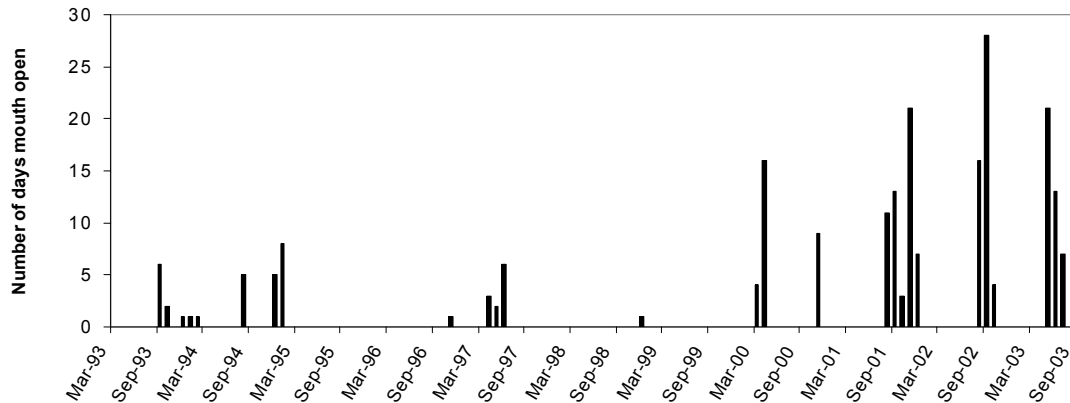


Figure 5. Historical rainfall (1936 to 2006) for Port Alfred (a) and mouth status (b) of the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Source: Cowley pers. comm.).

### Open, tidal phase

The flood in August 2006 scoured the estuary, reduced the base level and increased tidal amplitude. Intertidal areas are usually characterised by low species richness (three in this study) as only a few species can resist prolonged anaerobic conditions (Silvestri *et al.* 2005). Under the open mouth condition, spring tide ranged from 0.008 to 1.326 m MSL with a tidal amplitude of 1.318 m. During neap tide it was 0.484 to 1.228 m, a tidal amplitude of 0.744 m. Increased water level and salinity fluctuations create unstable conditions with possible losses of salt marsh (Baldwin & Mendelssohn 1998). Permanently inundated areas are bare (Figure 6) and high sediment salinity (45 psu) also prevents recolonisation. Under tidal conditions, salinity ranges from 0.7 to 35.5 psu. *Sarcocornia perennis* is confined to areas above 1 m MSL (Adams & Bate 1994). Seedling emergence takes place within a week of mouth opening and intermittently thereafter. Supratidal salt marsh is only affected by water levels greater than 1.8 m MSL because of elevation. No submerged macrophytes develop because of substrate instability, high water velocity ( $1 \text{ m s}^{-1}$ , Mackenzie pers. comm.) and high turbidity (3-11 cm Secchi depth).

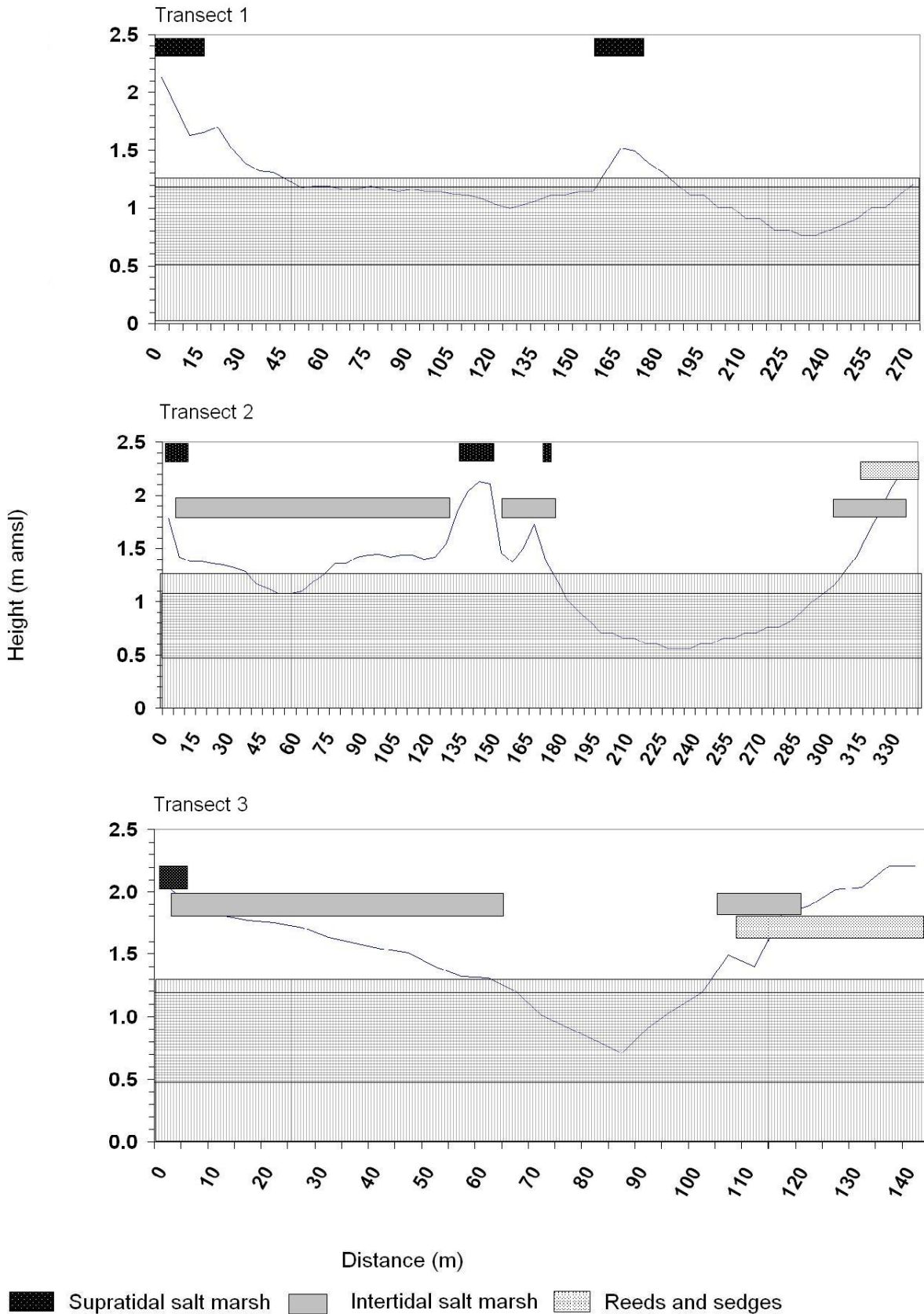


Figure 6. Predictive vegetation model for the East Kleinemonde Estuary under open mouth conditions.

**Closed mouth, low water levels (<1.5 m MSL)**

Intertidal salt marsh is negatively affected by inundation for 2 months or longer. Supratidal salt marsh remains unaffected by this low level since it occurs at elevations of > 1.8 m MSL. The submerged macrophytes *Chara vulgaris* and *Ruppia cirrhosa* establish from sediment seed banks after inundation periods of 10-18 days, although more likely only after 30 days. This implies that the mouth needs to be closed for at least this period. Field observations showed that *Chara* did develop in a water depth as little as 10 cm. It can produce oospores within 63 days, providing the water level remains stable (Garcia pers. comm.). Water column salinities of 21 to 23.5 psu are common. Expansion of *Phragmites australis* will take place at  $0.74 \text{ m}^2 \text{ yr}^{-1}$  under these low water levels, depending on seasonality (i.e. growth in spring and summer).

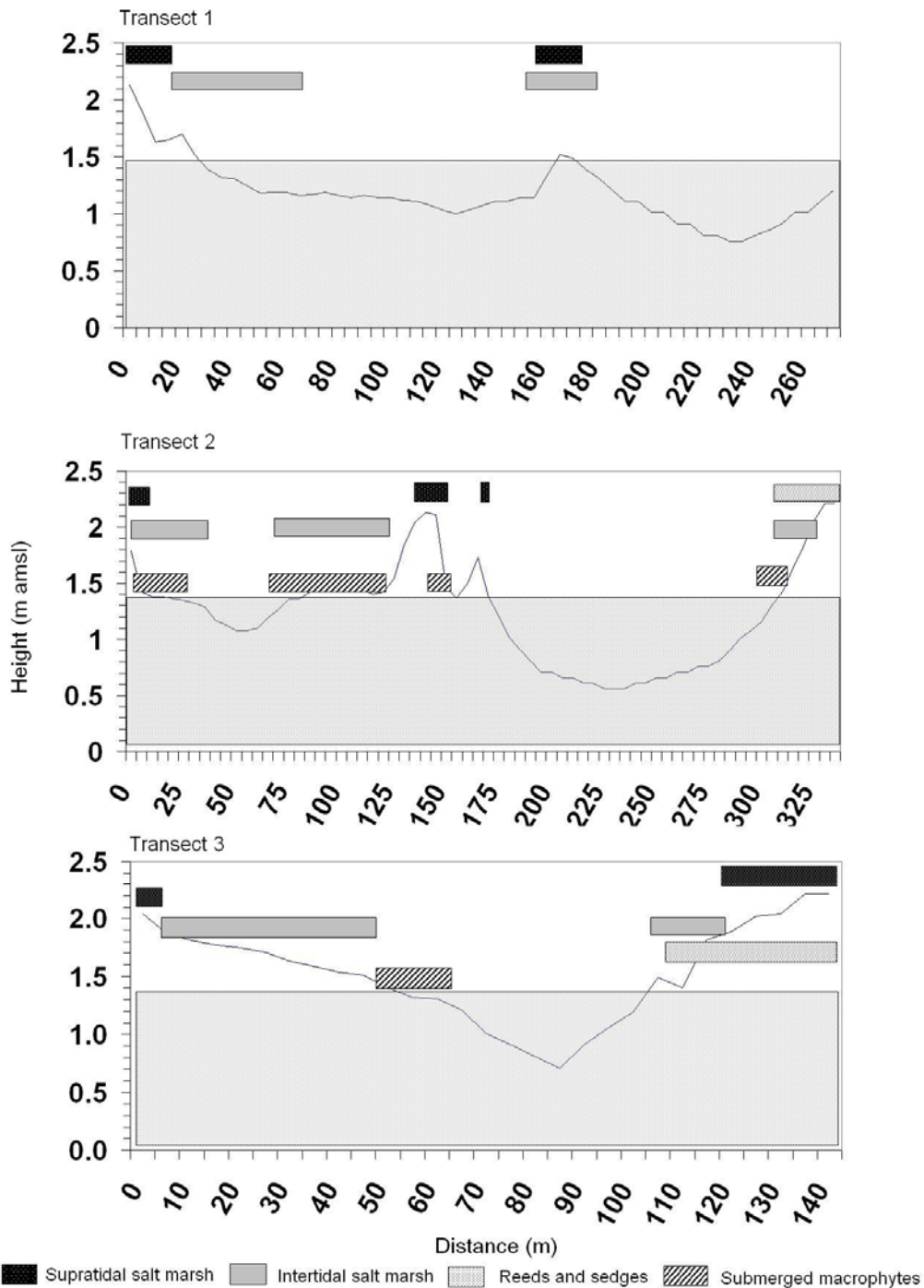


Figure 7. Predictive vegetation model for the East Kleinemonde Estuary under closed, low water levels.

### Closed mouth, high water levels (>1.5 m MSL)

Under these conditions intertidal salt marsh is completely inundated and dies. Salt marsh becomes heavily colonised by macroalgal epiphytes with species such as *Cladophora* and *Enteromorpha*. The pioneer species *Chara vulgaris* and *Halophila ovalis* become replaced by the larger more robust species of *Ruppia cirrhosa* (water salinity 0-30 psu) and *Potamogeton pectinatus* (water salinity 2-15 psu). If not displaced, *Chara* will grow as long as salinity is between 15-20 psu (Blindow *et al.* 2003) and *Halophila* is in the 20-35 psu range. Since biomass of submerged macrophytes that occupy the whole water column is dependent on depth, as water level increases, so will biomass. *Ruppia* may reach a maximum potential biomass of 2883 g dry mass m<sup>-2</sup>, *Chara* 599 g dry mass m<sup>-2</sup> and *Halophila* 101 g dry mass m<sup>-2</sup> as recorded in this study. If the estuary is perched at the time of mouth breaching and only partial drainage occurs, existing submerged macrophyte beds will supply vegetative material for recolonisation when the water level increases. The expected minimum colonisation rate is 0.75 m<sup>2</sup> yr<sup>-1</sup>.

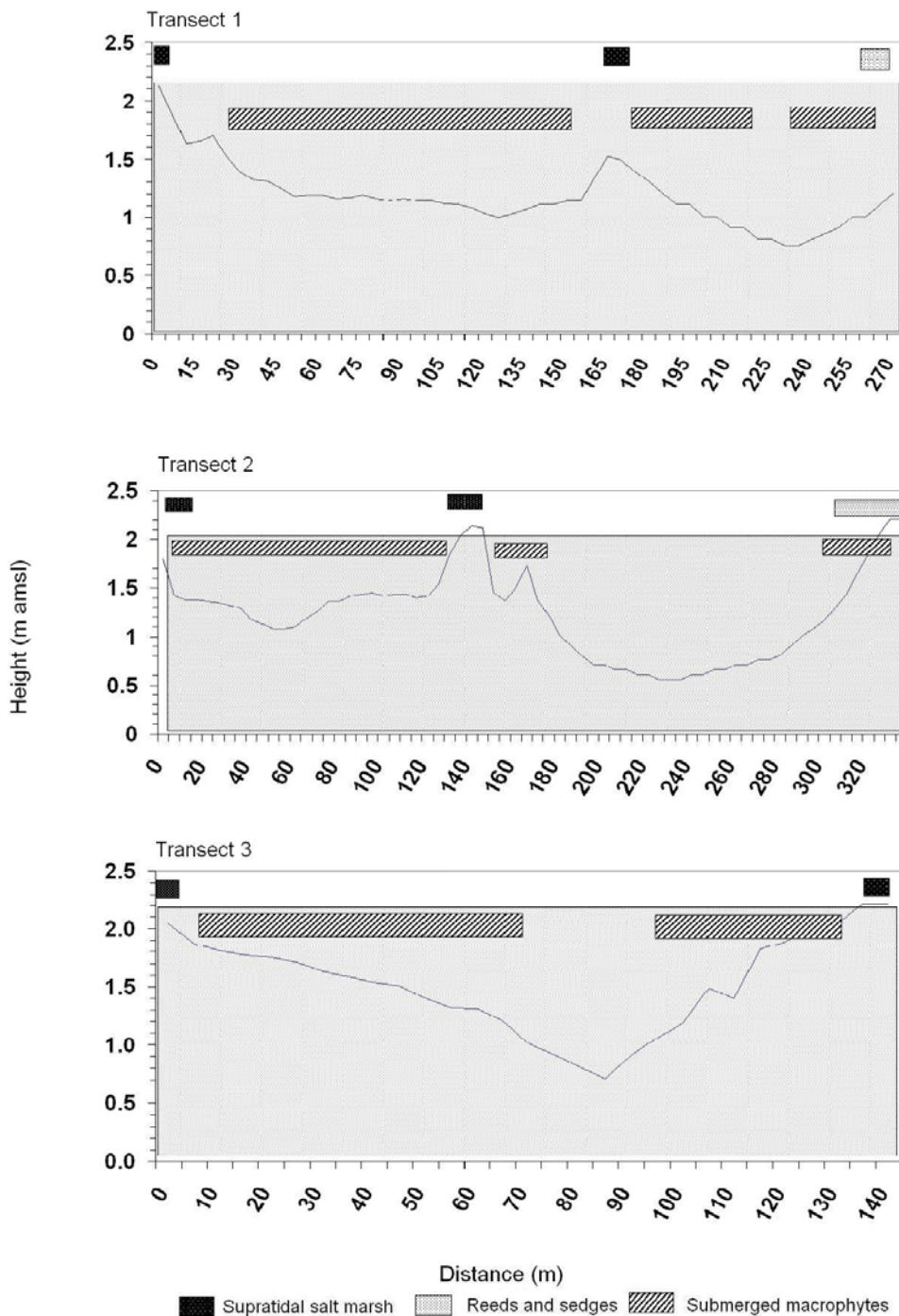


Figure 8. Predictive vegetation model for the East Kleinemonde Estuary under closed, high water levels.

## CONCLUSIONS

The original project hypotheses are discussed in relation to the research findings.

Further data are needed to test the following hypotheses:

- *Salt marsh macrophytes die back when completely inundated for 120 days (4 months).*  
These conditions did not occur in 2006 and the hypothesis remains untested.
- *Large floods in TOCEs can completely remove submerged macrophytes and reeds. These recover within a year from remnant roots and rhizomes (reeds) and seeds (submerged macrophytes).*  
Intertidal conditions following the August 2006 flood resulted in exposure, desiccation and die-back of submerged macrophytes. The plants will only return if physico-chemical conditions are favourable.
- *For emergent reeds, prolonged (even partial) submergence during spring and summer is more detrimental than that during autumn and winter.*  
Mouth closure did not occur long enough to test this hypothesis.
- *Increased temperatures and nutrient input in spring leads to increased macroalgal abundance.*  
In 2006 the mouth was open in spring, the estuary was tidal and macroalgae were scarce so the hypothesis could not be tested.

Hypotheses not disproven:

- *Salt marsh macrophytes re-establish from their seed bank within 2 months when water level drops and the marsh area is exposed.*  
Intertidal salt marsh grew after 3 days exposure (a drop in water level) and increased in cover to that prior to mouth closure.
- *Submerged macrophyte biomass is highest during low flow, closed mouth conditions, when water clarity is high and physico-chemical conditions are stable.*

Although the mouth of the East Kleinemonde Estuary did not remain closed for long enough to see if this did occur, historical data show that this is the case.

- *The submerged macrophyte *Ruppia cirrhosa* (*Petagna*) *Grande* becomes dominant after mouth closure when salinity ranges from 25 - 45 psu. *Halophila ovalis* co-exists with *Ruppia* at salinity values from 25 - 45 psu.*  
In 2006 *Ruppia* and *Halophila* occurred in the East Kleinemonde at 21 - 23.5 psu.
- *When the mouth is closed and salinity is less than 15 psu then *Potamogeton pectinatus* becomes dominant.*  
Mouth closure did not occur for long enough to test this hypothesis. However, interpretation of aerial photographs showed large beds of *Potamogeton* present in the estuary in the early 1990s when the salinity was probably fresh to brackish.
- *Phragmites australis expands its distribution during low water level conditions and responds to increased freshwater run-off from storm-water and septic tanks.*  
There have been localised increases in reeds below and above the R72 bridge possibly in response to increased freshwater runoff from residential areas.

## Future monitoring and management of vegetation

Cover and biomass must be measured to determine abundance and to detect change. A recommendation is that the permanent transects remain in place with monthly monitoring during conditions of rapid change. The scenario that was not captured in this study was an increase in water level during stable conditions. Monitoring of cover abundance should be done in conjunction with aerial photographic analysis on an annual basis.

## REFERENCES

- Adams, J.B. & Bate, G.C. 1994. The effect of salinity and inundation on the estuarine macrophyte *Sarcocornia perennis* (Mill.) A.J. Scott. *Aquatic Botany* 47: 341-348.
- Badenhorst, P. 1988. Report on the dynamics of the Kleinemonde West and East estuaries. (CSE 13 & 14). CSIR Report EMA/T 8805. 14 pp.
- Baldwin, A.H., Egnotovich, M.S. & Clarke, E., 2001. Hydrologic change and vegetation of tidal freshwater marshes: Field, greenhouse, and seed-bank experiments. *Wetlands* 21: 519-531
- Baldwin, A.H. & Mendelssohn, I.A. 1998. Response of two oligohaline marsh communities to lethal and nonlethal disturbance. *Oecologia* 116: 543-555
- Baldwin, A. H., McKee, K.L. & Mendelssohn, I.A. 1996. The influence of vegetation, salinity and inundation on seed banks of oligohaline coastal marshes. *American Journal of Botany* 83: 470-479.

- Benfield, M.C. 1984. Some factors influencing the growth of *Phragmites australis* (Cav.) Trin ex Steudal. M.Sc. thesis, University of Natal, Durban.
- Bennett, B.A. 1989. A comparison of the fish communities in nearby permanently open, seasonally open and normally closed estuaries in the south-western Cape, South Africa. *South African Journal of Marine Science* 8: 43-55.
- Bezuidenhout, C. 2006. Unpublished PhD data. Department of Botany, Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, Port Elizabeth.
- Blindow, I., Dietrich, J., Möllman, N. & Schubert, H. 2003. Growth, photosynthesis and fertility of *Chara aspera* under different light and salinity conditions. *Aquatic Botany* 76: 23-234.
- Boedeltje, G., ter Heerdt, G.N.J. & Bekker, J.P. 2002. Applying the seedling-emergence method under waterlogged conditions to detect seed bank of aquatic plants in submerged sediment. *Aquatic Botany* 72: 121-128.
- Combroux, I.C.S. & Bornette, G., 2004. Propagule bank regeneration strategies of aquatic plants. *Journal of Vegetative Science* 15: 13-20.
- De Winton, M.D., Clayton, J.S. & Champion, P.D., 2000. Seedling emergence from seed banks of 15 New Zealand lakes with contrasting vegetation histories. *Aquatic Botany* 66: 181-194.
- Duarte, C.M. & Chiscano, C.L. 1999. Seagrass biomass and production: a reassessment. *Aquatic Botany* 65: 159-174.
- Fernandez-Alaez, M., Fernandez-Alaez, C. & Rodriguez, S. 2002. Seasonal changes in biomass of Charophytes in shallow lakes in the northwest of Spain. *Aquatic Botany* 75: 332-348.
- Garcia, pers comm. School of Earth and Environmental Sciences, University of Wollongong, NSW 2522, Australia.
- Gesti, J., Badosa, A. & Qunitana, X.D. 2005. Reproductive potential in *Ruppia cirrhosa* (Pentagna) Grande in response to water permanence. *Aquatic Botany* 81: 191-198.
- Harrison, T.D. & Whitfield, A.K. 1995. Fish community structure in three temporarily open/closed estuaries on the Natal coast. *Ichthyological Bulletin of the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology*. 64: 1-80.
- Hemminga, M. & Duarte, C.M. 2000. *Seagrass Ecology*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 298.
- Hillman, K., McComb, A.J. & Walker, D. 1995. The distribution, biomass and primary production of the seagrass *Halophila ovalis* in the Swan Canning estuary, Western Australia. *Aquatic Botany* 5: 1-54.
- Leck, M.A. & Simpson, R.L. 1995. Ten-year seed bank and vegetation dynamics of a tidal freshwater marsh. *American Journal of Botany* 82(12): 1547-1557.
- Naidoo, G. & Kift, J. 2006. Responses of the saltmarsh rush *Juncus kraussii* to salinity and waterlogging. *Aquatic Botany* 84: 217-225.
- Naidoo, G. & Naicker, K. 1992. Seed germination in the coastal halophytes *Triglochin bulbosa* and *Triglochin striata*. *Aquatic Botany* 42: 217-229.
- Peterson, J.E. & Baldwin, A.H. 2004. Seedling emergence from seedbanks of tidal freshwater wetlands: response to inundation and sedimentation. *Aquatic Botany* 78: 243-254.
- Philipupilla, J. & Ungar, I.A. 1984. The effect of seed dimorphism on the germination and survival of *Salicornia europaea* L. *populatus*. *American Journal of Botany* 71, 542-549.
- Riddin, T. 1999. The Botanical Importance of the Nhlabane Estuary. MSc thesis, University of Port Elizabeth. 160 pp.
- Rubio-Casal, A.E., Castillo, J.M., Luque, C.J. & Figueroa, M.E. 2002. Influence of salinity on germination and seed viability of two primary colonizers of Mediterranean salt pans. *Journal of Arid Environments* 53: 145-154.
- Silvestri, S., Defina, A. & Marani, M. 2005. Tidal regime, salinity and salt marsh plant zonation. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 62: 119-130.
- Steinman, A.D., Havens, K.E., Rodusky, A.J., Sharfstein, B., James, R.T. & Harwell, M.C. 2002. The influence of environmental variables and a managed water recession on the growth of Charophytes in a large, subtropical lake. *Aquatic Botany* 72: 297-313.
- van den Berg, M.S. 1999. Charophyte colonization in shallow lakes. Processes, ecological effects and implications for lake management. PhD thesis, University of Amsterdam, 138 pp.
- van der Valk, A.G. & Davis, C.B. 1978. The role of seed banks in the vegetation dynamics of prairie glacial marshes. *Ecology* 59: 322-335.
- Vermaat, J.E., Agawin, N.S.R., Duarte, C.M., Fortes, M.D., Marbá, N. & Uri, J.S. 1995. Meadow maintenance, growth and productivity of a mixed Philippine seagrass bed. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 124: 215-225.

## **Appendix H**

### **Specialist Report: Zoobenthos**

**T Wooldridge & K Bezuidenhout  
(Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, Port Elizabeth)**

## INTRODUCTION

Temporary open-closed estuaries (TOCE's) are the most common generic group of estuaries around the South African coast (Whitfield 1992). Typically, average size decreases from west to east (cool temperate, warm temperate to subtropical, Table 1), with TOCE's about an order of magnitude smaller than permanently open systems in each of the three biogeographical regions (Turpie 2004).

The East Kleinemonde Estuary (35.7 ha) in the warm temperate zone (Turpie 2004) is slightly smaller than the average size for TOCE's in the same biogeographical region (Table 1). Connection with the sea is infrequent (Vorwerk *et al.* 2001) and over the past 10 years (1997-2006), the estuary opened to the sea for brief intervals only (usually <10 days for any continuous period).

Opening events occur at any time during the year, but are more common during the summer rainfall months. Previous information on benthic invertebrates of the East Kleinemonde estuary is restricted to five studies; Forbes (1973) reported on the larval stages of the anomuran *Callinassa kraussi* collected from the East Kleinemonde and Swartkops estuaries, while Hill (1975) investigated the population dynamics of the portunid crab *Scylla serata*. More recently, Teske & Wooldridge (2001, 2003, 2004) reported on the subtidal macrozoobenthos. This report covers the invertebrate zoobenthic component of the East Kleinemonde Estuary project conducted during 2006 and 2007.

Table 1. Average size (ha) of temporarily open-closed and permanently open estuaries in the cool temperate, warm temperate and subtropical biogeographical regions. Data from Turpie (2004).

	Intermittently open estuaries		Permanently open estuaries	
	Average size (ha)	n	Average Size (ha)	n
Cool Temperate	295.4	2	2158.4	2
Warm Temperate	39.9	74	177.5	29
Subtropical	13.7	94	100.5	16

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

Four field trips were undertaken in 2006 (Table 2). At the time of sampling in March, the mouth had remained closed for about six months. The second field trip in July followed a period of brief mouth opening of approximately one week. Thereafter, the state of the mouth remained mostly open up to the fourth visit in November.

Table 2. Sampling dates and state of the mouth at the time of sampling on each of four trips to the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

Sampling date	State of the mouth	Comments
20 March 2006	Closed	Mouth had remained closed for at least 6 months.
27 July 2006	Closed	Mouth opened for ca 3-4 days a month previously (23 June).
12 September 2006	Open	Mouth opened 3 August. Estuary very shallow above Stn 1 (<0.50 m) at time of sampling.
14 November 2006	Open	Mouth closed between 21-27 September.

## Field and laboratory sampling

### *Benthic community analysis*

Subtidal benthic invertebrates were collected from the deck of a flat-bottomed boat using a Van Veen type grab at five sites (Figure 1).

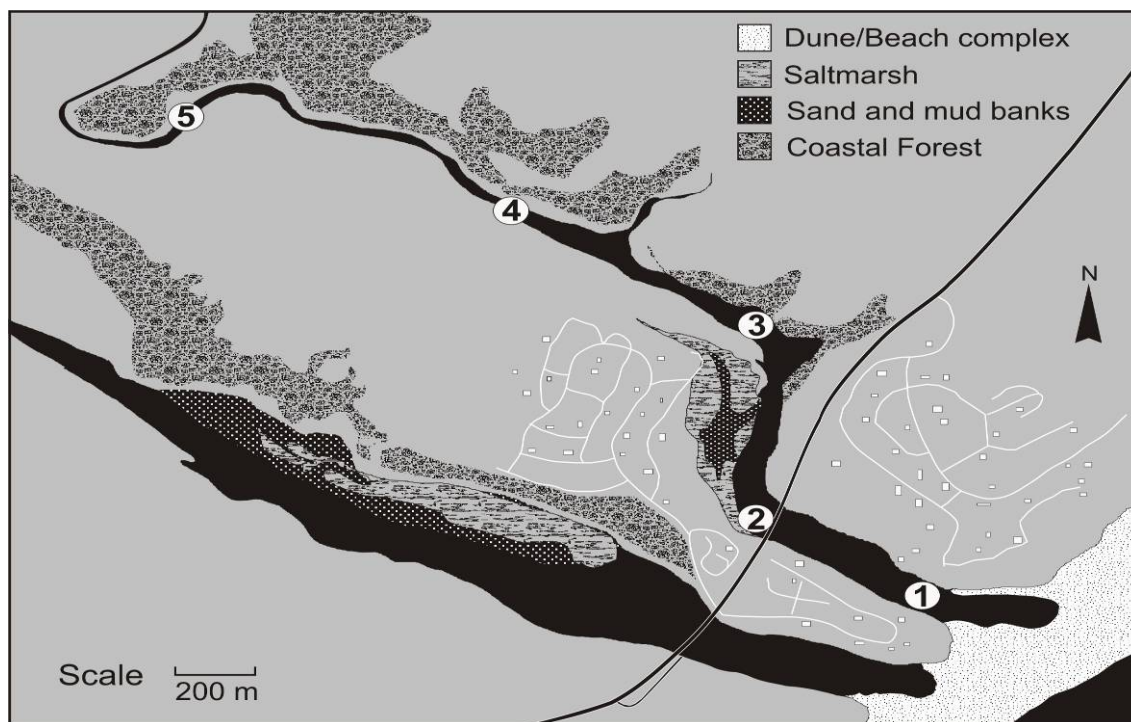


Figure 1. The temporarily open/closed East Kleinemonde Estuary showing the location of the sampling stations. The West Kleinemonde Estuary in the lower section of the map occasionally links with the East Kleinemonde as they meander across the Dune/Beach complex.

Only three sites were sampled in September due to very shallow water after the estuary had opened to the sea. The grab sampler has a 200 cm<sup>2</sup> area that penetrated the sediment down to about 10 cm. Nine replicates were collected over an area of about 10 m<sup>2</sup>. Animals retained by the sieve were stored in 500 ml plastic bottles and preserved with 10% formaldehyde solution.

A YSI 6600 multi-parameter sonde was deployed at all stations (Figure 1) to measure abiotic parameters on each sampling occasion. Variables were measured near the surface, at 0.5 m and at 1 m depth (or maximum depth at any site). The following parameters were recorded at every depth sampled: Dissolved oxygen (percent saturation and in mg l<sup>-1</sup>), salinity (psu), temperature (°C), turbidity and pH. A sediment sample collected at each station provided information on particle size distribution and percent organic content. Dry samples (dried at 60°C for a minimum of 48 h and then weighed) were incinerated at 550°C for 12 h to burn off the organic matter. The difference in mass of the sample after incineration provided information on organic content, expressed as a percentage. Three replicates from each sediment sample were used to obtain a final value. Samples were then soaked in distilled water for 24 h to remove salts. Excess water was carefully siphoned off and the sample again dried at 60°C for 72 h. Dried sediment was then vibrated through a series of metal test sieves (2 mm, 1 mm, 500 µm, 355 µm, 250 µm, 180 µm, 125 µm, 90 µm, 63 µm and <63 µm).

Analysis of samples was completed in the laboratory. Final abundance was expressed as the average number of each species per m<sup>2</sup> of substratum at each site, determined from the nine replicates respectively. Invertebrates were identified to species level wherever possible and the data analysed using multivariate statistics from the statistical package, PRIMER V.6 (Plymouth Routines in Multivariate Ecological Research). If multivariate techniques were not appropriate, other packages using MS Excel or Statistica for Windows were used.

### Isotope analysis

A comprehensive set of biotic samples were collected in March at Station 1 (lower estuary) and at Station 5 (upper estuary) for carbon and nitrogen isotope analysis in order to construct a food web for the benthic invertebrates. Five replicates (stored separately) of six grabs each were sampled at each station using the Van Veen type grab. Samples were transferred to a sorting facility, where animals were extracted over the next two days, while stored at 1-4°C. Sand prawns (*Callinassa kraussi*) were collected at Station 1 with a prawn pump and were subsequently frozen.

In the laboratory, unfrozen animal samples were rinsed under running distilled water and their digestive tracts removed under a dissecting microscope. The eggs of gravid females were removed, as these contain high lipid concentrations that might affect the isotope composition of the animals (Sánchez-Paz *et al.* 2006). Whole animals were then frozen, freeze-dried, homogenised using a mortar and pestle and treated with 10% HCl to remove non-dietary carbonates (Fantle *et al.* 1999). The acid was applied in a drop-by-drop fashion, until all the CaCO<sub>3</sub> had reacted with the HCl (Jacob 2005). Acid was driven off by warming the samples on a hot plate without rinsing the samples (Bunn *et al.* 1995). Samples were again freeze-dried, homogenised and kept frozen. *Callinassa kraussi* was treated in the same way as described above, but only muscle tissue was used for isotopic analysis. Tissue was then frozen, freeze-dried and homogenized.

Particulate organic matter (POM) was sampled by collecting 2-3 l of water from the upper 30 cm of the water column. It was then filtered through a 50 µm sieve to remove micro-zooplankton and suspended plant debris. The residue was then filtered through a 20 µm nitex mesh and onto a pre-combusted (48 hrs at 110°C) Whatman GF/C filter (1 µm pore size). Samples taken at Station 1 were filtered *in situ*, while those collected at Station 5 were filtered using a vacuum extractor pump. Filters were kept frozen for further treatment. Three replicates of 340 ml surface water were also collected at Stations 1 and 5 and preserved with Lugols solution (about 10%) for species identification purposes. Identification of dominant groups was made using an inverted microscope.

Microphytobenthos was collected following the method of Riera *et al.* (1996) and Whitfield & Wood (2003). The top 2 mm of intertidal sediment from areas where dense algal growth was evident was scraped off with a spatula or scalpel (100 - 400 ml sample). The sample was transferred to a shallow tray (sediment depth ca 1 cm), covered with a 90 µm screen and layered with beach sand (particle size range between 250 - 500 µm) to a depth of 1 - 5 mm. The beach sand was first decalcified with 10% HCl, washed in tap-water and combusted for 8 h at 550°C. Thereafter, the sediment was kept moist with estuarine water pre-filtered through a precombusted Whatman GF/C filter. Sediment trays were then exposed overnight to fluorescent lighting to encourage microphytobenthic species to migrate from the bottom layer through to the surface. After a few hours, the surface layer of sand became distinctly green. The following morning the sand layer on the 90 µm screen was transferred to an Erlenmeyer flask containing filtered estuarine water and rigorously shaken to separate diatoms from the sediment particles. The supernatant was washed through a 50 µm mesh sieve to remove meiofauna, and subsequently filtered onto a Whatman GF/C filter using a vacuum pump. Small sub-samples (three replicates) of the supernatant were taken and preserved with 10% Lugols solution for identification purposes. Filters were wrapped in aluminium foil and stored in a freezer for later analysis.

All GF/C filters containing POM and microphytobenthos were treated with 10% HCl, but not homogenized afterwards. The acid was evaporated by heating the filters on a hot plate. The filters were then stored wrapped in foil. Nitex filters were rinsed in distilled water, and then filtered onto GF/C filters and treated as described for GF/C filters.

Dominant macrophytes were collected from the fringing vegetation (ca. 5 - 6 species) and from the subtidal community (7 - 8 species), although some were relatively rare. Plant species sampled included C<sub>4</sub> plants *Pycnus* sp. (sedge) and *Pennisetum clandestinum* (kikuyu grass), and C<sub>3</sub> species including other sedges (*Juncus kraussi*, *Bolboschoenus maritima*), *Phragmites australis* and the salt marsh plant *Sarcocornia* spp. (two species pooled and collected from Station 5 only). Plant material was rinsed in distilled water, freeze-dried and homogenised using a mortar and pestle. Epiphytes were gently scraped off submerged vegetation with a scalpel and frozen. Prior to isotope analysis, epiphyte samples were inspected to insure that no animals were present. They were then treated with 10% HCl in a similar fashion to that of the animal material. At Station 5, five replicates of sediment organic material (SOM, particle size ≥ 0.5 mm) were collected from the grab samples. Insufficient SOM was available in sediments at Station 1. Animals were removed from SOM samples using a dissecting microscope. The SOM samples were treated in the same way as animal material.

Stable carbon and nitrogen isotope analyses were conducted in the Stable Light Isotope Unit of the Archaeology Department, University of Cape Town. Animal and plant material were analysed in a Finnigan

MAT-252 isotope ratio mass spectrometer. Stable isotope data were expressed as the heavy to light isotope ratios, in the delta ( $\delta$ ) notation:

$$R_{\text{‰}} = (R_{\text{sample}}/R_{\text{standard}}) - 1 * 1000\text{‰}$$

where R is the heavy to light isotope ratio (eg.  $^{15}\text{N}/^{14}\text{N}$ ). The standard deviation for analyses was typically 0.1 to 0.2 ‰.

## RESULTS

### *Environmental parameters*

Salinity decreased upstream, with the lowest values and the maximum range occurring when the mouth was open to the sea (Figure 2). Salinity at Station 1 ranged between 15.5 and 20.7 over the study period. Corresponding values for the uppermost site sampled over the four visits was 9.3 and 19.6. Vertical stratification was generally associated with the upper reaches, although in September 2006, shallow water at Stations 2 and 3 resulted in a well mixed water column.

Recorded water temperatures (Figure 3) peaked upstream, averaging ca 1.4°C higher when compared to Station 1. The maximum difference between upper and lower reaches occurred in winter (2.2°C). Seasonal range at Station 1 was 11.4°C and at Station 5, 10.4°C.

Fine sand (>0.125  $\mu\text{m}$  - <0.355  $\mu\text{m}$ ) dominated the sediment at most sites (Figure 4), with the highest values recorded at Station 1. Mud (<63  $\mu\text{m}$ ) constituted less than 20% of the sediment at most sites on all sampling occasions, except in September after mouth opening. The pattern previously recorded in March and July was restored at the time of sampling in November. In July, Station 3 recorded a high proportion of relatively coarse sand (67.2%).

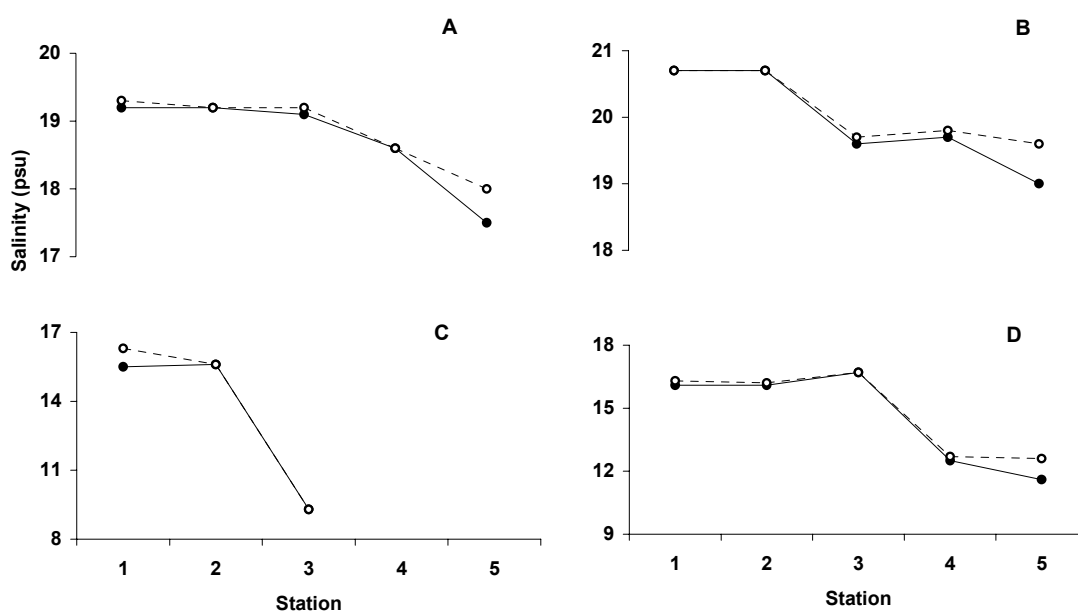


Figure 2. Salinity distribution at the time of sampling in March (A), July (B), September (C) and November (D) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Solid lines represent near-surface values, hatched lines represent near-bottom values.

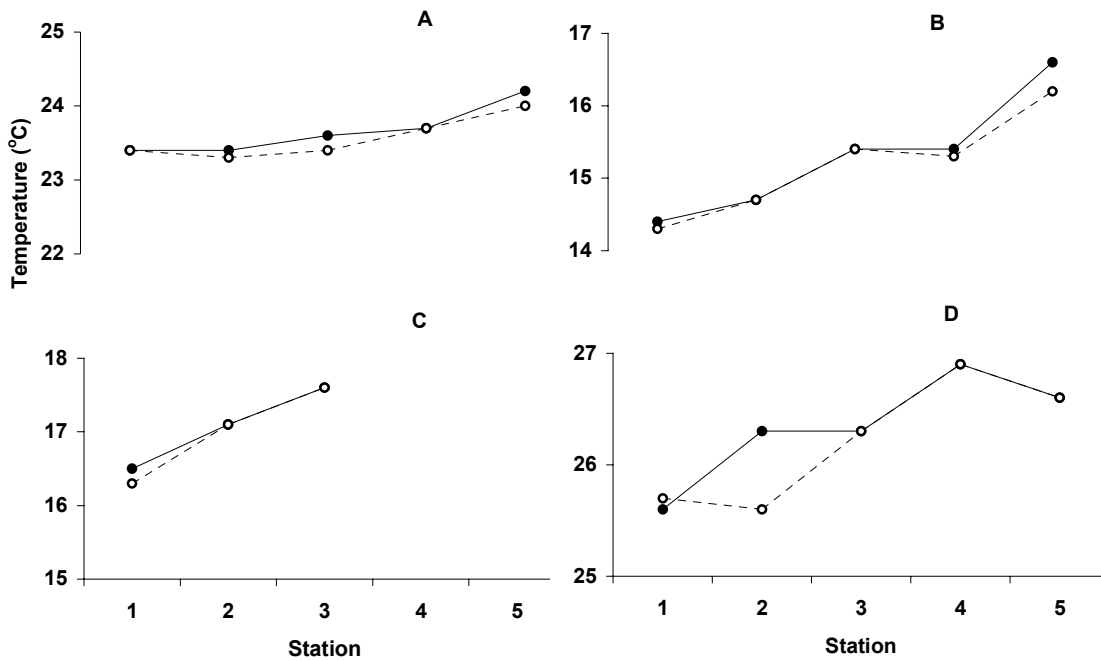


Figure 3. Temperature distribution in March (A), July (B), September (C) and November (D) 2006 in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Solid lines represent near-surface values, hatched lines near-bottom values.

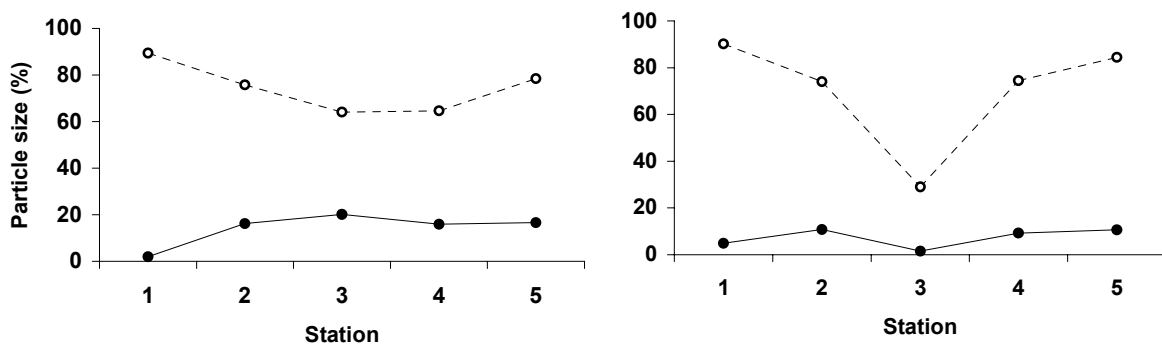


Figure 4. Particle size distribution in March (A) and July 2006 (B) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Solid lines represent mud content (<63 µm) and hatched lines percentage fine sand (>0.125 µm - <0.355 µm).

#### Biotic assemblages

At higher taxonomic levels, amphipods, tanaeids, isopods and polychaetes were the most abundant groups in the benthic community (Figures 5 and 6). Amphipods generally were dominant at all sites, making up a larger proportion of the benthic community after mouth opening. This was not as a consequence of an increase in amphipod abundance because total abundance was approximately 45 000, 13 500, 24 500 and 50 500 m<sup>2</sup> for each of the four sampling sessions respectively, but rather as a result of variable numbers of other invertebrate groups. When all groups are combined, the highest total abundance occurred in March 2006 (ca 144 000 m<sup>2</sup>) and in November 2006 (ca 70 000 m<sup>2</sup>). In summary, benthic invertebrate abundance was highly variable between sampling trips, with no discernable trend in the assemblage composition.

Mean abundance and spatial distribution of the seven most common zoobenthic species at the five sampling sites is shown in Figure 7. The amphipods *Corophium triaenonyx* and *Grandidierella lutosa* showed no distinct pattern of distribution along the estuary, while others such as the tanaeid *Apseudes digitalis* and the bivalve *Macoma litoralis* were scarce or absent at Station 1. By contrast, the cumacean *Iphinoe truncata* and *G. chelata* were most abundant at the mouth site. The mysid *Gastrosaccus brevifissura*, the amphipod *Urothoe serrulidactylus* and the bivalve *Solen cylindraceus* were only recorded below Station 3.

Group linkages shown by Bray Curtis Similarity clustering based on composition and abundance of the macrozoobenthos data indicated two major clusters at a similarity level of 59.7 (Figure 8). Station 1 grouped separately from all other sites for all four sampling trips. The similarity profile test (SIMPROF) indicated that the split between the groups was significant ( $P < 0.05$ ). No significant difference was apparent between the four mouth sites.

Communities did not differ in multivariate structure at other sites (Stations 2 - 5) within Group A or Group B (each sampled when the mouth was closed) and the null hypothesis of no difference between Stations 2 - 5 in March or July was therefore accepted ( $P > 0.05$ ). A significant difference was shown between sites C2 and C3 (shortly after the mouth opened in September) and for November (Group D) when community structure at the two lower sites (Stations 2 and 3) was significantly different from the two upper sites ( $P < 0.05$ ).

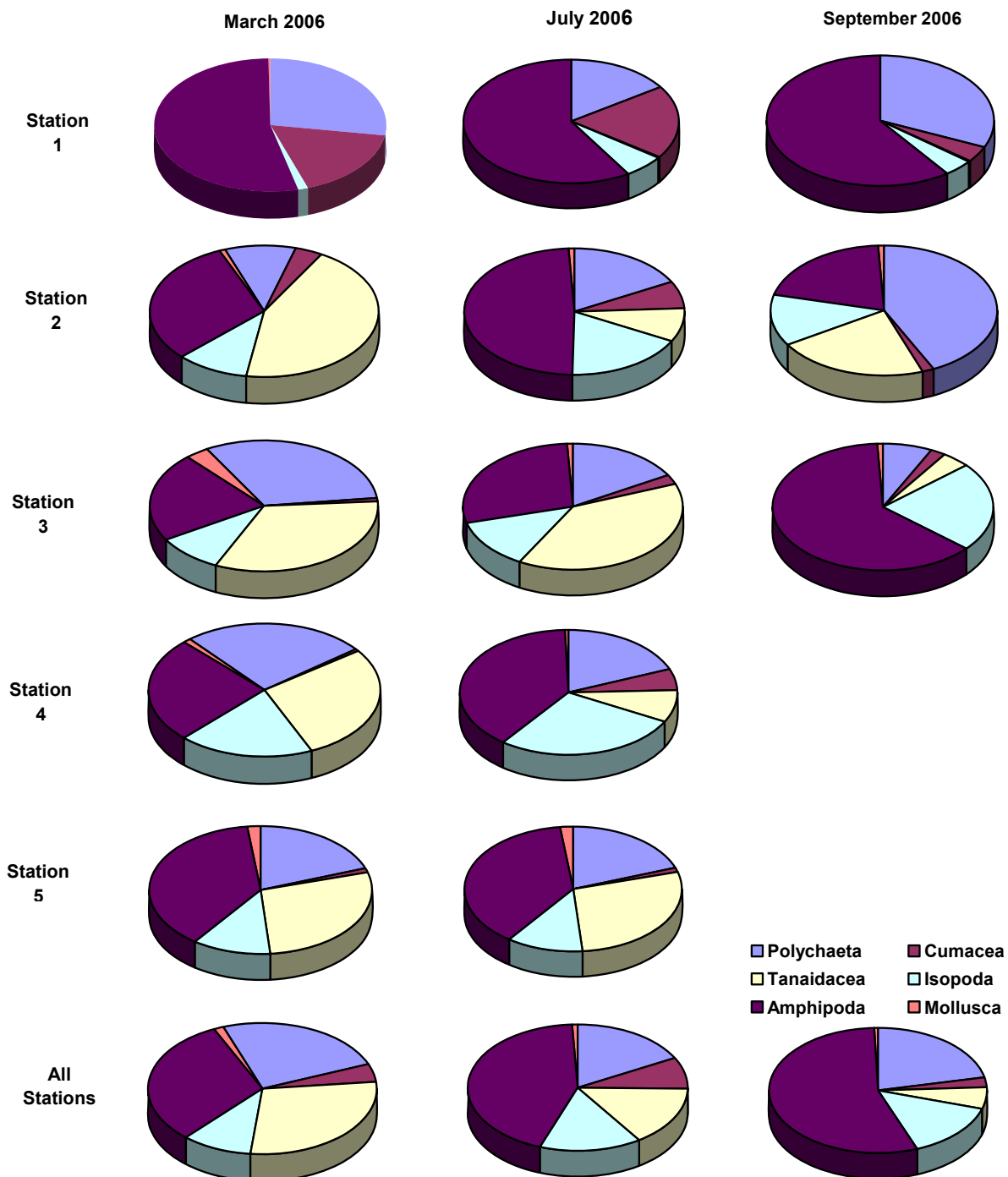


Figure 5. Proportion of the six most important taxonomic groups in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Data for five stations and three sampling trips. Only three stations were sampled in September.

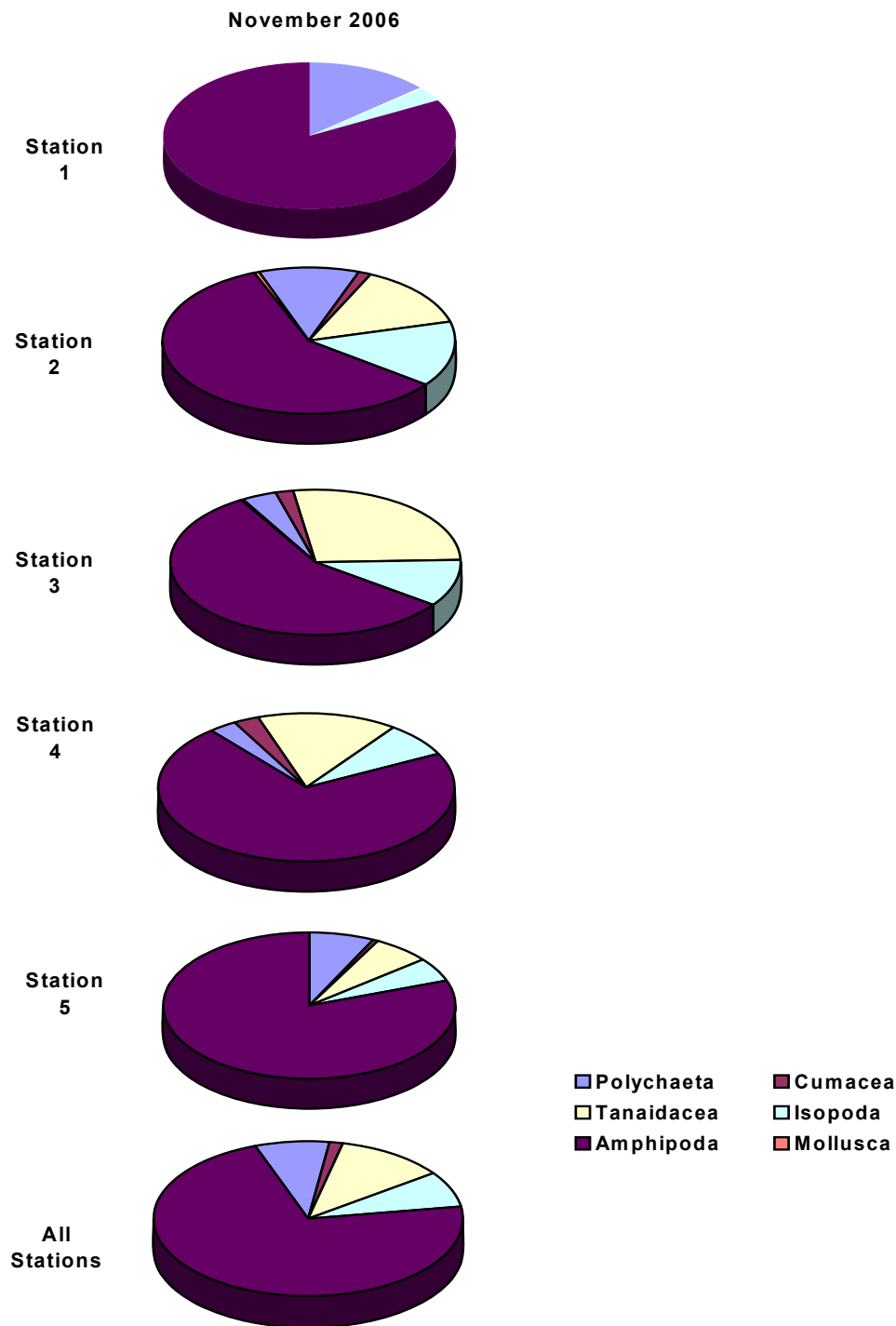


Figure 6. Proportion of the six most important taxonomic groups in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Data for five stations on the November 2006 sampling trip.

Non-metric multi-dimensional scaling (MDS) of all sites sampled over four sampling sessions (Figure 9) reflects the same pattern shown in Figure 8, with Sites 2 - 5 sampled in March, July and September grouping together at the 70% level. All mouth sites also grouped at the 70% level. The fourth sampling session grouped separately (Group D, November 2006) reflecting small changes in community composition (sites are 67.5% similar to all other sites sampled, Figure 8) after the mouth remained open for approximately 2 months.

Environmental variables were then matched to subtidal benthic assemblages for each trip using the BIO-ENV package to best explain biotic patterns. A Draftsman Plot was first used to identify environmental variables that were highly correlated. For example, integrated salinity, surface salinity and bottom salinity

were usually highly correlated leading to the exclusion of surface and bottom salinity readings from further analysis. A similar process of potential elimination was undertaken for other variables where multilevel readings were taken. Although up to four variables explained much of the correlation between environmental parameters measured and the subtidal benthic community composition and structure along the estuary (Table 3), sediment characteristics (including percentage organic matter) emerged as the most important on two of three occasions. In September, too few sampling sites were matched against the environmental variables to determine any correlation.

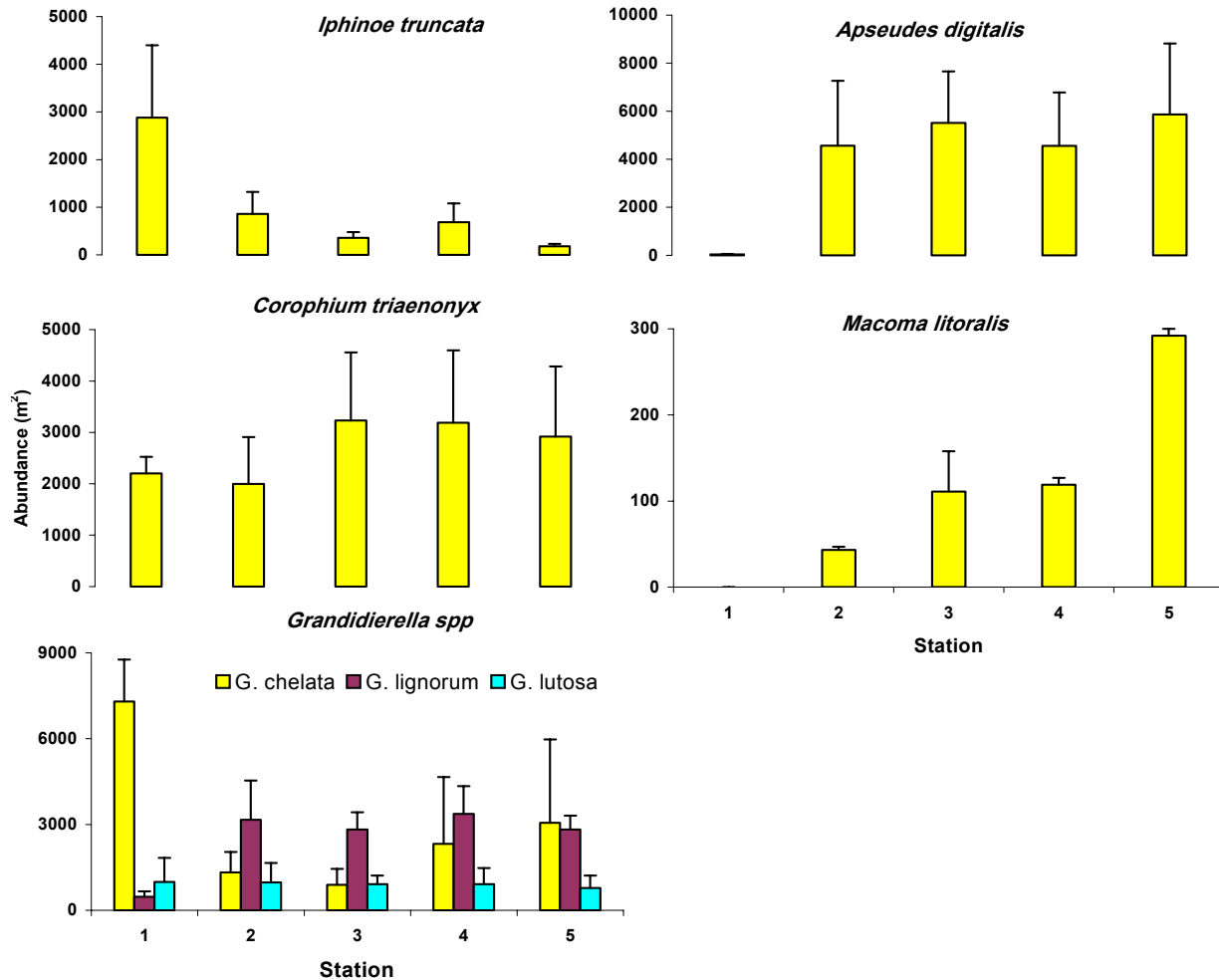


Figure 7. Mean abundance (numbers m<sup>-2</sup> +1SE) of seven of the most common zoobenthic species in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Data are for four sampling sessions between April and November 2006.

Table 3. Correlation between the subtidal benthic species assemblage and environmental variables for each of the four sampling trips to the East Kleinemonde Estuary, 2006.

Date	Variables	Correlation	Comments
March 2006	Integrated temperature, integrated O <sub>2</sub> , % fine sand and % organic matter	99%	% mud, % fine sand and % organic matter accounted for a correlation at the 79% level.
July 2006			
September 2006	Insufficient number of sampling sites	87%	% fine and coarse sand accounted for a correlation at the 58% level.
November 2006	Surface temperature, depth, % coarse sand		

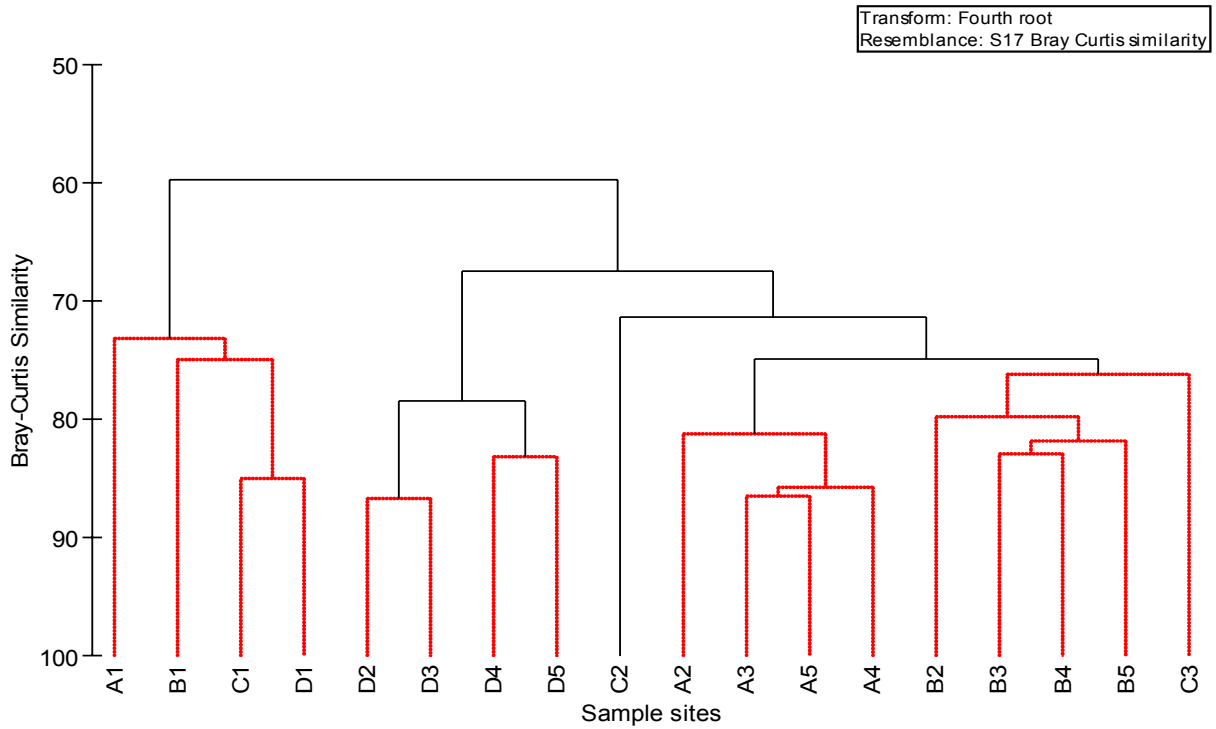


Figure 8. Bray-Curtis Similarity dendrogram based on macrobenthic composition and abundance at each sampling site in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Data represent four sampling trips (A = March, B = July, C = September, D = November 2006). Red hatched lines indicate those sites that do not vary from each other in multivariate structure ( $P > 0.05$ ).

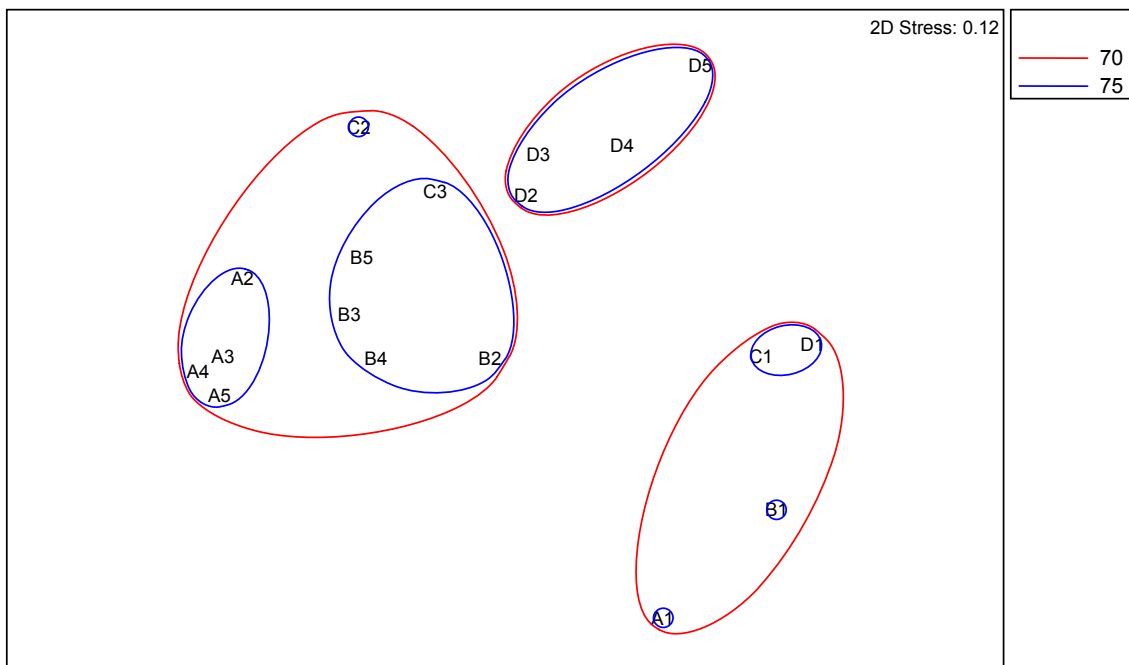


Figure 9. MDS plot based on macrobenthic composition and abundance at each sampling site in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Data represent four sampling trips (A = March, B = July, C = September, D = November 2006). Red lines group sites that are 70% similar in community structure; blue lines group sites that are 75% similar.

### Trophic linkages

Qualitative assessments of POM revealed that diatoms (particularly *Melosira* sp. and *Navicula* sp.) and flagellates were dominant at Station 1, while flagellates were the most important group at Station 5. At the latter station, diatoms (dominated by *Skeletonema* sp.) were of secondary importance. Flagellates were typically small, falling in the 1-20  $\mu\text{m}$  size class, while diatoms included both small (<20  $\mu\text{m}$ ) and large (>20  $\mu\text{m}$ ) species. Dinoflagellates, ciliates, euglenoids and amorphous detritus representing unidentified aggregates of matter presumably organic (origin uncertain), were observed at both stations.

Significant differences between  $^{15}\text{N}:^{14}\text{N}$  and C:N ratios of primary producers were recorded between Stations 1 and 5 (Figures 10-11, Table 4), with higher mean  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  values and lower mean C:N ratios at Station 1. This may be due to  $^{15}\text{N}$ -rich groundwater or human waste water inputs, which tend to have  $^{15}\text{N}:^{14}\text{N}$  ratios ranging from 2-8 ‰ and 10-20 ‰ respectively (McClelland, Valiela & Michener 1997). Fertilizer input from residential gardens on the steep northern bank opposite Station 1 could also contribute nitrogen to the system. These inputs appear to be localized, as enrichment effects were not observed for all producer species sampled at Station 1.

Table 4. Spatial variability (Mann-Whitney rank sum test) of isotope signatures of primary producers between Stations 1 and 5 (n.s. = no significant difference).

Isotope	T	P-level
$^{15}\text{N}$	1271.50	<0.00001
$^{13}\text{C}$	1208.00	n.s.
C/N	739.50	= 0.01

POM <20  $\mu\text{m}$  collected from Station 1 was enriched in  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  (8.09 ‰  $\pm$  1.26) and depleted in  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  (-28.47 ‰  $\pm$  0.89) compared to Station 5 (6.75 ‰  $\pm$  0.74 and -27.81 ‰  $\pm$  0.70) for  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  and  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  respectively (Figures 10-11). POM >20  $\mu\text{m}$  was depleted in both nitrogen (4.50 ‰  $\pm$  1.63) and carbon (-26.83 ‰  $\pm$  0.94) at Station 1, compared to the uppermost Station 5 (9.01 ‰  $\pm$  3.82  $^{15}\text{N}$  and -25.94 ‰  $\pm$  0.63  $^{13}\text{C}$ ).

Carbon stable isotope ratios of POM differed significantly between stations and particle size groups (Tables 5 and 6). POM >20  $\mu\text{m}$  was typically enriched in  $^{13}\text{C}$  compared to POM <20  $\mu\text{m}$ . Nitrogen ratios did not differ significantly between sites and particle size (Table 5).  $^{15}\text{N}$  of POM >20  $\mu\text{m}$ , however, differed significantly between stations, while the two particle size fractions at Station 1 also differed significantly (Table 6). C:N ratios showed no difference between stations or particle size groups (Table 5).

No quantitative data are available for the benthic microalgae. However, qualitative observations indicated that flagellates dominated the microphytobenthos at Station 1 (n = 5). Diatoms were the more important group at Station 5 (n = 3), with *Cymbella* sp and *Surirella* sp the most important genera.

Trophic levels were determined based on  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  enrichments proposed by McCutchan *et al.* (2003) and Minagawa & Wada (1984). Expected enrichments are given as 2.1  $\pm$  0.21‰ for whole animals and 2.9  $\pm$  0.32‰ for muscle tissue (McCutchan *et al.* 2003), or 3.4  $\pm$  1.1‰ (Minagawa and Wada 1984). For example at Station 1 (Figure 10), the difference in  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  of 3.39‰ between the carnivores (*Ceratonereis keiskama*, *Pontogeloides latipes*, *Cirolana fluviatilis* and *Cyathura estuaria*) and primary consumers represented by *Grandidierella* spp. and *Iphinoe truncata* was greater than the expected enrichment of 2.1‰ or 3.4‰. These two groups are, therefore, considered as separate trophic levels. There was no significant difference between the males of *Grandidierella chelata*, *G. lignorum* and *G. lutosa* and females of the different species, validating pooled samples for the purposes of isotope analysis (Table 7). The differences between predators (*Ceratonereis keiskama*, *Cyathura estuaria*, *Pontogeloides latipes* and *Cirolana fluviatilis*) mean  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  signatures and *Callianassa kraussi* was 0.52‰ and between predators and *Urothoe serrulidactylus* the difference was 1.61‰. These values were smaller than the nitrogen shifts expected for separate trophic levels (McCutchan *et al.* 2003, Minagawa & Wada 1984). This is supported by the overlap in nitrogen isotope ratios observed between these groups (Figure 10). This overlap with the carnivore group is probably due to the high nitrogen signature of the microphytobenthos (MPB), a possible food source for *U. serrulidactylus*. Similarly, the presence of *C. kraussi*, a suspension feeder, at a similar  $^{15}\text{N}$  level as the carnivores is due to the high nitrogen signals of its food source (POM).

The  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  signatures of the primary and secondary consumers at Station 1 reflect two broad feeding groups. *Callianassa kraussi* and *Corophium triaenonyx* feed on depleted sources of carbon (particularly 1-20  $\mu\text{m}$  size class POM), while primary food sources such as MPB, epiphytes and, to a marginal extent, vascular plants form the base of food chains that include a larger assemblage of species (*Urothoe serrulidactylus*, *Ceratonereis keiskama*, *Pontogeloides latipes*, *Cyathura estuaria*, *Iphinoe truncata*, *Grandidierella* spp. and *Cirolana fluviatilis*). Carbon signatures of carnivores indicate the utilisation of a wide range of prey items. Unidentifiable remains of polychaetes were also observed in the stomachs of *C. estuaria* and *C. fluviatilis*.

Carbon and nitrogen signatures of *Grandidierella* spp. and *Iphinoe truncata* overlap with those of MPB collected from the less developed southern bank of the estuary and epiphytes collected from *Phragmites australis*. The consumers are depleted in  $^{15}\text{N}$  relative to the primary producers, which may indicate mixed feeding on more than one source, including a source not collected. Based on  $^{13}\text{C}$  signatures however, both *Grandidierella* spp. and *I. truncata* preferentially feed on epiphytes and MPB algae not enriched in  $^{15}\text{N}$  and therefore not in areas of high seepage (northern shore).

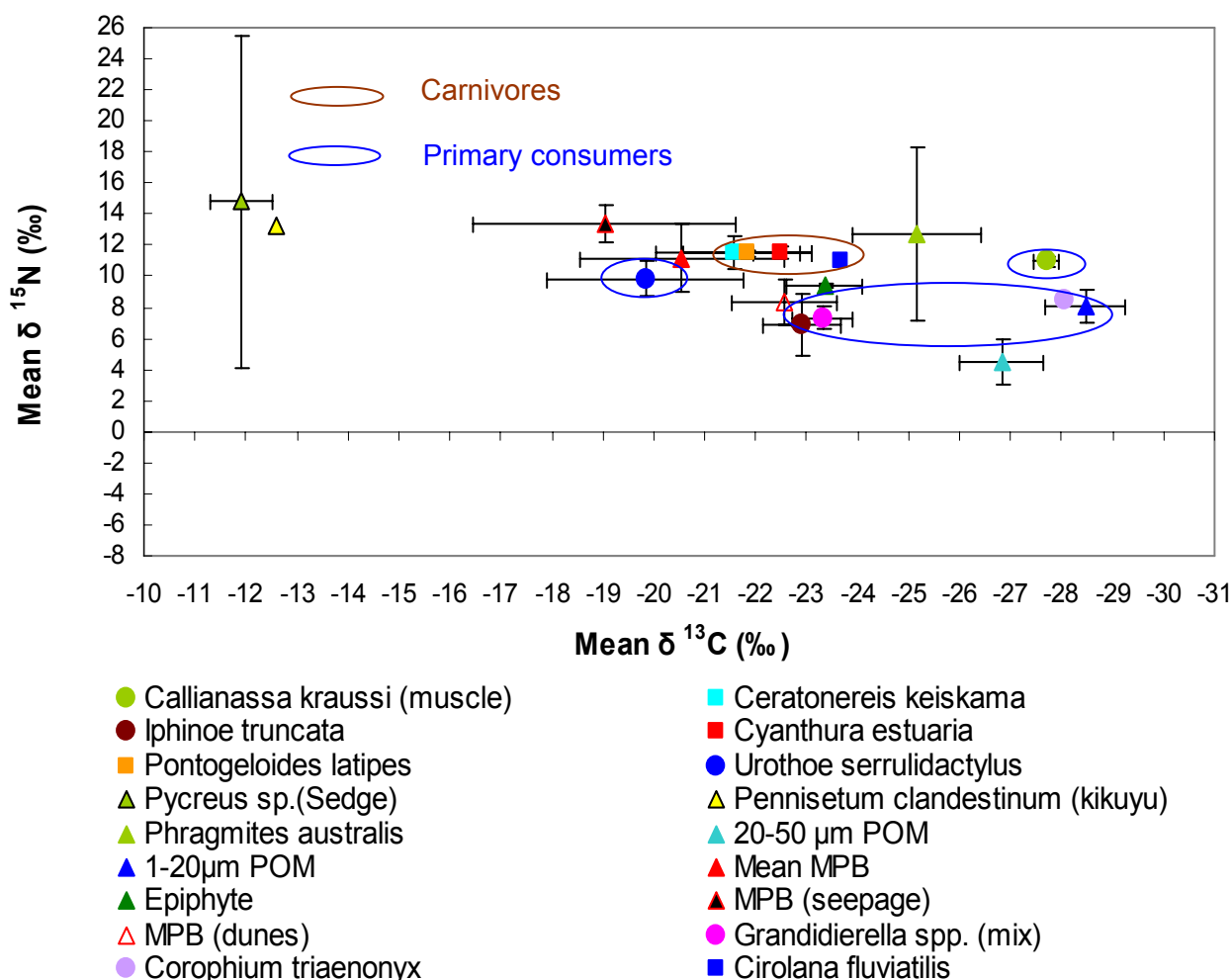


Figure 10. Mean  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  and  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  signatures ( $\pm 1$  SD) of primary producers and consumers at Station 1. Triangles indicate primary producers, circles primary consumers and squares the secondary consumers.

As in the case of Station 1, two distinct trophic levels were identified among the consumers at Station 5 (Figure 11). Predators (*Cyathura estuaria*, *Dendronereis arborifera*, *Ceratonereis keiskama* and *Cirolana fluviatilis*) reflected mean  $^{15}\text{N}$  values between 12 and 14 ‰. *Macoma littoralis* and *Sanguinolaria capensis* had  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  signatures similar to that of the predators. A second trophic level (*Grandidierella* spp and *Apeudes digitalis*), *Corophium triaenonyx* and *Solen cylindraceus* was identified since  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  values reflected a difference  $>3.4$  ‰ when compared to the predators (Minagawa & Wada 1984, McCutchen *et al.* 2003).

Mean  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  signatures for predators were more spread when compared to the same group at Station 1, ranging between -22 and -26‰ (-21.5 and -24‰ at Station 1). *Corophium triaenonyx* and *Solen cylindraceus* at Station 5 were more depleted in  $^{13}\text{C}$  compared to the group at Station 1, even though POM (1 - 20  $\mu\text{m}$ ) signatures were slightly enriched in the former (Figures 10 and 11). *Grandidierella* spp. and *Apseudes digitalis* had carbon signatures that overlapped those of epiphytes, *Phragmites australis* and  $\text{C}_3$  sedges, suggesting that these primary producers were the main food source.

Table 5. 2-Way analysis of variance comparing isotope signatures of POM, for particle size groups (1 - 20  $\mu\text{m}$  and 20 - 60  $\mu\text{m}$ ) and station (n.s. indicates no significant difference).

Isotope	Factor	F	d.f.	P-level
$^{15}\text{N}$	Particle size (PS)	0.46	1	n.s.
	Station	2.59	1	n.s.
	PS vs Station	8.82	1	< 0.01
$^{13}\text{C}$	Particle size (PS)	24.07	1	< 0.001
	Station	4.75	1	< 0.05
	PS vs Station	0.11	1	n.s.
C:N	Particle size (PS)	2.64	1	n.s.
	Station	0.16	1	n.s.
	PS vs Station	1.92	1	n.s.

Table 6. Tukey *post hoc* tests for the comparison of POM isotope signatures for particle sizes and stations.

Isotope	Factors	Within-factor comparison	q	P-level
$^{15}\text{N}$	Particle size vs Station	Stations within 20 - 50 $\mu\text{m}$ POM	4.58	< 0.01
		POM within Station 1	3.65	< 0.05
$^{13}\text{C}$	Particle size		6.94	< 0.001
	Station		3.08	< 0.05

Table 7. Comparison (1-Way ANOVA and Kruskal-Wallis ANOVA on Ranks if not normally distributed) between isotope signatures of male *Grandidierella chelata*, *G. lignorum*, *G. lutosa* and females of the three species (n.s. = no significant difference).

Isotope	Statistic	D.f.	P-level
$^{15}\text{N}$	F = 0.726987	2	n.s.
$^{13}\text{C}$	H = 3.65976	3	n.s.

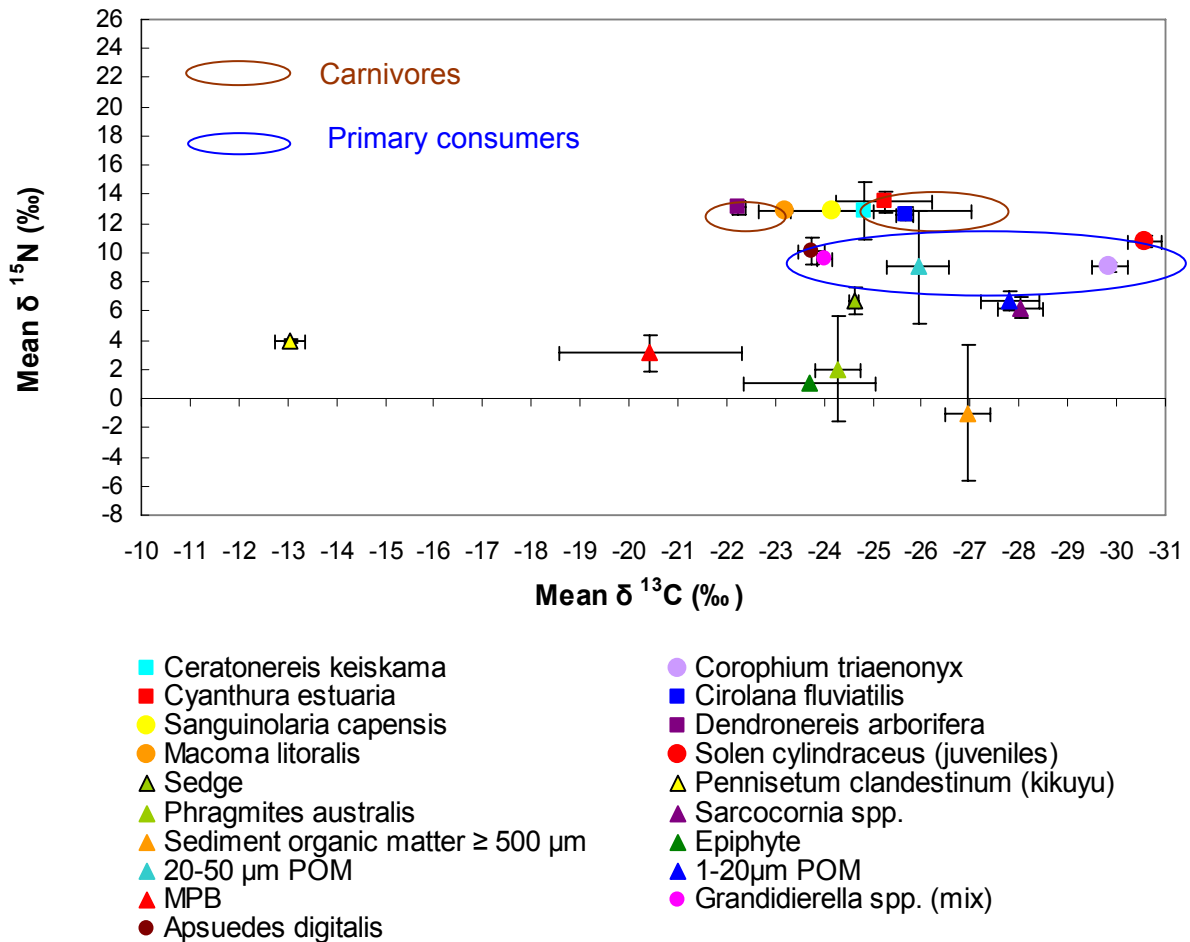


Figure 11. Mean  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  and  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  signatures ( $\pm 1$  SD) of primary producers and consumers (Station 5). Triangles indicate primary producers, circles primary consumers and squares secondary consumers.

## DISCUSSION

Typically, temporarily open/closed estuaries support fewer species compared to permanently open estuaries experiencing strong marine influence (Table 8). Strong freshwater influence or river dominance also leads to relatively low species richness. In the present study, 31 macrobenthic species were identified, supporting the model recorded by Teske & Wooldridge (2001). These values on the number of species in the East Kleinemonde Estuary fall in the upper quartile for TOCEs in the region (Table 8). Although fewer species are usually present in TOCE's, the density of species can be higher compared to permanently open systems (Teske & Wooldridge 2001).

Temporal and spatial variation in the horizontal salinity gradient, mouth condition and sediment type all influence estuarine benthic community composition and structure. Salinity variation and sediment characteristics are considered prime external regulatory factors (e.g. Carriker 1967, Wolff 1983, de Villiers *et al.* 1999, McLusky & Elliott 2004), although their relative influence is variable over time and space. In local estuaries salinity is more important as a regulatory factor at the extremes of the horizontal salinity gradient. The degree of marine dominance affects the species assemblage in the lower estuary, while at the head freshwater inflow influences the assemblage in the low salinity zone at the head (Teske & Wooldridge 2003). Both these community types were absent from the East Kleinemonde Estuary during the present study, probably due to the persistence of the closed mouth and low freshwater inflow that lead to euryhaline conditions throughout the estuary.

In the present study, variation in salinity along the East Kleinemonde Estuary did not exceed two during the closed phase (March and July). The recorded range is not unexpected, since periods of estuary mouth closure (months) usually lead to a horizontal salinity gradient that becomes less marked (Day 1981a). After breaching in August, the water level dropped significantly and the salinity difference between Stations 1 and 3 was 6.2, a month after the breaching event. At the time of sampling in September, water depth precluded

any sampling further upstream. The mouth again closed ca. three weeks prior to sampling in November, leading to an increase in water depth. On the last sampling trip, the salinity range between the mouth and the upper station was 5.1 psu.

Sediment type is also a key factor that structures estuarine benthic communities (e.g. Boesch 1973, Day 1981b, Bachelet *et al.* 1996, McLusky & Elliott 2004). In a study of 13 South African estuaries having widely different abiotic attributes (state of the mouth, salinity distribution, etc), Teske & Wooldridge (2003, 2004) concluded that composition of the euryhaline subtidal benthic assemblage was mainly influenced by the nature of the substratum. Two groups were distinguished; an estuarine sand fauna and an estuarine mud fauna. Sediment characteristics also include other parameters such as organic content.

Table 8. Number of species recorded in the subtidal benthos in permanently open and temporarily open/closed systems, using a 500 µm mesh sieve. Examples include estuaries from all three biogeographical regions around the coast of South Africa. A description of the degree of marine or freshwater dominance in permanently open systems, based on salinity values, is provided in the references. No sub-categories are shown for TOCE's, as salinity is variable and linked to the state of the mouth.

Estuary type	Number of species	References
Permanently open estuaries:		
<i>Strong marine influence</i>		
Mngazana	61	Thwala (2004)
Kariega	48	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Kromme	48	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Swartkops	42	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
<i>Strong freshwater influence</i>		
Great Berg	32	Wooldridge (unpublished data)
Great Fish	22	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Keiskamma	23	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Olifants	23	Wooldridge (unpublished data)
Sundays	23	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Temporarily open estuaries:		
East Kleinemonde	30	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Gqutywa	29	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Kabeljous	28	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Mngazi	29	Wooldridge (unpublished data)
Mpekweni	29	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Mtati	24	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Old Womans	21	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)
Van Stadens	24	Teske & Wooldridge (2001)

In the present study, true estuarine or euryhaline species characterised the benthic assemblage at all stations. Within this assemblage, similarity analysis showed a significant difference between Station 1 and all other sites for all sampling trips. The composition and structure of the community at Station 1 also remained relatively stable, with no significant statistical evidence for any substructures between the four visits. These results reflect community resilience at Station 1, despite changes in the state of the mouth or salinity shifts over the sampling period. Biotic variability increased at sites above the mouth station, particularly during the open phase. In March and July, the community was relatively homogeneous at Stations 2 - 5 with no significant differences between them. After the mouth had remained open for about one month, the community developed very different sub-structures in September at the two upper sites sampled. This was in response to the environmental changes brought about by the draining of the estuary after mouth opening. The estuary mouth remained mostly open for another month and data suggest that a distinct upper estuarine community (Stations 4 - 5) had developed relative to the community at Stations 2 and 3. This was due to a relatively strong inflow of freshwater that also helped maintain the open mouth condition over the two months.

Euryhaline conditions and a weak horizontal salinity gradient persisted during the study period in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. No marine associated assemblage developed, even during the open mouth phase. Instead, the community was composed of mostly estuarine endemic species. These estuarine resident communities have low species richness, high resilience to environmental fluctuations and are structured mainly by sediment characteristics (Teske & Wooldridge 2001, 2003). A sand associated fauna characterized the assemblage at Station 1 in the East Kleinemonde estuary, while further upstream, a fauna typical of muddy substrata persisted. Low species richness in the estuary is also influenced by specific life history requirements. The mudprawn *Upogebia africana* for example, is probably excluded from the benthic community since it requires an open tidal inlet in order to complete its life cycle (Wooldridge 1999). Other examples include numerous crab species (Hill 1975, Pereyra Lago 1993, Papadopoulos *et al.* 2002).

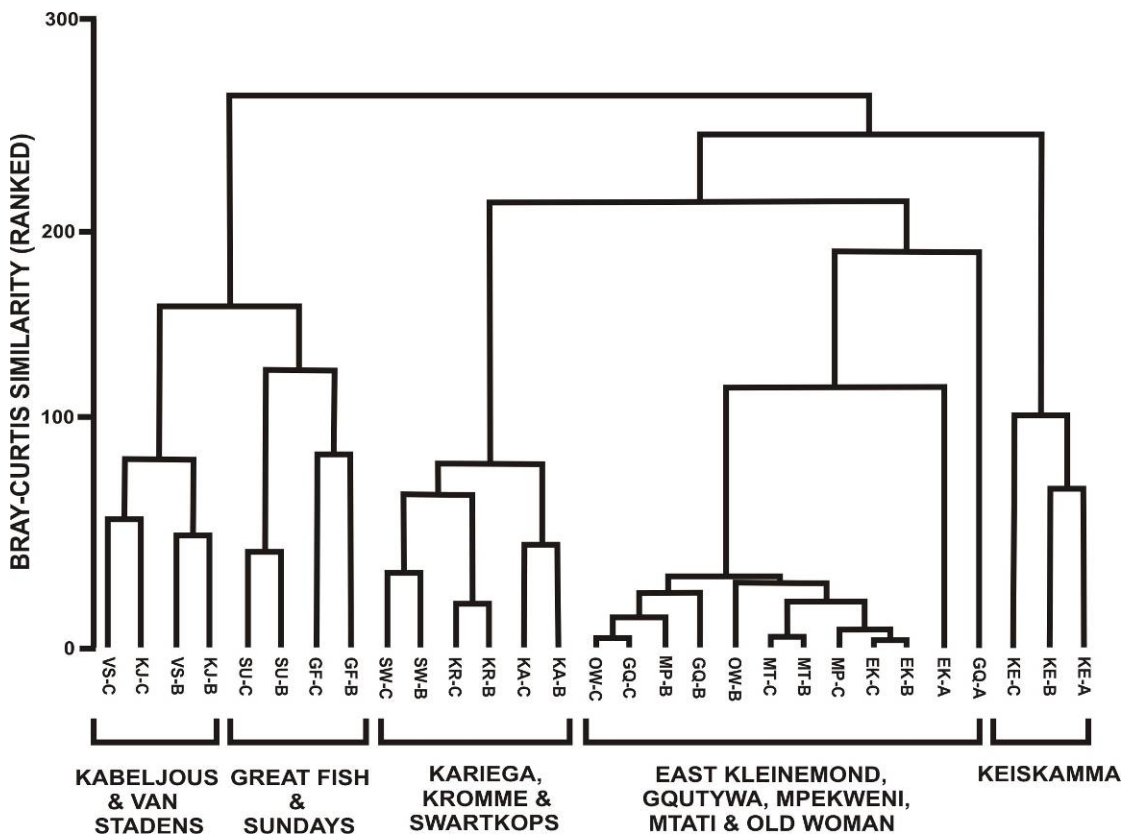


Figure 12. Hierarchical clustering of benthic community structure in 13 estuaries in the warm temperate region. Data based on three field trips, February 1998 (A), June 1998 (B) and December 1998/January 1999 (C). Modified from Teske & Wooldridge (2001).

Although the macrobenthic fauna in the East Kleinemonde Estuary demonstrated spatial and temporal shifts in community structure over the study period, an underlying basic pattern persisted. This would suggest that estuarine types (Whitfield 1992) support assemblages relatively unique to an estuarine type, a concept already described by Teske & Wooldridge (2001) for the macrobenthos. In their study, data were collected over three field trips from 13 estuaries (Teske & Wooldridge 2001).

Characteristic estuarine macrobenthic assemblages described by Teske & Wooldridge (2001) are shown in Figure 12. Hierarchical clustering based on presence/absence of species provided distinct estuarine groups linked to the supply of freshwater and mouth condition. Although the pattern is not precise, broad estuarine groups were identified:

- POEs having a persistent and full horizontal salinity gradient (Great Fish, Sundays and the Keiskamma estuaries – the latter also subject to frequent floods and a high silt input).
- Marine dominated POEs with a weak or reverse horizontal salinity gradient (Kariega, Kromme and Swartkops estuaries).
- Two groups of TOCEs (Kabeljous, Van Stadens and a larger group consisting of the East Kleinemonde, Gqutywa, Mpekwani, Mtati and the Old Womans).

Although two distinct feeding lineages were identified at both the lower and upper site in the East Kleinemonde Estuary, POM did not appear to represent a major source of carbon for the macrobenthic community. These  $^{13}\text{C}$  signatures were depleted relative to typical marine POM signatures and some estuarine systems (Gearing *et al.* 1984, Kibirige *et al.* 2002, Mbande *et al.* 2004), but were similar to values recorded for the Sundays Estuary (Jerling & Wooldridge 1995). The depleted  $^{13}\text{C}$ : $^{12}\text{C}$  ratios found for POM could be due to the recycling of respired  $\text{CO}_2$ , which is typically depleted in  $^{13}\text{C}$  (Smith *et al.* 1976). This could be expected under closed mouth conditions and/or low freshwater inflow. Other possible reasons include high lipid content (Fry & Wainright 1991), low growth rate (Fry & Wainright 1991) or low available inorganic nutrients in the water column (Simenstad & Wissmar 1985, Bouillon *et al.* 2004).

The amphipod *Corophium triaenonyx*, the sandprawn *Callinassa kraussi* and pencil bait (*Solen cylindraceus*) were the only species identified feeding on POM in the present study. *C. triaenonyx* was recorded at both study sites and was shown to have a more depleted level of  $^{13}\text{C}$  in the upper estuary compared to the mouth station, even though  $^{13}\text{C}$  of POM <20  $\mu\text{m}$  was slightly but significantly more enriched at station 5. These three species may selectively filter  $^{13}\text{C}$ -depleted organic matter from the water column, either based on particle size or organic content. Selective feeding by filter feeders has been demonstrated by authors such as Bouillon *et al.* (2004). The carbon stable isotope ratios for POM differed significantly between stations and particle sizes, although this difference was generally small. This trend was also reported for other systems (Froneman 2002) and may be the result of greater differential enrichment of  $^{13}\text{C}$  for various phytoplankton species. In the present study, diatoms dominated at the lower study site and small flagellates at the upper site. Diatoms were shown to be more  $^{13}\text{C}$ -enriched relative to flagellates (Gearing *et al.* 1984 and Fry & Wainright 1991), but the opposite was shown in the present study and may be due to other components affecting the signature. Epiphytes and microbenthic algae were the most important primary sources of carbon for the macrozoobenthos in the East Kleinemonde Estuary, supporting the pattern shown for estuarine fauna by other studies (Froneman 2002, Kibirige *et al.* 2002).

## REFERENCES

- Bachelet, G., de Montaudouin, X. & Dauvin, J.-C. 1996. The quantitative distribution of subtidal macrozoobenthic assemblages in Arcachon Bay in relation to environmental factors: a multivariate analysis. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 42: 371-391.
- Boesch, D.F. 1973. Classification and community structure of macrobenthos in the Hampton Roads area, Virginia. *Marine Biology* 21: 226-244.
- Bouillon, S., Koedam, N., Baeyens, W., Satyanarayana, B. & Dehairs, F. 2004. Selectivity of subtidal benthic invertebrate communities for local microalgal production in an estuarine mangrove ecosystem during the post-monsoon period. *Journal of Sea Research* 51: 133-144.
- Bunn, S.E., Loneragan, N.R. & Kempster, M.A. 1995. Effects of acid washing on stable isotope ratios of C and N in penaeid shrimp and seagrass: Implications for food-web studies using multiple stable isotopes. *Limnology and Oceanography* 40: 622-625.
- Carriker, M.R. 1967. Ecology of estuarine benthic invertebrates: a perspective. pp 442-487. In: G.H. Lauff (ed.), *Estuaries*. American Association for the Advancement of Science, Washington, DC.
- Day, J.H. 1981a. Chapter 3. Estuarine currents, salinities and temperatures. pp. 27-44. In: Day, J.H. (ed.), *Estuarine Ecology with particular reference to southern Africa*. A.A. Balkema, Cape Town.
- Day, J.H. 1981b. Chapter 9. The estuarine fauna. pp. 147-186. In: Day, J.H. (ed.), *Estuarine Ecology with particular reference to southern Africa*. A.A. Balkema, Cape Town.
- de Villiers, C., Hodgson, A. & Forbes, A.T. 1999. Studies on estuarine macrobenthos. pp. 167-207. In: Allanson, B.R. & Baird, D. (eds), *Estuaries of South Africa*. Cambridge University Press, UK.
- Fantle, M.S., Dittel, A.I., Schwalm, S.M., Epifanio, C.E. & Fogel, M.L. 1999. A food web analysis of the juvenile blue crab, *Callinectes sapidus*, using stable isotopes in whole animals and individual amino acids. *Oecologia* 120: 416-426.
- Forbes, A.T. 1973. An unusual abbreviated larval life in the estuarine burrowing prawn, *Callinassa kraussi* (Crustacea: Decapoda: Thalassinidea). *Marine Biology* 22: 361-365.
- Forbes, A.T. 1977. Maintenance of non-breeding populations of the estuarine prawn *Callinassa kraussi* (Crustacea, Anomura, Thalassinidea). *Zoologica Africana* 13: 33-40.
- Froneman, P.W. 2002. Food web structure in three contrasting estuaries determined using stable isotopes ( $\delta^{13}\text{C}$ ) analysis. *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 27: 107-115.
- Fry, B., Wainright, S.C. 1991. Diatom sources of  $^{13}\text{C}$ -rich carbon in marine food webs. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 76: 149-157.
- Gearing, J.N., Gearing, P.J., Rudnick, D.T., Requejo, A.G. & Hutchings, M.J. 1984. Isotopic variability of organic carbon in a phytoplankton-based temperate estuary. *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta* 48: 1089-1098.
- Hill, B.J. 1975. Abundance, breeding and growth of the crab *Scylla serrata* in two South African estuaries. *Marine Biology* 32: 119-126.

- Jacob, U., Mintenbeck, K., Brey, T., Knust, R. & Beyer, K. 2005. Stable isotope food web studies: a case for standardized sample treatment. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 287: 251-253.
- Jerling, H.L. & Wooldridge, T.H. 1995. Relatively negative  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  ratios of mesozooplankton in the Sundays River Estuary, comments on potential carbon sources. *South African Journal of Aquatic Science* 21: 71-77.
- Kibirige, I., Perissinotto, R., & Nozais, C. 2002. Alternative food sources of zooplankton in a temporarily-open estuary: evidence from  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  and  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$ . *Journal of Plankton Research* 24: 1089-1095.
- Mbande, S., Froneman, W., & Whitfield, A.K. 2004. The primary carbon sources utilised by fishes in the Mngazi and Mngazana Estuaries, South Africa: a preliminary assessment. *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 29: 195-204.
- McClelland, J.W., Valiela, I. & Michener, R.H. 1997. Nitrogen-stable isotope signatures in estuarine food webs: A record of increasing urbanisation in coastal watersheds. *Limnology and Oceanography*. 42: 930-937.
- McCutchan, J.H. Jr., Lewis, W.M. Jr., Kendall, C. & McGrath, C.C. 2003. Variation in trophic shift for stable isotope ratios of carbon, nitrogen and sulfur. *Oikos* 102: 378-390.
- McLusky, D.S. & Elliott, M. 2004. *The estuarine ecosystem. Ecology, threats and management.* Oxford University Press. 214 pp.
- Minagawa, M., & Wada, E. 1984. Stepwise enrichment of  $^{15}\text{N}$  along food chains: Further evidence and the relation between  $\delta^{15}\text{N}$  and animal age. *Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta* 48: 1135-1140.
- Papadopoulos, I., Wooldridge, T.H. & Newman, B.K. 2002. Larval life history strategies of sub-tropical southern African estuarine brachyuran crabs and implications for tidal inlet management. *Wetlands Ecology and Management* 10: 249-256.
- Pereyra Lago, R. 1993. Tidal exchange of larvae of *Sesarma catenata* (Decapoda, Brachyura) in the Swartkops estuary, South Africa. *South African Journal of Zoology* 28: 182-191.
- Riera, P., Richard, P., Grémare, A. & Blanchard, G. 1996. Food source of intertidal nematodes in the Bay of Marennes-Oléron (France), as determined by dual stable isotope analysis. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*. 142: 303-309.
- Sánchez-Paz, A., García-Carreño, F., Muhlia-Almazán, A., Peregrino-Uriarte, A.B., Hernández-López, J. & Yepiz-Plascencia G. 2006. Usage of energy reserves in crustaceans during starvation: Status and future directions. *Insect Biochemistry and Molecular Biology* 36: 241-249.
- Simenstad, C.A. & Wissmar, R.C. 1985.  $\delta^{13}\text{C}$  Evidence of the origins and fates of organic carbon in estuarine and nearshore food webs. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 22: 141-152.
- Smith, B.N., Oliver, J. & Millan, C.M.C. 1976. Influence of carbon source, oxygen concentration, light intensity and temperature on  $^{12}\text{C}/^{13}\text{C}$  ratios in plant tissues. *Botanical Gazette* 137: 99-104.
- Teske, P.R. & Wooldridge, T.H. 2001. A comparison of the macrobenthic faunas of permanently open and temporarily open/closed South African estuaries. *Hydrobiologia* 464: 227-243.
- Teske, P.R. & Wooldridge, T.H. 2003. What limits the distribution of subtidal macrobenthos in permanently open and temporarily open/closed South African estuaries? Salinity vs sediment particle size. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 57: 225-238.
- Teske, P.R. & Wooldridge, T.H. 2004. Affinities of some common estuarine macroinvertebrates to salinity and sediment type: empirical data from Eastern Cape estuaries, South Africa. *African Zoology* 39: 183-192.
- Thwala, N.N. 2004. The subtidal macrozoobenthos of Mngazana estuary in the Eastern Cape, South Africa. Unpublished MSc dissertation, University of Port Elizabeth.
- Turpie, J. 2004. Existing data on area, plants, invertebrates, fish and birds of South African estuaries. In: Adams, J.B (ed.), *Contributions to information requirements for the implementation of Resource Directed Measures for estuaries. Vol. 1. Improving the biodiversity importance rating of South African estuaries.* WRC Report No: 1247/1/04, pp 7-36.
- Vorwerk, P.D., Whitfield, A.K., Cowley, P.D. & Paterson, A.W. 2001. A survey of selected Eastern Cape Estuaries with particular reference to the ichthyofauna. *Ichthyological Buletin of the JLB Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown, South Africa.* 72: 1-52.
- Whitfield, A.K. 1992. A characterization of South African estuaries, *Southern African Journal of Aquatic Science* 18: 89-103.
- Whitfield, A.K. & Wood, A.D. 2003. Studies on the river-estuary interface region of selected Eastern Cape estuaries. WRC Report No. 756/1/03. 313 pp.
- Wolff, W.J. 1983. Estuarine benthos. pp. 151-182. In: Ketchum B.H. (Ed.), *Estuaries and enclosed seas.* Elsevier, Amsterdam.
- Wooldridge, T.H. 1999. Estuarine zooplankton community structure and dynamics. pp 167-207. In: Allanson, B.R. & Baird, D. (eds), *Estuaries of South Africa.* Cambridge University Press, UK.

**Appendix I**

**Specialist Report: Zooplankton and Hyperbenthos**

**PW Froneman  
(Rhodes University, Grahamstown)**

## INTRODUCTION

A number of studies have described the zooplankton community structure within temporarily open/closed estuaries (TOCEs) in both the subtropical and warm temperate regions along the South African coastline (Froneman 2002a, 2002b, Walker *et al.* 2001, Perissinotto *et al.* 2000, Kibirige & Perissinotto 2003a, 2003b, Kibirige *et al.* 2006). Results of these investigations suggest that the zooplankton biomass within these systems may attain levels equivalent to those found in the more productive permanently open estuaries (POEs) within the same geographic region (Perissinotto *et al.* 2000). Among the zooplankton, copepods of the genera, *Pseudodiaptomus* and *Acartia* numerically and by biomass dominate the zooplankton community (Perissinotto *et al.* 2000, Froneman 2002a, 2004, Kibirige & Perissinotto 2003b). Locally, mysids may also contribute to the total zooplankton abundance and biomass (Kibirige & Perissinotto 2003a). Temporal changes in the zooplankton community structure and biomass in TOCEs have been linked to a variety of factors including mouth condition, freshwater inflow and water temperature (Perissinotto *et al.* 2000, Froneman 2002a, 2004, Kibirige & Perissinotto 2003b).

The caridean shrimp, *Palaemon peringueyi*, has been identified as the dominant component of the hyperbenthos in both permanently open and temporarily open/closed southern African estuaries (Emmerson 1986, de Villiers *et al.* 1999, Bernard & Froneman 2005). A recent investigation in the temporarily open/closed Grants Estuary on the east coast of southern African indicated that recruitment of juvenile *P. peringueyi* into the estuary occurred mainly during breaching events and that the overwash of marine water into the estuary played only a minor role (Froneman 2006). The study further demonstrated that the abundance and biomass of the shrimp in the temporarily open/closed estuary was lower than that recorded in permanently open systems. The reduced values recorded in the former system could be ascribed to reduced recruitment opportunities and limited habitat availability, mainly submerged beds of macrophytes (Bernard & Froneman 2005).

This report focuses on the more recent work on the zooplankton (Part 1) and the caridean shrimp, *Palaemon peringueyi* (Part 2) in East Kleinemonde Estuary.

## PART 1: Zooplankton

### Biological sampling procedures

Zooplankton community structure and biomass at each station was determined from net tows (n = 3 for each station) that were conducted during the day (09:00 - 12:00) and night (19:00 - 21:00) using a WP-2 net (mouth size 0.78 m<sup>2</sup>; mesh size 90 µm) towed at the surface (approximately 0.5 m depth). The net was fitted with a flow meter to determine the amount of water filtered during each tow. The volume filtered during the tows varied between 5.3 and 12.8 m<sup>3</sup> and towing speed varied between 1.5 and 3 knots. Upper, middle and lower reaches estuary stations were sampled to assess spatial patterns in the zooplankton.

### Biological sample treatment

The samples collected were immediately fixed in 10% buffered (hexamine) formalin. Species composition within each zooplankton group was assessed in the laboratory. Total dry mass of each zooplankton group was determined after oven drying (60°C for 24 h) a sub-sample (1/8 to 1/16) using a Folsom plankton splitter. Data were expressed as mg dry mass m<sup>-3</sup>.

### Statistical analyses

To compare the zooplankton communities during the sampling trips, hierarchical cluster analysis was used in conjunction with the Bray-Curtis Similarity index. Species abundance data were log transformed [ $\log(x+1)$ ] in order to reduce bias due to highly abundant species (Legendre & Legendre 1983). The similarity analysis programs, ANOSIM and SIMPER of the Plymouth Routine in Multivariate Ecological Research (PRIMER) computer package (Clarke & Warwick 1982) were used according to the procedure described by Field *et al.* (1982) to test the significance levels and sources of variance between the various zooplankton assemblages associated with the different groupings identified in the hierarchical cluster analysis.

## RESULTS

### Zooplankton abundances and biomass

Unfortunately due to the shallow water depth, no samples were collected from the upper reaches of the estuary over the period August to October. Total zooplankton abundance and biomass within the East Kleinemonde Estuary demonstrated a distinct temporal pattern with the daytime values significantly lower than the night-time values ( $P < 0.05$  in both cases). The mean total zooplankton abundance and biomass during the daytime ranged from 958 to 4678 ind.  $m^{-3}$  and between 8.95 and 16.46 mg dry mass  $m^{-3}$ , respectively (Figures 1A and 1B). During the night-time, total zooplankton abundances varied from 3018 to 18116 individuals  $m^{-3}$  while the biomass ranged from 18.97 to 40.73 mg dry mass  $m^{-3}$  (Figures 1A and 1B). Although there were no significant temporal patterns in total zooplankton abundance and biomass during the study, there was some evidence to suggest that the breaching events were associated with a decrease in both the total zooplankton abundance and biomass (Figures 1A and 1B). Spearman rank correlation analysis revealed significant correlation between total zooplankton biomass and temperature ( $R = 0.73$ ;  $P < 0.05$ ).

### Community composition

In the absence of any significant spatial differences in the zooplankton biomass during the study, zooplankton densities for each month were pooled. Results of the numerical analysis revealed the presence of two distinct zooplankton groupings during the study (Figure 2). The first grouping comprised those stations that were occupied during the first seven months (January to July) of the survey. The second grouping comprised those months that were occupied following the major breaching of the estuary in August. ANOSIM indicated that the two groupings were significantly different from one another. ( $R = 0.667$ ;  $P < 0.05$ ). The five most numerical abundant species accounting for up to 95% of the similarity within each grouping identified with the hierarchical cluster analyses is shown in Table 1. SIMPER analyses indicated that the separation of the two-zooplankton groupings could be linked to shifts in the numerically dominant zooplankton species. Within grouping 1, the total zooplankton abundance was numerically dominated by estuarine copepods *Pseudodiaptomus hessei*, *Acartia longipatella* and *Halicyclops* spp, which collectively accounted for > 86% of all zooplankton counted. Following the breaching event in August, the zooplankton community was well represented by both estuarine (*P. hessei* and *A. longipatella*) and marine breeding species including an unidentified chaetognath species of the genus *Eukrohnia*, the copepods *Calanus simillimus*, *C. agulhensis*, *Clausocalanus* sp. and *Oithona plumifera* and juvenile *Palaemon peringueyi*. Collectively the marine species contributed between 18 and 36% of all zooplankton counted.

The estimates of total zooplankton abundance and biomass during the present study are in the range reported for other TOCEs both within the same geographic region (Froneman 2002a, 2002b, 2004) and within the warm temperate region of the South African coastline (Kibirige & Perissinotto 2003, Kibirige *et al.* 2006). Breaching events in the East Kleinemonde were associated with a decline in the total zooplankton abundance and biomass within the estuary (Table 1). The observed decrease is consistent with the published literature and can be related to the export of the biomass rich estuarine waters into the marine environment (Froneman 2004).

Results of the numerical analyses indicate that mouth phase plays a critical role in determining the zooplankton species composition within the East Kleinemonde estuary (Figure 2). In the absence of any direct link to the marine environment, the zooplankton community was numerically dominated by typical estuarine copepod species of the genera, *Pseudodiaptomus*, *Acartia* and *Halicyclops* which collectively contributed > 86% of all the zooplankton counted (Table 1).

The establishment of a link to the marine environment following the breaching of the estuary in August coincided with a decrease in the estuarine copepod species and an increased contribution of marine breeding zooplankton species within the estuary (Table 1). The absence of any distinct change in the zooplankton community structure following the breaching event in June, however, suggests that the influence of these events on the zooplankton community structure demonstrates a high degree of temporal variability. The absence of any direct response can likely be related to both the magnitude of the breaching event as well as the availability of recruiters within the surface zone adjacent to the estuary (Froneman 2002a, Kemp & Froneman 2004).

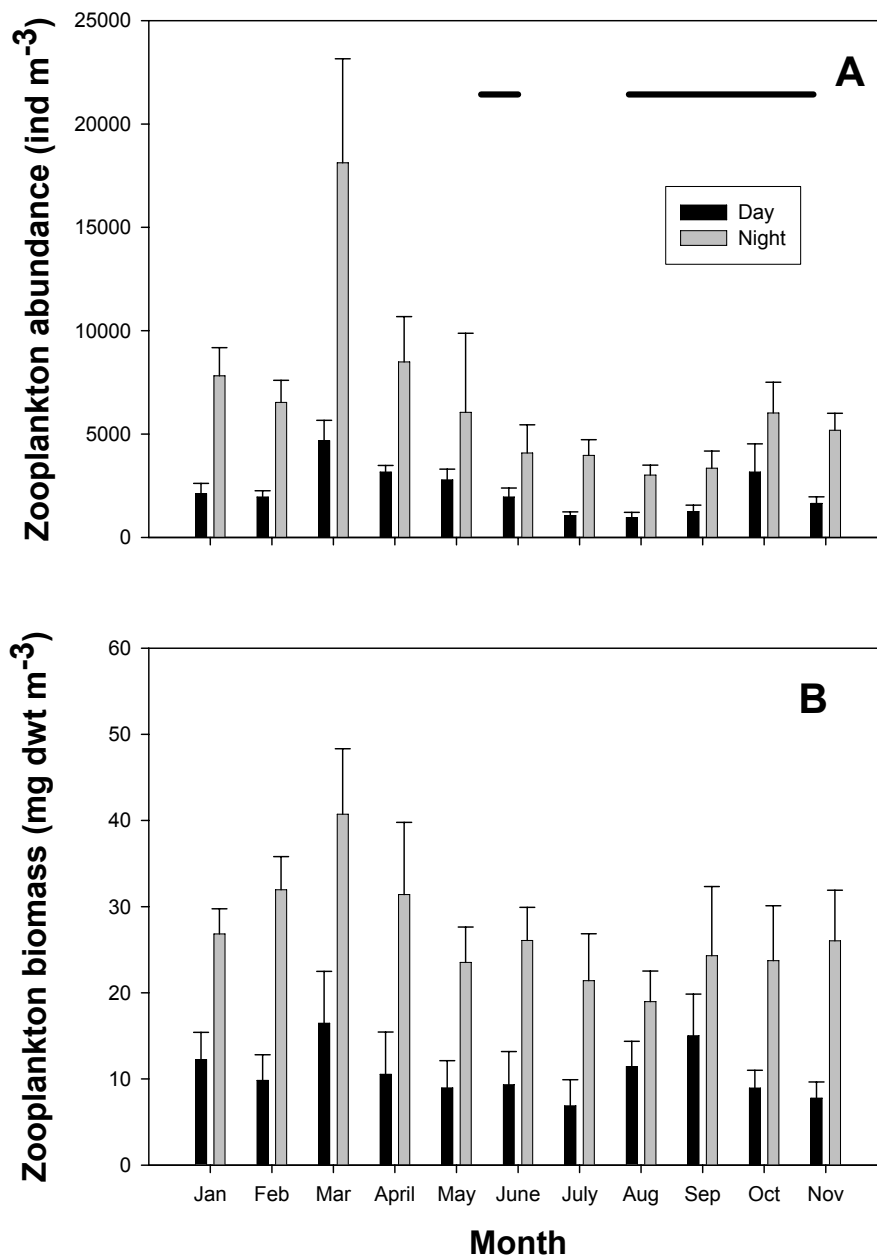


Figure 1. Total zooplankton abundance (A) and biomass (B) within the temporarily open/closed East Kleinemonde Estuary. Error bars are standard deviation. Thick horizontal line indicates when the estuary was open.

Table 1. The average abundances of the five most numerically dominant zooplankton species within each grouping identified with the hierarchical cluster analysis depicted in Figure 2. Collectively, the five zooplankton species contributed up to 95% of the similarity within each grouping. The results are from the SIMPER routine in PRIMER.

Group 1 (before major mouth breaching)		Group 2 (after major mouth breaching)	
Species	Average abundance (individuals m <sup>-3</sup> )	Species	Average abundance (individuals m <sup>-3</sup> )
<i>Pseudodiaptomus hessei</i>	4316	<i>P. hessei</i>	1116
<i>Acartia longipatella</i>	314	<i>A. longipatella</i>	113
Nauplii	397	<i>Oithona plumifera</i>	87
<i>Oithona nana</i>	172	<i>Palaemon peringueyi</i>	12
<i>Halicyclops</i> sp.	68	<i>Calanus agulhensis</i>	8

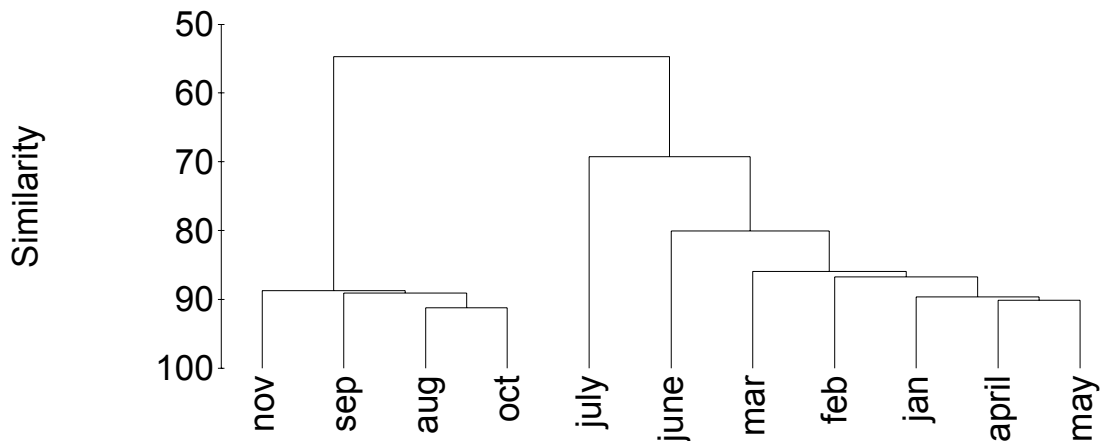


Figure 2. Results of the hierarchical cluster analyses performed on the mean zooplankton abundance data for a period of 11 months within the temporarily open/closed East Kleinemonde Estuary.

## PART 2: HYPERBENTHOS (*PALAEMON PERINGUEYI*)

### Biological sampling procedures

To investigate the spatial and temporal variability of the shrimp in the estuary, samples of *Palaemon peringueyi* were collected from the lower, middle and upper reaches of the system using a dip net (mouth area 0.3 X 0.3 m) according to the method described in Bernard & Froneman (2005). Five replicate samples were collected at each station by pushing the dip net perpendicular to the shore over a distance of 1.5m. The total area sampled on each occasion was thus equivalent to 0.45 m<sup>2</sup>.

### Biological sample treatment

Samples collected were preserved in 5% buffered formalin (hexamine) solution for later analysis in the laboratory. In addition, during each sampling trip, a visual estimation of the submerged macrophyte cover at each station was made in a 1x1m quadrant. Study was conducted over the period January to November.

### Statistical analyses

In the laboratory, all shrimp collected were counted, sexed (individuals > 9mm) and the carapace length (CL) measured and the wet weight determined. The sex of shrimps >9 mm were determined by the presence or absence of an appendix masculine on the endopod of the second pleopod (Bernard & Froneman 2005). Individuals < 9mm (CL) were assumed to be juveniles (Bernard & Froneman 2005). The carapace length measurements were made using electronic Vernier callipers and the wet weights using a Sauter AR microbalance. Mean abundance and biomass data at each station were standardised and expressed as ind. m<sup>-2</sup> or mg wet mass m<sup>-2</sup>, respectively.

## RESULTS

### Abundance and biomass of *P. peringueyi*

Mean total abundance and biomass of the caridean shrimp, *Palaemon peringueyi*, during the study ranged from 0 to 9.1 individuals m<sup>-2</sup> and from 0 to 8.8 mg wet mass m<sup>-2</sup>, respectively. A distinct spatial pattern in the total abundance and biomass of *P. peringueyi* was evident with highest values generally recorded in the middle reaches of the estuary while the lowest values were consistently recorded in the upper reaches of the system (Figure 3A and 3B). Exceptions were recorded in April, May and October where the highest abundance and biomass values of *P. peringueyi* were recorded in the lower reaches of the estuary. There were no apparent seasonal trends in the total abundance or biomass of *P. peringueyi* evident (Figures 3A and 3B). Rather, changes in the abundance and biomass of the shrimp were linked to breaching events that were recorded in late May and August.

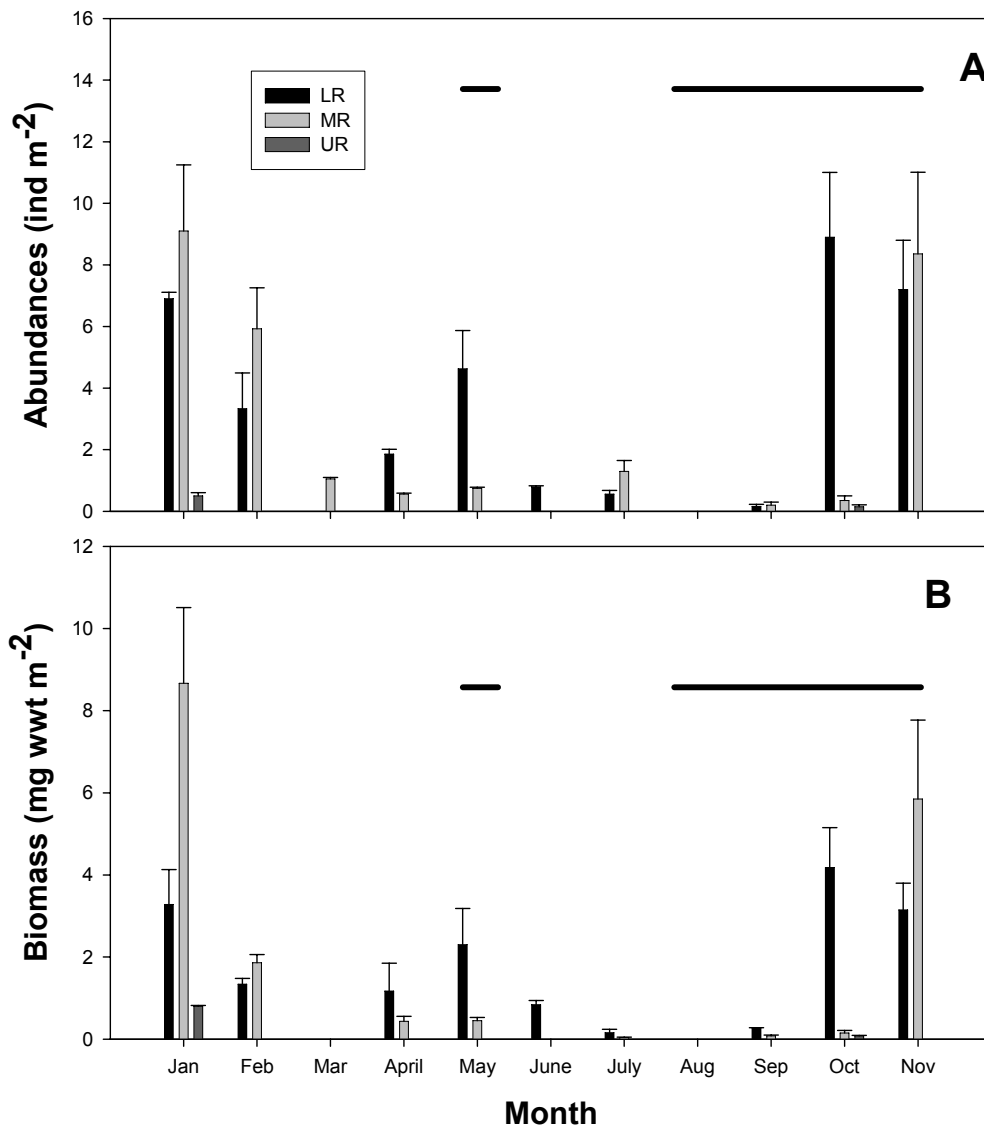


Figure 3. Spatial and temporal pattern in the total abundance and biomass of the caridean shrimp, *Palaemon peringueyi* in the temporarily open/closed East Kleinemonde Estuary. Thickened horizontal line indicates when the estuary was open. UR = upper reaches; MR = middle reaches; LR = lower reaches.

### Population demographics of *P. peringueyi*

The population demographics of *P. peringueyi* in the East Kleinemonde Estuary exhibited a distinct temporal pattern. During the first seven months of the survey, the total abundance of the shrimp was dominated by adults, which comprised between 72 and 87% of all shrimp counted (Figure 4). The breaching event in August was associated with a dramatic increase in the contribution of juveniles to the total counts. During October and November, juveniles accounted for between 68 and 73% of all *P. peringueyi* collected (Figure 4).

In agreement with studies conducted on zooplankton and fish within temporarily open/closed estuaries (Vorwerk *et al.* 2003, Froneman 2004, Kemp & Froneman 2004, Bernard & Froneman 2005), the breaching event in late August was associated with a dramatic decrease in the total abundance and biomass of the caridean shrimp, *Palaemon peringueyi*, within the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Figures 3A and 3B). The observed trend can likely be associated with the outflow of biomass rich estuarine waters into the marine environment (Froneman 2004), and the decline in water level within the estuary would have been associated with a loss of habitat, mainly submerged littoral vegetation.

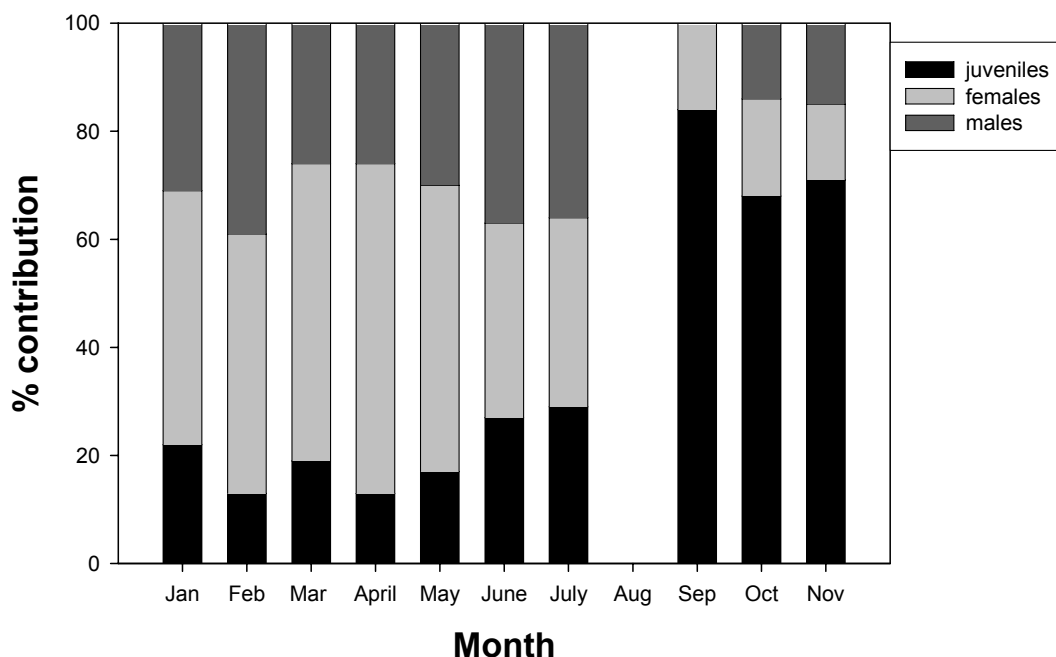


Figure 4. Population demographics of the caridean shrimp, *Palaemon peringueyi* in the temporarily open/closed East Kleinemonde Estuary. Data presented are the mean values from three stations.

Recent studies conducted within TOCEs within the same geographic region have demonstrated that breaching events coincide with the recruitment of juvenile *P. peringueyi* into these systems (Bernard & Froneman 2005, Froneman 2006). The breaching event in August 2006, was, however, not associated with the recruitment of *P. peringueyi* into the estuary. A peak in the recruitment of *P. peringueyi* into permanently open estuaries occurs during summer, with a secondary minor peak, taking place in early winter (Emmerson 1986). The breaching event in late August therefore coincided with period when the shrimp is reproductively less active. It is worth noting that numerical dominance of juveniles observed in October and November 2006 suggests that recruitment had occurred by late spring.

The estimates of total abundances and biomass of *P. peringueyi* during this study are substantially lower than those recorded in permanently open estuaries within the same geographic region. For example, in the Swartkops and Kromme river estuaries (Eastern Cape), *P. peringueyi* attained abundance levels of 200 - 400 individuals  $m^{-2}$  with a dry biomass equivalent to between 3 and 6 g dry mass  $m^{-2}$  (de Villiers *et al.* 1999). It is worth noting, however, that the estimates of the shrimp abundance and biomass within the estuary are in the range reported in other temporarily open/closed estuaries within the same region (Bernard & Froneman 2005, Froneman 2006).

## REFERENCES

- Bernard, A.T.F. & Froneman, P.W. 2005. Population dynamics of the caridean shrimp *Palaemon peringueyi* in a temporarily open/closed estuary. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 63: 73-81.
- Clarke, K.R. & Warwick, R.M. 1982. Change in marine communities: an approach to statistical analysis and interpretation. Environmental Research Council, Cambridge, United Kingdom.
- de Villiers, C., Hodgson A.N. & Forbes, A.T. 1999. Studies on estuarine macroinvertebrates. pp. 167-208. In: *Estuaries of South Africa*. (Ed. B.R. Allanson & D. Baird). Cambridge University Press, United Kingdom.
- Emmerson, W.D. 1986. The ecology of *Palaemon pacificus* (Stimpson) associated with *Zostera capensis*. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa* 46: 79-97.
- Field, J.G., Clarke, K.R. & Warwick, R.M. 1982. A practical strategy for analyzing multispecies distribution patterns. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 8, 37-52.
- Froneman, P.W. 2002a. Response of the plankton to three different hydrological phases of the temporarily open/closed Kasouga Estuary, South Africa. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 55: 535-546.
- Froneman, P.W. 2002b. Seasonal changes in selected physico-chemical and biological variables in the temporarily open/closed Kasouga Estuary, Eastern Cape, South Africa. *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 27: 117-123.

- Froneman, P.W. 2004. Seasonal patterns in the zooplankton community structure and biomass in an eastern Cape temporarily open/closed estuary. *Estuarine Coastal and Shelf Science* 60: 125-132.
- Froneman, P.W. 2006. The population dynamics of the caridean shrimp, *Palameon peringueyi*, in a small intermittently open Eastern Cape estuary. *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 31(2): 197-203.
- Kemp, J.O.G. & Froneman, P.W. 2004. Recruitment of ichthyoplankton and macrozooplankton during overtopping events into a temporarily open/closed southern African estuary. *Estuarine Coastal and Shelf Science* 61: 529-537.
- Kibirige, I. & Perissinotto, R. 2003a. In situ feeding rates and grazing impact of zooplankton in a South African temporarily open estuary. *Marine Biology* 144: 357-367.
- Kibirige, I. & Perissinotto, R. 2003b. The zooplankton community of the Mpenjati Estuary, a South African temporarily open/closed system. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 58, 724-741.
- Kibirige, I., Perissinotto, R. & Thwala, X. 2006. A comparative study of zooplankton dynamics in two subtropical temporarily open/closed estuaries, South Africa. *Marine Biology* 148: 1307-1324.
- Legendre, L. & Legendre, P. 1983. *Numerical ecology*. Elsevier, Amsterdam
- Perissinotto, R., Walker, D.R., Webb, P., Wooldridge, T.H. & Bally, R. 2000. Relationships between zoo- and phytoplankton in a warm-temperate, semi-permanently closed estuary, South Africa. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 51: 1-11.
- Vorwerk, P.D., Whitfield, A.K., Cowley, P. D. & Paterson, A.W. 2003. The influence of selected environmental variables on fish assemblage structure in a range of southeast African estuaries. *Environmental Biology of Fishes* 66: 237 – 247.
- Walker, D.R., Perissinotto, R. & Bally, R. 2001. Phytoplankton/protozoan dynamics in the Nyara estuary, a small temporarily open system in the Eastern Cape (South Africa). *African Journal of Aquatic Science* 26: 31-38.

## **Appendix J**

### **Specialist Report: Fish**

**PD Cowley, CM Muller, NC James, NA Strydom & AK Whitfield  
(South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown)**

## INTRODUCTION

The fishes associated with the temporarily open/closed East Kleinemonde Estuary have been subject to considerable research attention over the past decade. Published findings of this research effort include descriptions of the fish community (Cowley & Whitfield 2001a, Strydom *et al.* 2003, Vorwerk *et al.* 2003), quantification of fish population sizes (Cowley & Whitfield 2001b), fish biomass and production estimates (Cowley & Whitfield 2002), composition of larvae in the marine environment adjacent to the mouth of the estuary (Cowley *et al.* 2001) and the recruitment strategies by marine-spawning species (Bell *et al.* 2001). This report summarizes the major findings from the above studies as well as the more recent work on larval and early juvenile fish ecology in the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

## PART 1: LARVAE AND EARLY JUVENILES

### Biological sampling procedures

Spring, summer, autumn and winter samples were collected, with additional sampling during mouth open phases. On each sampling trip, the littoral zone was sampled during daylight hours at seven sites (S1 - S7, Figure 1) along the lower, middle and upper reaches of the East Kleinemonde Estuary using a 1.5 m deep × 4.5 m long modified beach-seine net with a mesh aperture of 0.5 mm. Each littoral site was divided into three 25 m stretches and sampled by pulling the net across this distance parallel to the estuary bank. In total, 75 m consisting of three replicates was sampled at each marginal water site. The approximate volume of water filtered by each haul was 150 m<sup>3</sup>, as the entire net was submerged during hauls.

At night, mid-channel plankton netting was conducted at five sites (P1 - P5, Figure 1) throughout the estuary using two slightly modified WP2 plankton nets (570 mm mouth diameter and 0.2 mm mesh aperture size) fitted with Kahlsico 005 WA 130 flow meters. The nets were held approximately 20 cm below the water surface for the duration of the tow. Towing speed ranged between 1 - 2 knots and each tow lasted for three minutes.

### Biological sample treatment

Samples were preserved on site with 10% formalin in seawater. Whole samples were processed in the laboratory and larval and juvenile fishes removed and identified to the lowest possible taxon. Positively identified fishes were categorized according to the degree to which the species is dependent on South African estuaries (Whitfield 1998). All terminology pertaining to larval fish followed that of Neira *et al.* (1998). The term "larva" was used to designate all stages in the early life history from hatching to the attainment of a full fin ray complement, squamation and the subsequent loss of all larval characteristics, at which stage the "larva" becomes a "juvenile". The term "larva" was further divided into yolk-sac, preflexion, flexion and postflexion stages. Larval fish density was expressed as numbers of larvae 100 m<sup>-3</sup> (Strydom *et al.* 2003) and the modified beach seine-net catch was expressed as catch per unit effort (CPUE) in terms of numbers. One unit of effort refers to a single seine pulled parallel to the estuary bank over a distance of 25 m in littoral waters.

### Statistical analyses

Variations in CPUE and density of larval and early juvenile fishes were tested using Mann-Whitney U-Tests. The Kruskal-Wallis ANOVA and Median test were used to assess differences in CPUE and density between the sites and seasons, as well as for differences in physical data between sites and seasons within the estuary. Multiple linear stepwise regressions (MLR) were used to ascertain whether environmental variables displayed any significant relationships with fish density and CPUE. MLR was used on total CPUE (all species included) and also individually on dominant species. In all statistical analyses, a significant level of  $P < 0.05$  was used.

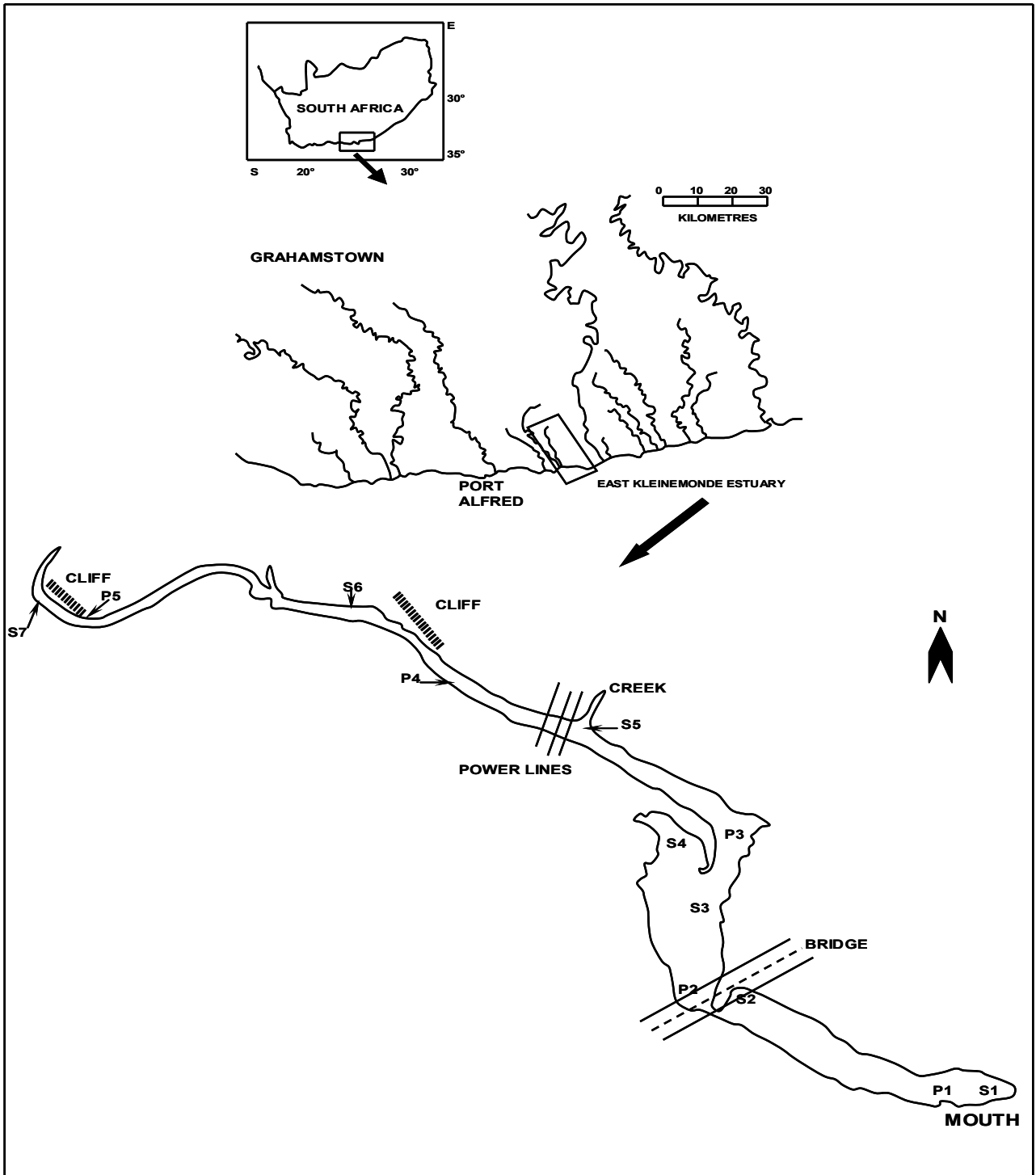


Figure 1. Geographic location of the East Kleinemonde Estuary, showing the positions of sampling sites. Seine net sites are numbers S1 - S7 and plankton towing sites are numbered P1 - P5.

## RESULTS

### Larval and early juvenile fish composition and assemblage dynamics

A total of 13 742 fishes were caught during this study of which 11 450 were caught along the margins and 2 013 in the mid-channel plankton tows. Seine catches at marginal sites along the estuary yielded 8 fish families and 13 species, mid-channel tows yielded 8 fish families and 16 species and surf seine catches yielded 11 fish families and 17 species.

#### Marginal sites

##### Seasonal CPUE trends

A significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) difference in CPUE (all species combined) was recorded across seasons. The highest mean CPUE occurred during the summer of 2005 (911 fish haul<sup>-1</sup>), coinciding with an opening event, which was significantly different from all other seasons sampled. CPUE showed no significant differences between sites during each season sampled in this study. The fish families Atherinidae, Clupeidae and Gobiidae were found to be dominant in margin catches. *Atherina breviceps*, *Gilchristella aestuaria* and *Glossogobius callidus* were the dominant species within each of these families, with mean total CPUE values of 28, 75 and 14 fish haul<sup>-1</sup>, respectively.

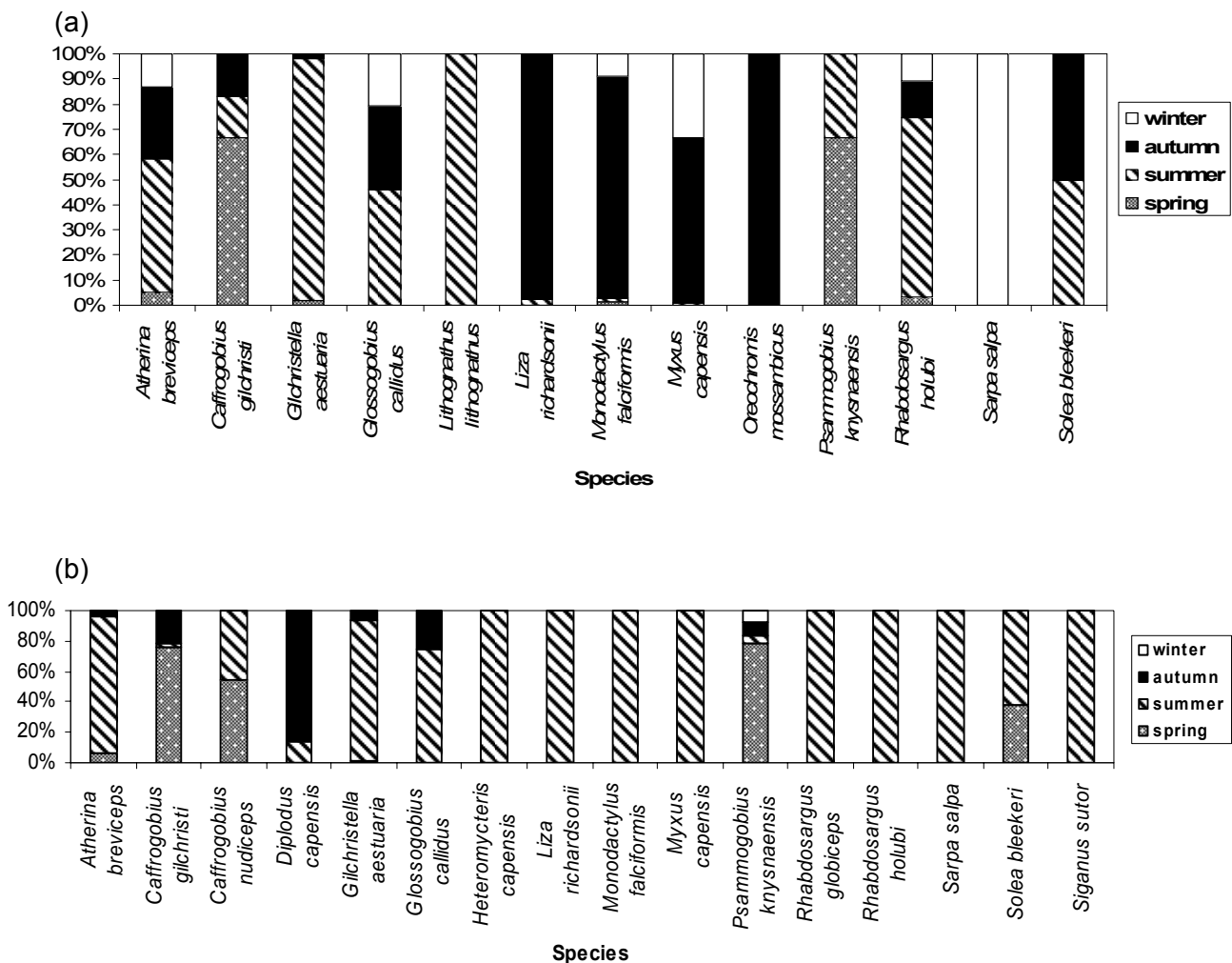


Figure 2. Seasonal contribution (percentage) of each species to the total early stage fish CPUE for seine catches (a) and density for mid-channel tows (b).

### Species composition

A clear temporal variation in fish species composition was evident seasonally for seine net catches (Figure 2a). Estuary-resident fish species were present throughout all seasons, but dominated significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) in summer. *Gilchristella aestuaria* was abundant in summer, while *Atherina breviceps* was present in all seasons sampled, but more so in summer and autumn. The gobiids *Caffrogobius gilchristi* and *Psammogobius knysnaensis* showed higher presence in spring, with some autumn occurrences. Estuary-dependent species, particularly the two mullet species *Myxus capensis* and *Liza richardsonii*, as well as *Monodactylus falciformis* were caught in autumn. *Rhabdosargus holubi* were significantly more abundant ( $P < 0.05$ ) during summer. The freshwater species *Oreochromis mossambicus*, was present in seine catches only in the upper reaches of the estuary during autumn. No marine straggler species were sampled in the marginal seine net catches.

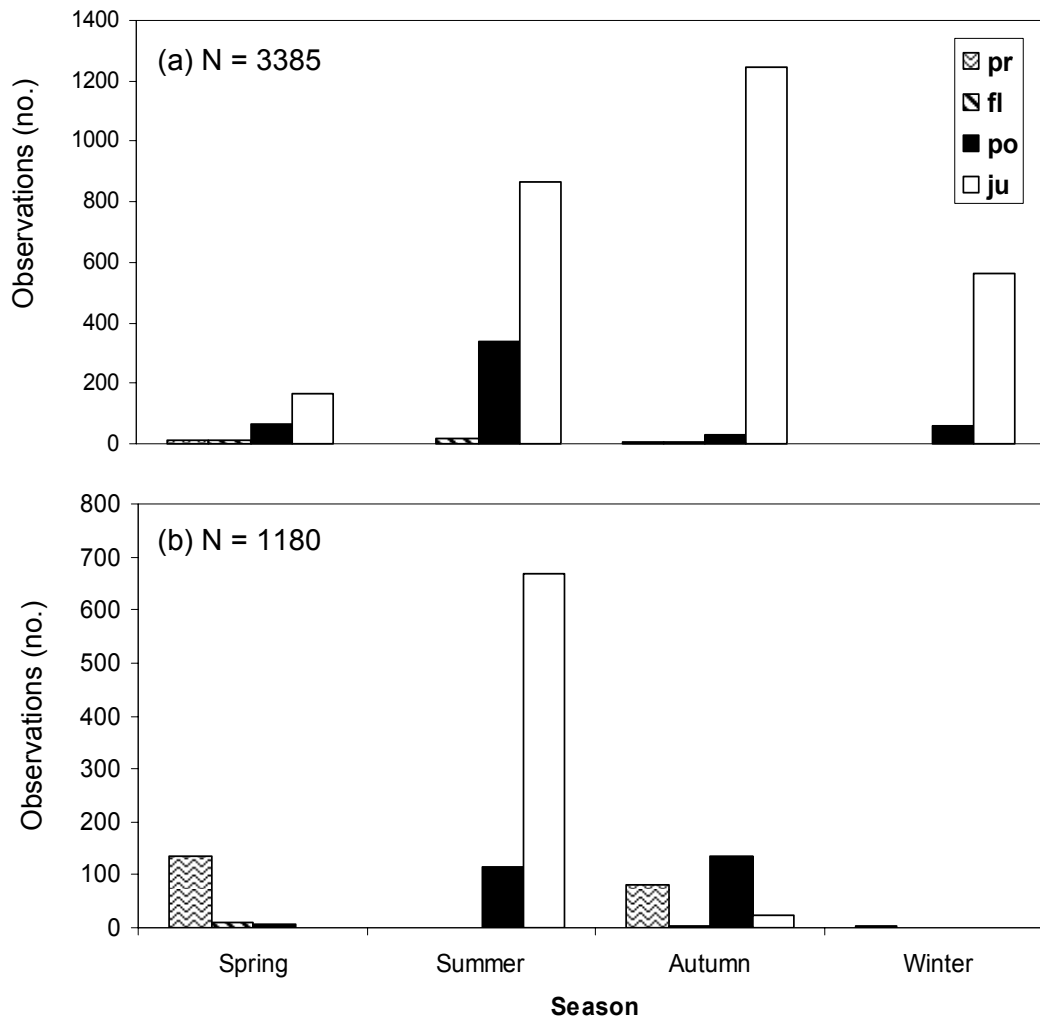


Figure 3. Frequency of occurrence of developmental stages for fishes (seasonally) in marginal seine net catches (a) and mid-channel tows (b) (pr = preflexion, fl = flexion, po = postflexion, ju = juvenile).

### Developmental stages

Early juvenile stages dominated at marginal sites (Figure 3a), with abundance peaking in autumn after a summer mouth opening event. Flexion and postflexion larvae were most numerous during summer, while preflexion larvae peaked in abundance during spring. The juvenile stage was the dominant developmental stage for *Gilchristella aestuaria* and *Atherina breviceps* along the margins, while the preflexion stage was dominant for *Caffrogobius gilchristi* and the postflexion larval stage was dominant for *Rhabdosargus holubi*.

## Estuary association

Seasonal presence of the different estuarine association categories is represented in Figure 4a. Estuary-resident (category I) species dominated in summer (mouth opening) ( $P < 0.05$ ), especially the species *Atherina breviceps*, *Gilchristella aestuaria* and *Glossogobius callidus*. Estuary-dependent (category II) species also showed a significant ( $P < 0.05$ ) increase in abundance in summer (mouth opening) and autumn. No marine straggler (category III) species were sampled in the marginal seine net catches. A single freshwater species (category IV), *Oreochromis mossambicus*, occurred during autumn.

## Mid-channel sites

### Seasonal CPUE trends

There was a significant ( $P < 0.001$ ) difference in catches of larval and early juvenile fishes between seasons. Highest catches were again recorded in the summer of 2005 ( $P < 0.05$ ), with a mean density of  $1258 \text{ } 100\text{m}^{-3}$  (Table 1). There was no difference in fish density between sites, per season ( $P > 0.05$ ). The same fish families (Clupeidae, Atherinidae and Gobiidae) dominated both mid-channel and marginal sites sampled. There were significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) higher densities of *Atherina breviceps*, *Gilchristella aestuaria*, *Glossogobius callidus* and *Rhabdosargus holubi* during summer compared to winter.

Table 1. Descriptive statistics for larval and early juvenile fishes occurring in different seasons and salinity zones in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during the study period.

	CPUE (no. haul <sup>-1</sup> )			Density (no. $100\text{m}^{-3}$ )		
	Margin sites			Mid-channel sites		
	Mean	Median	Range	Mean	Median	Range
Total	159	29	0-3742	272	43	0-1895
Season:						
Spring	12	6	0-77	104	28	6-600
Summer*	911	247	44-3742	1258	1271	293-1894
Autumn	98	62	0-366	118	89	16-332
Winter	45	12	0-254	2	0	0-10
Salinity zone:						
Polyhaline	220	59	0-3742	336	67	0-1894
Euhaline	12	6	0-77	104	28	6-600

\*Estuary mouth open

### Species composition

Estuary-resident species and estuary-dependent marine species were abundant during summer (Figure 2b) when the mouth of the estuary was open. There were significant seasonal differences in density of *Atherina breviceps* ( $P < 0.05$ ), *Gilchristella aestuaria* ( $P < 0.05$ ) or *Glossogobius callidus* ( $P < 0.001$ ), with higher catches occurring in summer. *Myxus capensis* and *Rhabdosargus holubi* also showed significantly higher densities in summer ( $P < 0.05$ ) during the open phase. The two gobiids, *Caffrogobius gilchristi* and *Psammogobius knysnaensis*, however, displayed their highest densities in spring. The larvae of the sparid *Diplodus capensis* occurred in mid-channel tows during autumn sampling, while *Sarpa salpa* was recorded in summer tows while the estuary was open.

### Developmental stages

Larval fishes were recorded through all developmental stages in the mid-channel waters (Figure 3b) when compared with those observed along the margins (Figure 3a). Spring densities were the highest for preflexion and flexion larvae, while postflexion larvae and juvenile fishes reached their highest densities in summer (mouth opening event) and autumn. More juveniles were recorded during the opening event in summer. Few juveniles were observed in spring and winter. The same developmental stages for resident species that were dominant along the margins such as *Atherina breviceps* (juvenile), *Gilchristella aestuaria* (juvenile), *Caffrogobius gilchristi* (preflexion) and *Rhabdosargus holubi* (postflexion) were dominant in the mid-channel catches. *Atherina breviceps* and *Gilchristella aestuaria* were represented by all four developmental stages.

## Estuary association

Catches in the mid-channel showed a similar pattern to that observed along the margins. Estuary-resident species were dominant during all four seasons, but showed significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) higher densities during summer when the mouth of the estuary was open. Marine species that are dependent on estuaries, like the mugilids *Liza richardsonii* and *Myxus capensis* as well as *Monodactylus falciformis* and *Rhabdosargus holubi*, were also present in significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) higher densities during summer. No freshwater species were present in the mid-channel catches.

## PART 2: MOUTH DYNAMICS AND FISH COMMUNITY STRUCTURE

### Larval community comparison: 1999 versus 2006

No mouth opening events were recorded in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during earlier sampling conducted between July 1998 and April 1999. However, an estuary opening event was observed in the summer of 2005. Mean salinity recorded seasonally was generally lower in 1999, except for winter when salinity values were more similar. Temperatures were similar between the two sampling years. Water clarity also shows little fluctuation between the two datasets, although the mean water clarity for summer 2006 during the opening event was several times higher than that recorded in 1999 when the estuary was closed. Mean fish density (1621 individuals  $100 \text{ m}^{-3}$ ) for the 1999 dataset was significantly higher ( $P < 0.05$ ) than the mean fish density (570 individuals  $100 \text{ m}^{-3}$ ) for the 2006 study. However closer examination of the densities of estuary resident and estuary-dependent marine species showed different mouth conditions affected these groups differently (Table 2). Density of estuary resident species was significantly higher ( $P < 0.001$ ) during the closed phase and the density of estuary-dependent marine species peaked during the sampling year characterized by an opening event, although this increase in mean density from 0.13 to 2.18 individuals  $100 \text{ m}^{-3}$  was not statistically significant. The maximum density of larval fishes recorded in the estuary occurred in 2006 (Table 2).

Table 2. Comparative descriptive statistics for larval fish density (individuals  $100 \text{ m}^{-3}$ ) recorded during two plankton surveys of the East Kleinemonde Estuary under different mouth conditions.

	1999			2006		
	Mean	Median	Range	Mean	Median	Range
All species	1621	104	0 – 13881	570	4	0 – 17431
Estuary dependent species	0.1	0	0 – 13	2	0	0 – 220
Estuary resident species	202	0	0 – 9399	42	0	0 – 1641

### Can larvae distinguish water from different sources?

Although the recruitment of larvae and juveniles into estuaries has been well documented, little is known about the factors governing the immigration of marine-spawning fishes into estuaries. Several physical factors have been proposed as stimuli that could elicit a recruitment response in estuary-associated fish species, including current speed, salinity, temperature and turbidity. Furthermore, numerous researchers have suggested that olfaction is the primary sense responsible for the successful location of estuarine environments (e.g. Whitfield 1994, Cowley *et al.* 2001b, Strydom 2003).

A series of laboratory experiments were conducted using a choice chamber to test the attraction of *Rhabdosargus holubi* larvae to different water types (riverine, estuarine, coastal and marine). Prior to each experiment the estuarine and river water was adjusted to a salinity of 35 psu using artificial sea salt (Red Sea Salt® and Dopan Marine Salt®) to eliminate salinity as an influencing factor and also to prevent mixing of different water types in the experimental choice chamber (James 2006).

In the first experiment, larvae that had recently recruited into an estuary showed a preference for estuary and river water over seawater. However, when given a choice between estuary and river water, or estuary and river water and a mixture of the two, the results were inconclusive. In the second experiment, larvae that were smaller in size (10 - 11 mm SL) and had not yet recruited into an estuary were found to be significantly attracted to estuary water and weakly attracted to river water. These results suggest that migrating larvae in the sea respond primarily to cues in estuary water, and to a lesser extent river water, when recruiting into estuaries and probably develop a stronger attraction to river water once in the estuary, as observed in the first experiment. It is also important to note that estuarine water may contain cues of riverine or catchment

origin. Furthermore, when given a choice between seawater and surf-zone water, *Rhabdosargus holubi* larvae selected surf-zone water over sea water (James 2006).

The findings of this study are in agreement with the pattern proposed by Whitfield (1994), with additional refinements. Based on the available evidence the proposed recruitment pattern adopted by marine-spawning estuary-dependent species is as follows. Initially, larvae are attracted to surf zone water and maintain position within this zone but may move laterally along the coast. Only later, when accumulating and migrating into estuaries, are larvae attracted to estuarine water as opposed to other water types. Once in the estuary, larvae usually continue to move up the system towards littoral nursery areas and are then mainly attracted to river water cues. Larvae and early juveniles probably use olfaction, along with other cues such as salinity, temperature and turbidity gradients to 'fine tune' their movements to specific nursery areas within estuaries. Olfactory cues may be particularly important in orientating towards upstream nursery areas in TOCEs where strong horizontal gradients are often absent.

#### **Fish assemblage comparisons: 1995-2005**

A large mesh seine net (50 m x 2 m) with a 15 mm bar mesh was used to sample the juveniles and sub-adults of marine-spawning species biannually (summer and winter) from 1995 to 2005 (James 2006). The number of large mesh seine net hauls per sampling trip usually varied between 8 and 18, with the final number dependent on access to sampling sites, as well as a flattening of the species: sampling effort curve. On some occasions when the mouth was closed several sites were completely submerged and, during the open mouth phase, some sites were completely exposed. On each sampling occasion all possible littoral habitat types in the lower, middle and upper reaches of the estuary were sampled. The seine net was laid in a semi-circle from the bank using a small motorised boat and then hauled ashore. All fish caught were identified and measured to the nearest millimetre standard length (SL) before being released.

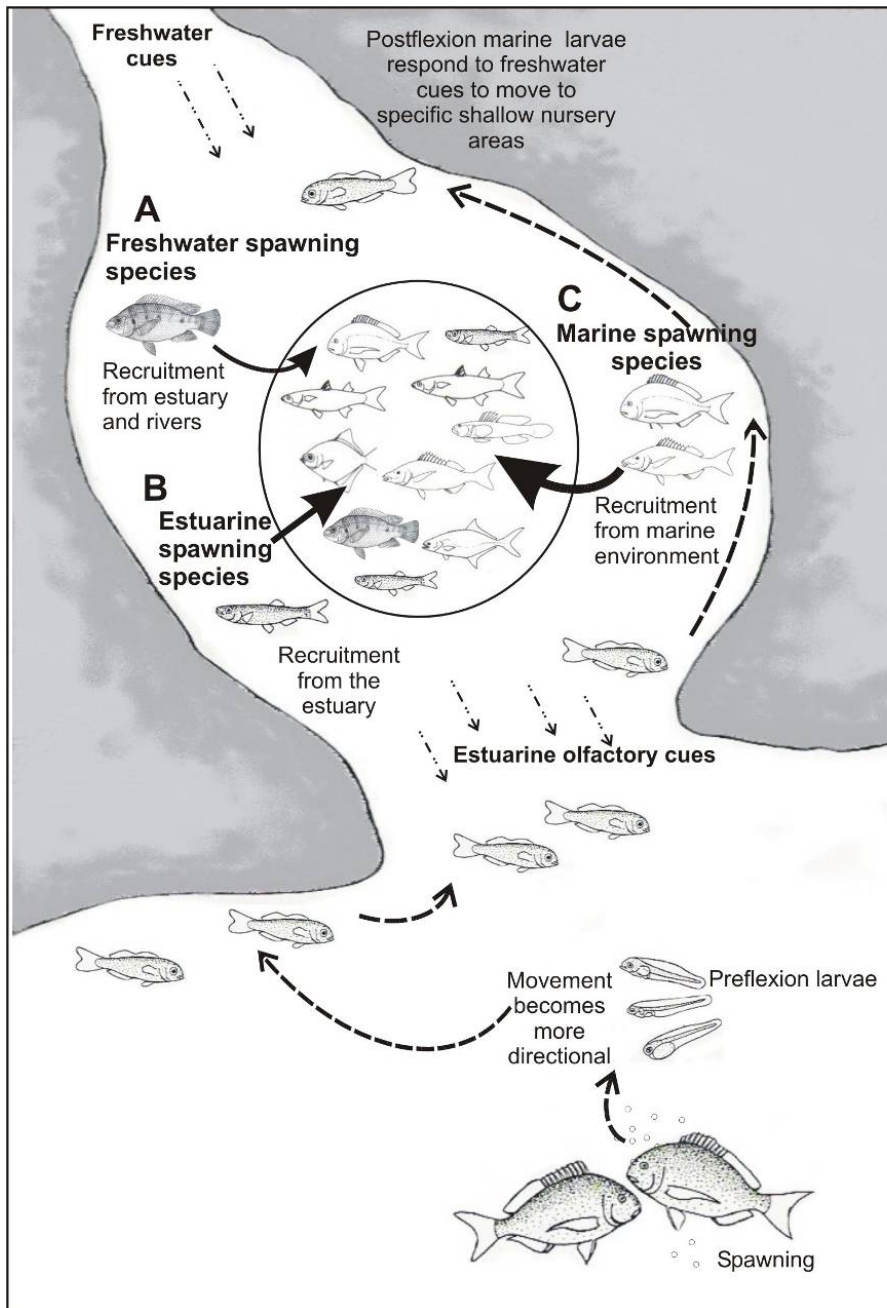
Numerous authors (e.g. Bell *et al.* 2001, Vorwerk *et al.* 2003) have suggested that the timing, duration and frequency of mouth opening events play an important role in determining fish species composition, diversity and seasonality within temporarily open/closed estuaries (TOCEs). According to Potter *et al.* (1993) researchers have not yet determined whether long-term changes in fish communities of TOCEs reflect the period that these estuaries were isolated from the sea. This study provided the first opportunity to test this hypothesis because it combined a long-term dataset of fish catches under different mouth states (e.g. see Figures 4 and 5) over different time scales.

The timing of mouth opening has a significant effect on marine species composition in the estuary, with multi-dimensional scaling grouping years into two distinct groups (Figure 6). More species were recorded during years that succeeded spring (September-November) mouth opening events than in years following no mouth opening events in spring. Mean annual CPUE for species that recruit predominantly in spring were higher in 'spring opening' years. Species that are known to recruit during both overwash and open mouth conditions were consistently recorded each year, irrespective of a 'spring opening'.

Two different periods of stability were identified in the East Kleinemonde Estuary, viz. 1995-2000 and 2001-2005. During the 2001-2005 period a higher value for Kendall's coefficient of stability ( $W$ ) was recorded and there was also an increase in inter-annual community stability (IMD) and seriation (IMS) from the 'other' years to the 'spring' years. These results suggest that optimum mouth opening for marine fish recruitment is during spring (September-November) in Cape TOCEs and the predominance of spring opening events between 2001 and 2005 probably allowed for the regular recruitment of a wide variety of marine species into the estuary.

Individual fish populations in the East Kleinemonde Estuary were dynamic as the abundance of all species varied markedly between years. For example, maximum abundance for *Rhabdosargus holubi* (264 fish haul<sup>-1</sup> in 2003), *Myxus capensis* (83 fish haul<sup>-1</sup> in 2004) and *Gilchristella aestuaria* (1662 fish haul<sup>-1</sup> in 2005) was several times greater than in the years of least abundance (21 fish haul<sup>-1</sup> for *R. holubi* in 2001, 0.2 fish haul<sup>-1</sup> for *M. capensis* in 1995 and 97 fish haul<sup>-1</sup> for *G. aestuaria* in 1996). This was because the recruitment strengths of juveniles varied between years and the years when recruitment was greatest varied between the different species.

Similarly, Cowley & Whitfield (2001b) found that overall populations of marine migrant species associated with the East Kleinemonde Estuary are characterised by a high degree of inter-annual variability. For example, the total population size of all marine fishes in the estuary increased by almost eight-fold from a mark-recapture experiment conducted between October 1994 and December 1994 (~18 000 individuals) to a mark-recapture experiment conducted between October 1995 and February 1996 (~133 000 individuals). The large inter-annual variability was attributed to both abiotic (estuary mouth state) and biotic conditions such as spawning success and larval survival.



**Community structure determined by the recruitment of (A) freshwater, (B) estuarine and (C) marine spawning species**

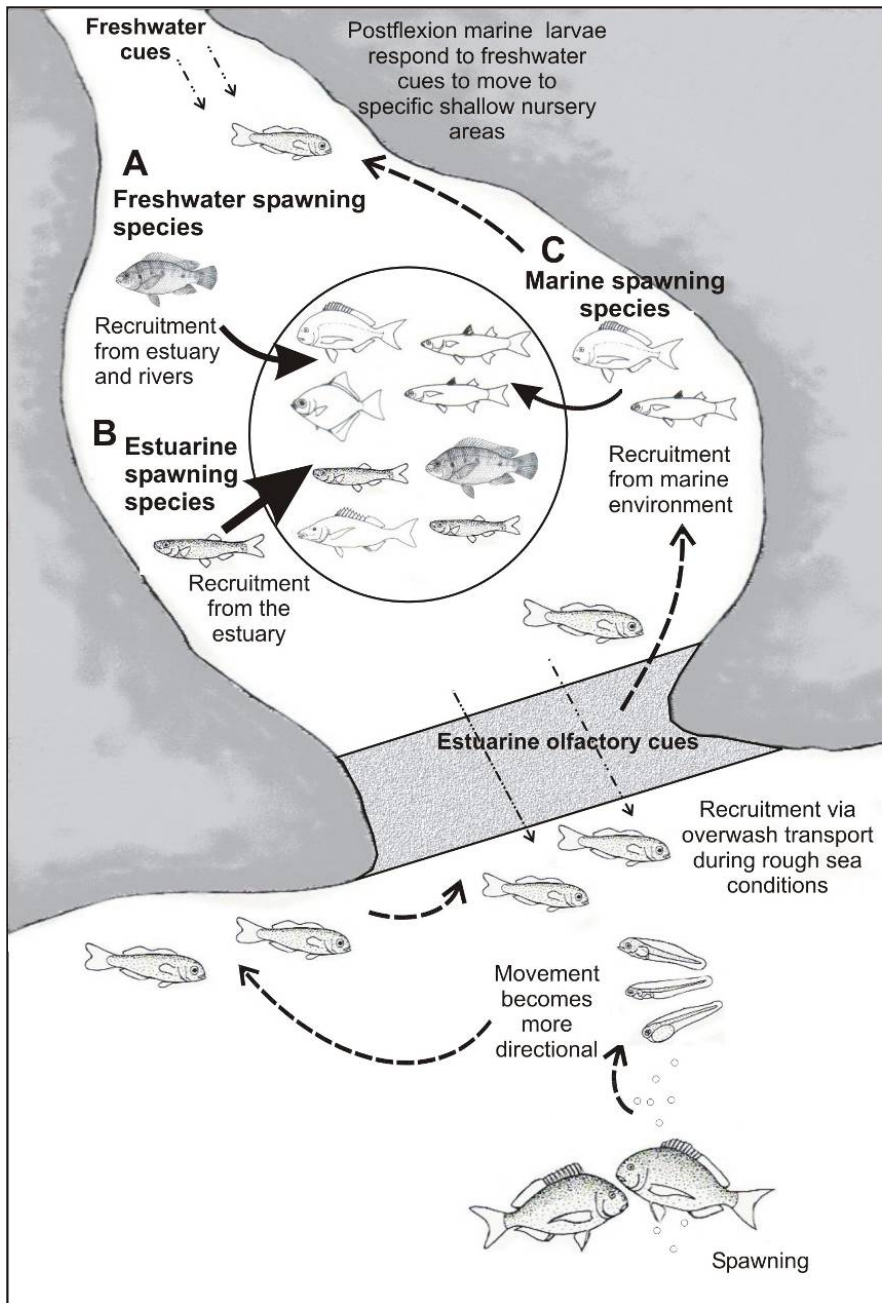
A) Spawning and nest building by *Oreochromis mossambicus* is disrupted when the mouth opens during peak breeding season resulting in a decrease in recruitment.

B) During periods of high river flow eggs and larvae of estuarine spawning species may be swept out to sea resulting in a decrease in recruitment.

C) The recruitment of marine spawning species is enhanced when the mouth is open (particularly during spring), thus leading to higher species richness of marine spawning species and a more stable marine community.

Figure 4. Major contributors to fish community structure in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during following an open mouth phase. The movement of estuary-associated marine fish larvae from marine spawning grounds into the estuary is also shown (after Cowley *et al.* 2008).

In the East Kleinemonde Estuary the timing of mouth opening events (abiotic factors) and life-history pattern (biotic factors) together influenced species composition and abundance. Species with extended breeding seasons that recruit during overwash and open mouth conditions or breed in the estuary dominated catches numerically (Table 3). In contrast, species with restricted spawning seasons, most of which only recruit into estuaries during open mouth conditions, were found in low numbers within the estuary.



### Community structure determined by the recruitment of (A) freshwater, (B) estuarine and (C) marine spawning species

A) Closed conditions result in inundation of marginal vegetation, stable water levels and an absence of water currents, thus providing favourable conditions for breeding of *Oreochromis mossambicus* and enhanced recruitment.

B) Recruitment of estuarine spawning species is greater during the closed phase as eggs and larvae are retained in the estuary, conditions are physically more stable, and marginal vegetation is inundated. Freshwater input leading to mouth opening may also enhance populations through nutrient input.

C) The recruitment of marine spawning species is lower when the mouth is closed (particularly during spring). Species such as *Rhabdosargus holubi* and various mullet are able to recruit via overwash transport but other species such as *Lithognathus lithognathus* and *Pomadasys commersonnii* are unable to recruit, resulting in lower marine species richness and a less stable marine community.

Figure 5. Major contributors to fish community structure in the East Kleinemonde Estuary during a prolonged closed phase. The movement of estuary-associated marine fish larvae from marine spawning grounds into the estuary is also shown (after Cowley *et al.* 2008).

Cowley & Whitfield (2001a) also found that mouth state is important for the reproductive success of estuarine-spawning species in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. Reproductive activity is halted during low level water conditions following a mouth opening event. On the other hand, closed mouth conditions result in more stable physical conditions, elevated water levels and habitat inundation, which results in an increase in breeding success. Submerged macrophyte beds, which expand during extended closed mouth phases, are an important habitat for the estuarine pipefish *Syngnathus watermeyerii*, a species which disappeared from the estuary when aquatic macrophytes died back between 2004 and 2006.

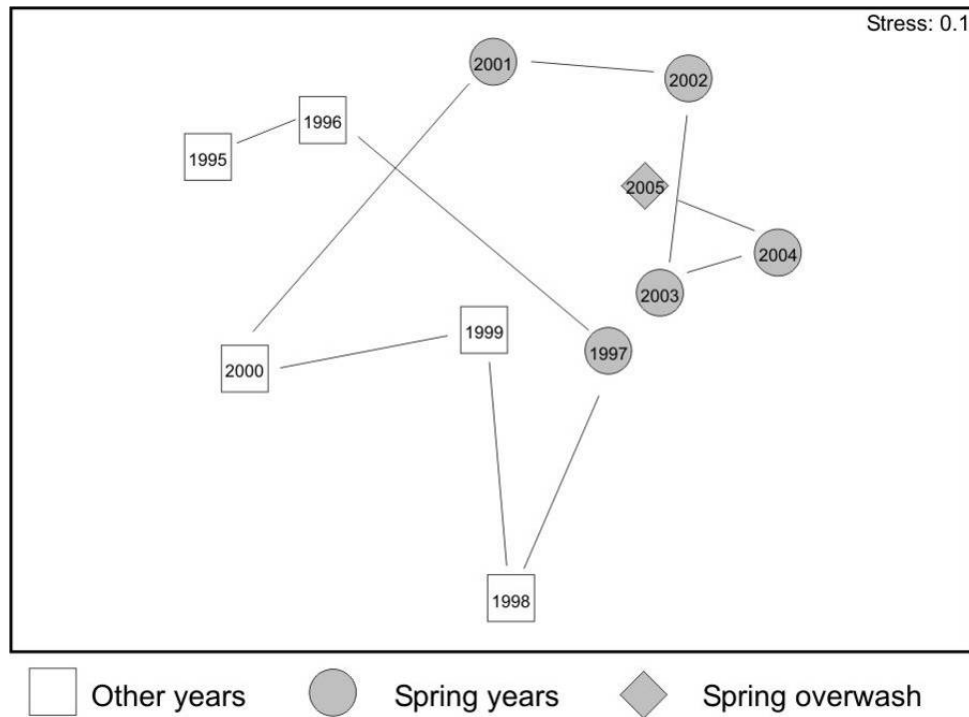


Figure 6. Ordination of annual seine net fish CPUE data from the East Kleinemonde Estuary between 1995 and 2005.

Table 3. Reproductive seasonality and recruitment behaviour of the 10 most abundant species caught in the East Kleinemonde Estuary.

Species	Spawning period*		Recruit during overwash events	Life history Category	Rank
<i>Gilchristella aestuaria</i>	Breeds all year round	Extended	NA	Ia	1
<i>Atherina breviceps</i>	September – February	Medium	NA	Ia	2
<i>Rhabdosargus holubi</i>	July – February	Extended	Yes	IIa	3
<i>Glossogobius callidus</i>	October – November	Short	NA	Ib	4
<i>Myxus capensis</i>	March – November	Medium	Yes	Vb	5
<i>Monodactylus falciformis</i>	October – February	Medium	Yes	IIa	6
<i>Oreochromis mossambicus</i>	September – February	Medium	NA	IV	7
<i>Liza richardsonii</i>	September – March	Extended	No	IIc	8
<i>Liza dumerli</i>	December – February	Short	Yes	IIa	9
<i>Lithognathus lithognathus</i>	June – August	Short	No	IIa	10

\* Short 1-3 months, Medium 4-6 months, Extended > 7 months

Analysis of the long-term small seine dataset suggests that inter-annual changes in the abundance of certain estuarine-spawning species were related to rainfall and thus river pulses. The filter-feeding *G. aestuaria* is the most abundant species in the East Kleinemonde Estuary and forms an important link in the food chain in South African estuaries because it is preyed upon by various predatory fish. Martin *et al.* (1992) recorded an order of magnitude increase in the abundance of *G. aestuaria* in the St Lucia Estuary following a cyclone and attributed this response to the phytoplankton bloom and increased zooplankton stocks associated with the river flooding. However, major flooding in estuaries can also result in a decrease in estuarine resident species. Strydom *et al.* (2002) recorded an absence of young *G. aestuaria* in the water column of the Great Fish Estuary during periods of high flow and attributed this to large numbers of eggs and larvae being swept out of the estuary.

Timing and duration of mouth opening events can influence the recruitment success of *O. mossambicus* in the East Kleinemonde Estuary. In 2004 the mouth opened in late December, thus allowing successful breeding, while in 2005 the mouth opened during November before the cycle could be completed. Recruitment success was consequently very poor in 2005/06 (Ellender 2006).

## REFERENCES

- Bell, K.N.I., Cowley, P.D. & Whitfield, A.K. 2001. Seasonality in frequency of marine access to an intermittently open estuary: implications for recruitment strategies. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 52(3): 305-325.
- Cowley, P.D. & Whitfield, A.K. 2001a. Ichthyofaunal characteristics of a typical temporarily open/closed estuary on the southeast coast of South Africa. *Ichthyological Bulletin of the J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology* 71: 1-19.
- Cowley, P.D. & Whitfield, A.K. 2001b. Fish population size estimates from a small intermittently open estuary in South Africa, based on mark-recapture techniques. *Marine and Freshwater Research* 52: 283-290.
- Cowley, P.D. & Whitfield, A.K. 2002. Biomass and production estimates of a fish community in a small South African estuary. *Journal of Fish Biology* 61 (Supplement A): 74-89.
- Cowley, P.D., Whitfield, A.K. & Bell, K.N.I. 2001. The surf zone ichthyoplankton adjacent to an intermittently open estuary, with evidence of recruitment during marine overwash events. *Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science* 52(3): 339-348.
- Ellender, B.R. 2006. Temporal and spatial distribution of *Oreochromis mossambicus* in the intermittently open East Kleinemonde Estuary, South Africa. BSc (Hons) Project, Department of Ichthyology and Fisheries Science, Rhodes University. 35 pp.
- James, N.C. 2006. Trends in fish community structure and recruitment in a temporarily open/closed South African estuary. PhD thesis, Rhodes University, Grahamstown, 171 pp.
- Martin, T.J., Cyrus, D.P. & Forbes, A.T. 1992. Episodic events: the effects of cyclonic flushing on the ichthyoplankton of St Lucia estuary on the southeast coast of Africa. *Netherlands Journal of Sea Research* 30: 273-278.
- Neira, F.J., Miskiewicz, A.G. & Trnski, T. 1998. Larvae of temperate Australian fishes: Laboratory guide for larval fish identification. University of Western Australia Press, Nedlands. 472 pp.
- Potter, I.C., Hyndes, G.A. & Baronie, F.M. 1993. The fish fauna of a seasonally closed Australian estuary. Is the prevalence of estuarine-spawning species high? *Marine Biology* 116: 19-30.
- Strydom, N.A. 2003. Occurrence of larval and early juvenile fishes in the surf zone adjacent to two intermittently open estuaries, South Africa. *Environmental Biology of Fishes* 66: 349-359.
- Strydom, N.A., Whitfield, A.K. & Paterson, A.W. 2002. The influence of altered freshwater flow regimes on larval and juvenile *Gilchristella aestuaria* (Pisces: Clupeidae) abundance in the upper reaches of two South African estuaries. *Marine and Freshwater Research* 53: 431-438.
- Strydom, N.A., Whitfield, A.K. & Wooldridge, T.H. 2003. The role of estuarine type in characterizing early stage fish assemblages in warm temperate estuaries, South Africa. *African Zoology* 38 (1): 29-43.
- Vorwerk, P.D., Whitfield, A.K., Cowley, P. D. & Paterson, A.W. 2003. The influence of selected environmental variables on fish assemblage structure in a range of southeast African estuaries. *Environmental Biology of Fishes* 66: 237 – 247.
- Whitfield, A.K. 1994. Abundance of larval and 0+ juvenile marine fishes in the lower reaches of three southern African estuaries with differing freshwater inputs. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 105: 257-267.
- Whitfield, A.K. 1998. Biology and ecology of fishes in southern African estuaries. *Ichthyological Monographs of the J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology* (2): 1-223.

## **Appendix K**

### **Specialist Report: Birds**

**Al Terörde & JK Turpie  
(Percy FitzPatrick Institute, University of Cape Town)**

## INTRODUCTION

Little historic information is available on the avifauna of the East Kleinemonde Estuary. One single count of all waterbirds exists for 1980. Cowley (1998) and Terörde (2005a) studied the population dynamics of the piscivorous component of the avifauna in 1995 and 2005 respectively. The avifauna of the temporarily open/closed East Kleinemonde Estuary has now been studied in detail as part of an MSc thesis from March 2005 to November 2006. This review will focus on this recent work conducted.

## STUDY AREA AND METHODS

### Sampling procedure

Seventy-two bird counts were conducted on the East Kleinemonde Estuary from March 2005 to November 2006. Counts were carried out from a motorised boat or on foot, depending on water levels, from the mouth to the head of the estuary. The location of every encountered waterbird was noted on a GPS referenced map (Figure 1). Only non-terrestrial estuary-associated species were counted. Terrestrial feeding birds such as Egyptian Goose, Black-headed Heron and Brown-hooded Kingfisher were not included in the study. A total of 29 counts were carried out in summer (October - March) and 43 in winter (April - September). Fifty-one of these counts were conducted while the estuary mouth was closed and 21 while the mouth was open to the sea.

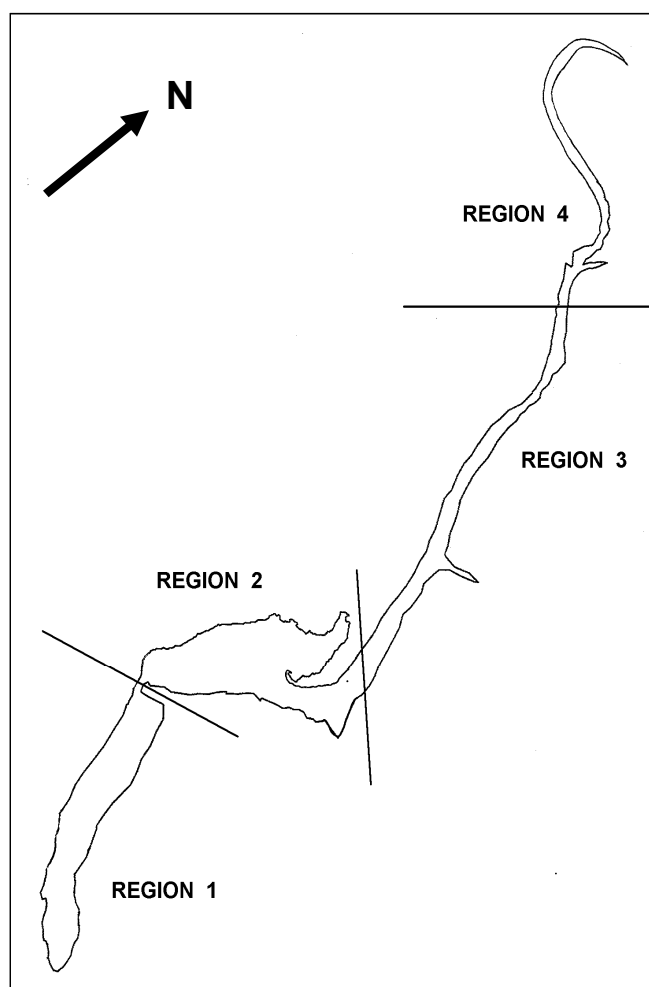


Figure 1. Map of the East Kleinemonde Estuary, showing the divisions between the main counting areas.

## Division of the estuary into regions

The estuary was divided into four regions (Figure 1) according to habitat characteristics, as follows:

Region 1 extends from the mouth to below the bridge and is characterised by human habitation and disturbance, little natural vegetation on the riverbanks and relatively deep water. It has a maximum surface area of 8.3 ha and a maximum width of 115 m.

Region 2 comprises the area above the bridge where the estuary becomes very wide. The maximum surface area of this region is 11.8 ha with a maximum width of approximately 200m. This region has an extensive shallow salt marsh area and few human settlements on both banks. The vegetation is dominated by *Euphorbia* and *Aloe* species, on the western bank above the salt marsh, and *Phragmites* reeds on the eastern bank.

Region 3 of the estuary becomes narrower with degraded veld on the western slope and valley bushveld on the steeper eastern slope. The maximum width of this region is approximately 55 m with a maximum surface area of 5.5 ha.

Region 4 comprises the upper reaches of the estuary which have relatively undisturbed valley bushveld on the steep eastern slopes and degraded veld used for cattle farming on the flatter western slopes. This region has a maximum surface area of 2.7 ha and a maximum width of 30 m. In the upper reaches of Region 4, the western bank becomes very steep and rocky and valley bushveld dominates.

## Statistical analyses

### *Abundance*

The mean number of birds was calculated for summer, winter, closed and open estuary mouth conditions. The data were not normally distributed, therefore nonparametric analyses were used. Differences between the mean number of birds during summer and winter months, as well as during open and closed mouth conditions were tested for significance using the Mann-Whitney U-test. The frequency of occurrence for each species was calculated by dividing the number of times a species was present by the total number of counts ( $n = 52$ ). The species were then classified according to an encounter rate ranking. Species present less than 25% of the time were classified as rare, those present 25 - 49% of the time as occasional, 50 - 74% as frequent and 75 - 100% as regular users. The mean number of individuals per count was calculated for all species.

### *Taxonomic composition and diversity*

All recorded birds were identified to species level. A summary of represented orders and families was compiled.

### *Community composition and dietary guilds*

Species were grouped according to feeding methods into aerial diving piscivores (terns, gulls, kingfishers, raptors), wading piscivores (herons, egrets, spoonbills, ibises, hamerkops), pursuit swimming piscivores (cormorants, grebes, darters), waders (oystercatchers, thick-knees, greenshanks, sandpipers, plovers, lapwings, etc) and herbivores (ducks, teals). The contribution of each dietary guild to the total population was determined from the number of individuals of a guild recorded during the entire study period. Summer and winter community composition and spatial distribution across the four regions in summer and winter were also compared. The mean number of individuals per count was calculated for every guild for summer, winter, open and closed estuary mouth. The results were compared using the Mann-Whitney U-test.

### *Spatial distribution patterns*

The distributions of individuals across the four regions in summer and winter were compared.

### *Correlations of feed guild composition with water level*

The change in the abundance of feed guilds in response to changes in water level was compared.

## PRESENT STATUS OF THE AVIFAUNA

### *Species richness, abundance and frequency of occurrence*

The mean number of birds recorded per count at the East Kleinemonde Estuary (Table 1) was 63.7 (SD ± 28.5). There was no significant difference between summer and winter mean abundances. There was, however, a significant difference between the mean number of birds recorded during open and closed conditions (Mann-Whitney U-test: Z = 2.53; U = 331, P < 0.05).

Table 1. Descriptive statistics for bird counts conducted on the East Kleinemonde Estuary under open and closed estuary mouth conditions and in summer and winter months.

	Mean number of individuals	Standard deviation	Range	Significant difference
Total	63.6	28.5	21-144	-
Summer	66.8	24.6	35-120	No
Winter	61.6	31.0	21-140	
Open	76.4	29.8	32-144	Yes
Closed	58.4	27.0	21-127	

Three species were encountered in more than 75% of counts and were classified as regular users (Figure 2). Only Grey Heron was recorded during every count. Eight species were encountered frequently, nine species occasionally and a further 27 species rarely.

The three most frequent species were also the most abundant (Table 2), with Reed Cormorant having the highest mean number of individuals per count. Of the 20 most abundant species only three can be regarded as full time residents (Table 2). Other breeding species, such as Great Egret and Grey Heron, which are present year round, often fly elsewhere to feed, mostly to the adjacent larger West Kleinemonde Estuary. Reed Cormorant, African Spoonbill, Little Egret and others use the estuary mainly for feeding and roosting, but breed elsewhere.

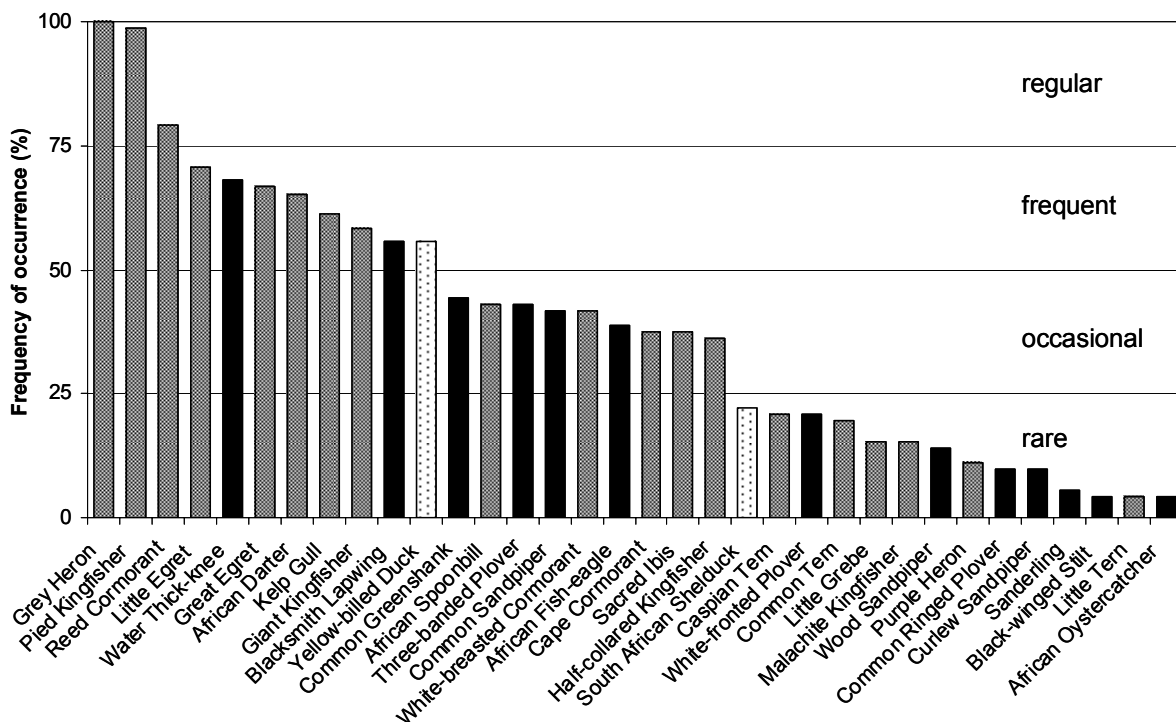


Figure 2. Frequency of occurrence of birds recorded at the East Kleinemonde during the study period. Grey bars represent piscivorous species, black bars invertebrate-feeding species and white bars herbivorous species. Species with a frequency of occurrence of less than 3% are not shown.

Table 2. Descriptive statistics for the 20 most abundant species recorded at the East Kleinemonde Estuary during the study period.

Species	Mean	SD	Range	Estuary use
Reed Cormorant	9.2	11.7	0-60	Feeding, roosting
Pied Kingfisher	6.8	3.4	0-16	Resident
Grey Heron	6.6	4.2	1-23	Breeding, roosting, some feeding
Water Thick-knee	5.9	5.8	0-20	Resident
Great Egret	3.7	5.9	0-24	Breeding, roosting, some feeding
African Spoonbill	3.6	6.5	0-33	Roosting, feeding
Little Egret	3.1	4.6	0-29	Roosting, feeding
Yellow-billed Duck	2.7	4.4	0-24	Feeding, roosting
African Darter	1.7	2.4	0-13	Feeding, roosting
Curlew Sandpiper	1.6	6.1	0-34	Irregular feeding
Common Greenshank	1.6	2.9	0-13	Feeding
White-breasted Cormorant	1.4	3.8	0-29	Roosting, feeding
Blacksmith Lapwing	1.3	1.6	0-9	Feeding, breeding
Three-banded Plover	1.2	1.9	0-9	Feeding
Kelp Gull	1.1	1.1	0-5	Feeding, roosting
Cape Cormorant	1.1	1.7	0-7	Roosting, feeding
Sacred Ibis	0.9	1.4	0-6	Roosting, feeding
Common Sandpiper	0.8	1.2	0-6	Irregular feeding
Giant Kingfisher	0.8	0.8	0-3	Resident
White-fronted Plover	0.8	2.1	0-14	Feeding (mouth area only)

#### *Taxonomic composition and diversity*

A total of 48 non-passerine waterbird species were recorded on the East Kleinemonde Estuary during 2005 - 2006, with 44 of these species being recorded during summer and 38 in winter. A total of 17 families of waterbirds in six orders were represented on the estuary, with Charadriiformes, making up the majority (48%) of recorded species (Table 3). Twenty-nine percent of recorded species belonged to the Order Ciconiiformes, 10% to Anseriiformes and 6% to Coraciiformes. Gruiformes and Falconiformes were only represented by one species (2%). A total of 16 species were long-distance migrants.

Table 3. Numbers of species of different groups that have been recorded on the East Kleinemonde Estuary (non-passerine waterbirds, excluding vagrants).

Order	Family	Common names	Total	Migratory
Anseriiformes	Anatidae	Ducks, geese	4	
Coraciiformes	Alcedinidae	Alcedinid kingfishers	2	
	Dacelonidae	Dacelonid kingfishers	2	
Gruiformes	Heliornithidae	Finfoots	1	
Charadriiformes	Scolopacidae	Whimbrels, greenshanks, stints, ruff, sandpipers, turnstones	10	10
	Burhinidae	Thick-knees	1	
	Haematopodidae	Oystercatchers	1	
	Recurvirostridae	Stilts	1	
	Charadriidae	Plovers, lapwings	6	3
	Laridae	Gulls, terns	4	3
	Falconiformes	Accipitridae	Raptors	1
Ciconiiformes	Podicipedidae	Grebes	1	
	Phalacrocoracidae	Cormorants	4	
	Ardeidae	Hérons, egrets	5	
	Scopidae	Hamerkop	1	
	Threskiornithidae	Ibises, spoonbills	2	
	Ciconiidae	Storks	1	

### Community composition and dietary guilds

Piscivorous birds were numerically dominant at the East Kleinemonde Estuary, making up 70% of all recorded individuals. Invertebrate feeding waders formed the second most numerous component (24%). Waterfowl were particularly scarce in the estuary, making up only 6% of all recorded individuals.

In summer, the piscivorous component was predominantly wading piscivores (Figure 3). The percentage of pursuit swimming piscivores (cormorants, grebes, darters) increased considerably from summer (17.3%) to winter (27.5%), mostly due to cormorants that arrive in winter to utilise the estuary for feeding. Their abundance increased significantly ( $P < 0.05$ ) from summer to winter (Table 4).

Resident wader numbers increased in winter, while migratory waders were virtually absent from the estuary during this time (Table 4). Therefore the overall wader component remained relatively constant throughout the year. Waterfowl were only present in small numbers, but their numbers did increase slightly in the winter months.

Table 4. Mean, standard deviation and range of numbers of individuals of different groups of birds recorded per count during the study period in summer (October - March) and winter (April - September).

	Summer (N = 29)			Winter (N = 43)			Significance
	Mean	Standard deviation	Range	Mean	Standard deviation	Range	
Aerial diving piscivores	11.4	5.0	1-25	10.5	4.9	3-23	Not significant
Pursuit swimming piscivores	10.1	10.2	0-34	16.3	16.9	1-75	$P < 0.05$
Wading piscivores	21.8	16.3	3-60	15.6	11.0	1-48	Not significant
Resident waders	6.6	4.5	0-14	12	10.2	0-50	$P < 0.05$
Migratory waders	10.4	13.1	0-50	0.9	1.5	0-8	$P < 0.001$
Herbivores	1.9	2.0	0-6	4.3	5.6	0-24	Not significant

The estuary mouth was open to the sea mainly in the winter months of the study period, with only six out of 21 bird counts conducted in summer under open conditions. Therefore a comparison between open and closed conditions is largely a within-winter issue. There was a significant increase in the mean number of aerial diving piscivores, wading piscivores and resident waders from closed to open mouth conditions (Table 5).

Table 5. Mean, standard deviation (SD) and range of numbers of individuals of different groups of birds recorded per count during the study period under open and closed estuary mouth conditions.

	Closed (N = 51)			Open (N = 21)			Significance
	Mean	SD	Range	Mean	SD	Range	
Aerial diving piscivores	10.1	4.6	1-19	12.9	5.3	4-25	$P < 0.05$
Pursuit swimming piscivores	12.9	13.4	0-66	16.1	17.9	2-75	Not significant
Wading piscivores	16.0	14.4	1-60	23.1	10.4	6-48	$P < 0.01$
Resident waders	8.3	9.1	0-50	13.6	6.7	2-27	$P < 0.01$
Migratory waders	4.8	10.0	0-50	4.5	8.6	0-40	Not significant
Herbivores	3.5	5.3	0-24	3.1	2.5	0-9	Not significant

### Spatial distribution patterns

In summer, only 13% of birds were found between the estuary mouth and the bridge (Region 1). Region 2 was the most frequented area of the estuary with 53% of birds occurring there. Twenty percent and 13% of birds were found in Regions 3 and 4 respectively. In winter, 24% of birds were in Region 1, 49% in Region 2, 16% in Region 3 and 11% in Region 4.

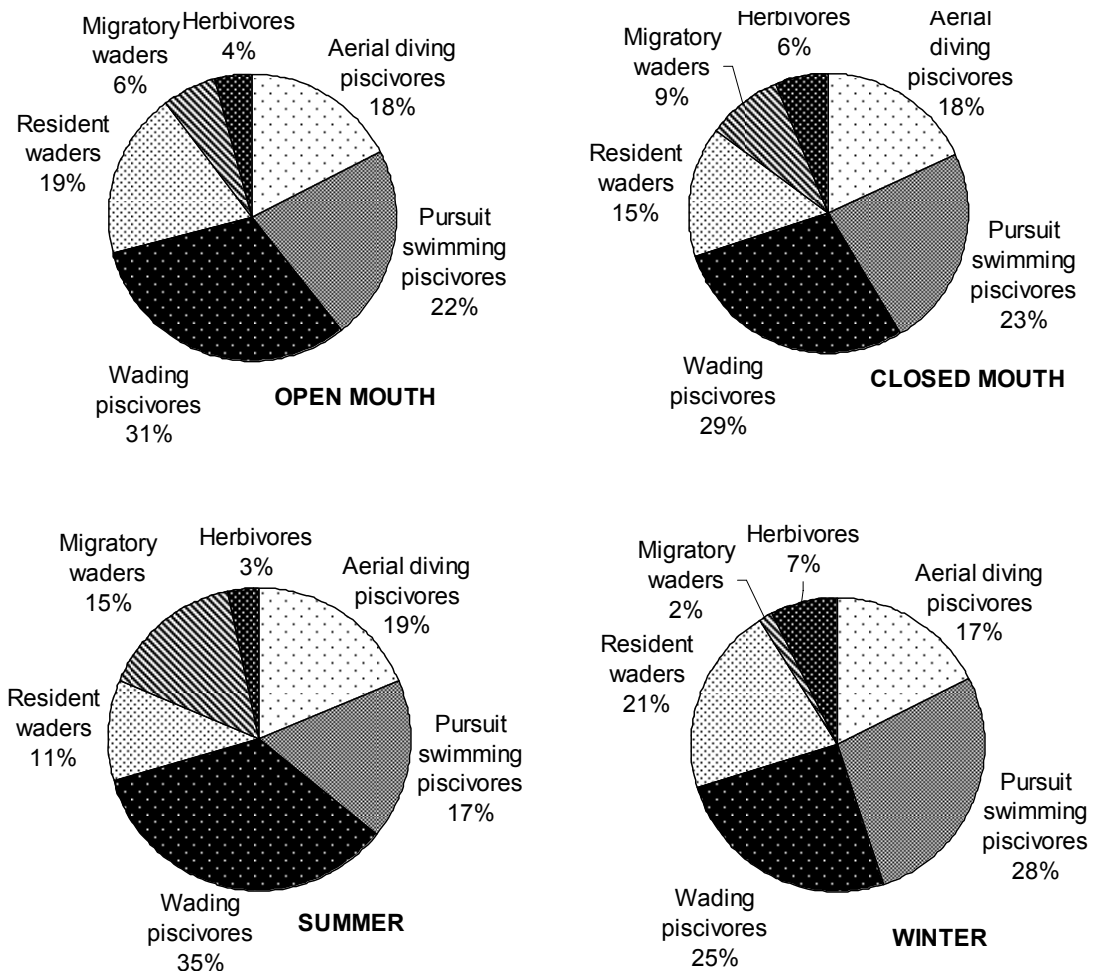


Figure 3. Community composition of the avifauna at the East Kleinemonde Estuary during open and closed estuary mouth conditions and in summer and winter months.

Wading piscivores and invertebrate feeding waders preferred the large expanse of shallow water in Region 2 throughout the year. Pursuit swimming piscivores (cormorants, grebes, darters) also occurred in greatest numbers in this region, as it has a wide, deep channel and suitable roosting sites. Overall, aerial divers occurred relatively evenly along the length of the estuary, but kingfishers and African Fish Eagles preferred the upper reaches of the estuary, while terns and gulls were most common in the lower two regions. In general, birds do not aggregate near the mouth in this estuary but instead prefer the region above the bridge where there is less development and human disturbance, together with a large area of shallow water. There was no noteworthy change in overall distribution of birds between open and closed estuary mouth phases.

#### *Correlations with water level*

There was a significant positive correlation ( $r^2 = 0.13$ ;  $P < 0.05$ ) between water level and the number of pursuit swimming piscivores recorded under closed estuary mouth conditions (Figure 4). Wading piscivore numbers decreased with increasing water levels ( $r^2 = 0.16$ ;  $P < 0.001$ ; Figure 5). Non-migrating invertebrate feeding waders were more abundant in the winter months (Mean =  $13.3 \pm 9.89$ ) than in the winter months (Mean =  $6.8 \pm 4.87$ ) and their numbers decreased with increasing water levels (Figure 6). When separating the data by season a significant correlation ( $r^2 = 0.20$ ;  $P < 0.01$ ) was found between water level and number of recorded individuals in the winter months. The correlation between water level and abundance was not significant in the winter months. Aerial diving piscivore numbers decreased significantly with increasing water levels ( $r^2 = 0.19$ ,  $P < 0.001$ ; Figure 7). Migrating wader numbers did not show any significant correlations with water level. This is probably because they tended to visit the estuary for short periods and there was little site-faithfulness.

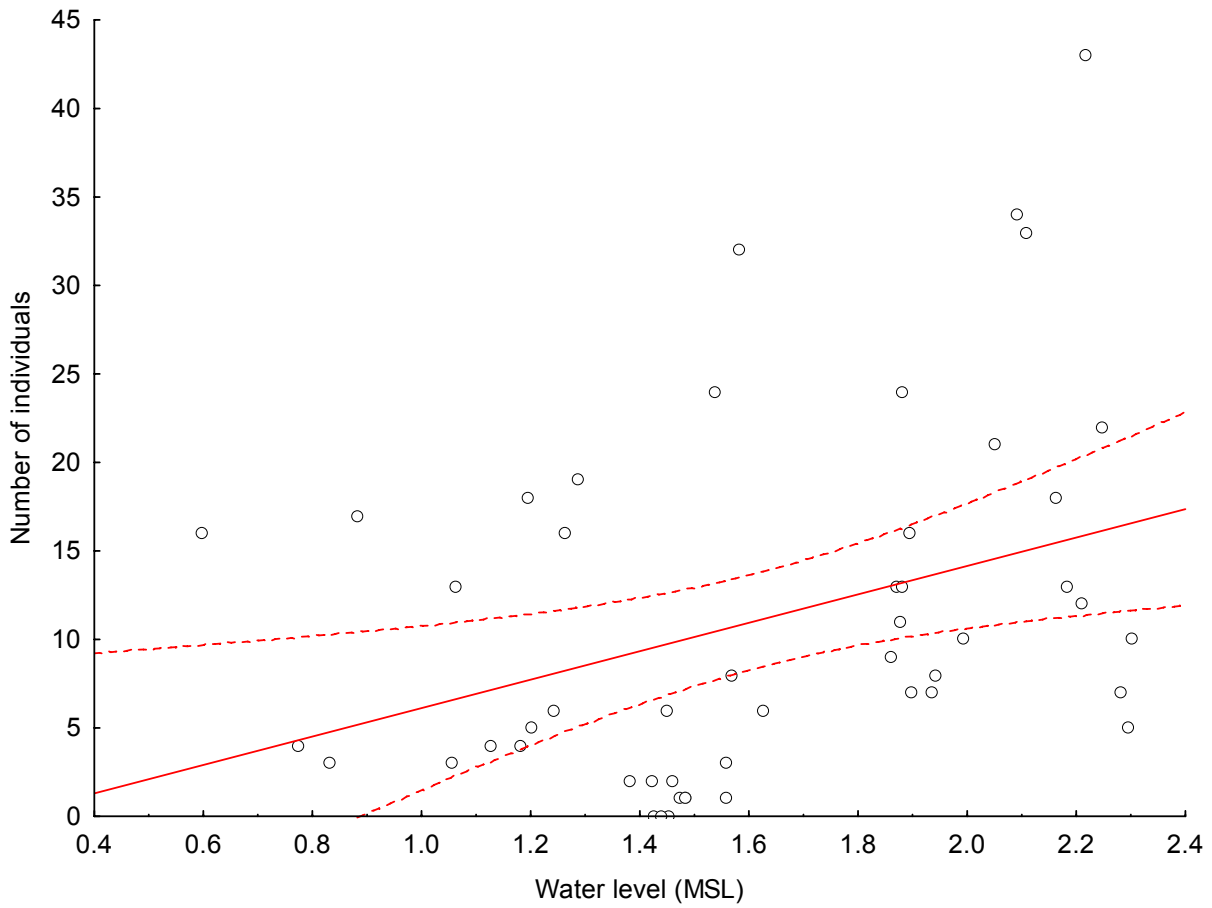


Figure 4. Pursuit swimming piscivore numbers recorded at different water depths under closed mouth conditions in the East Kleinemonde Estuary between March 2005 and November 2006.

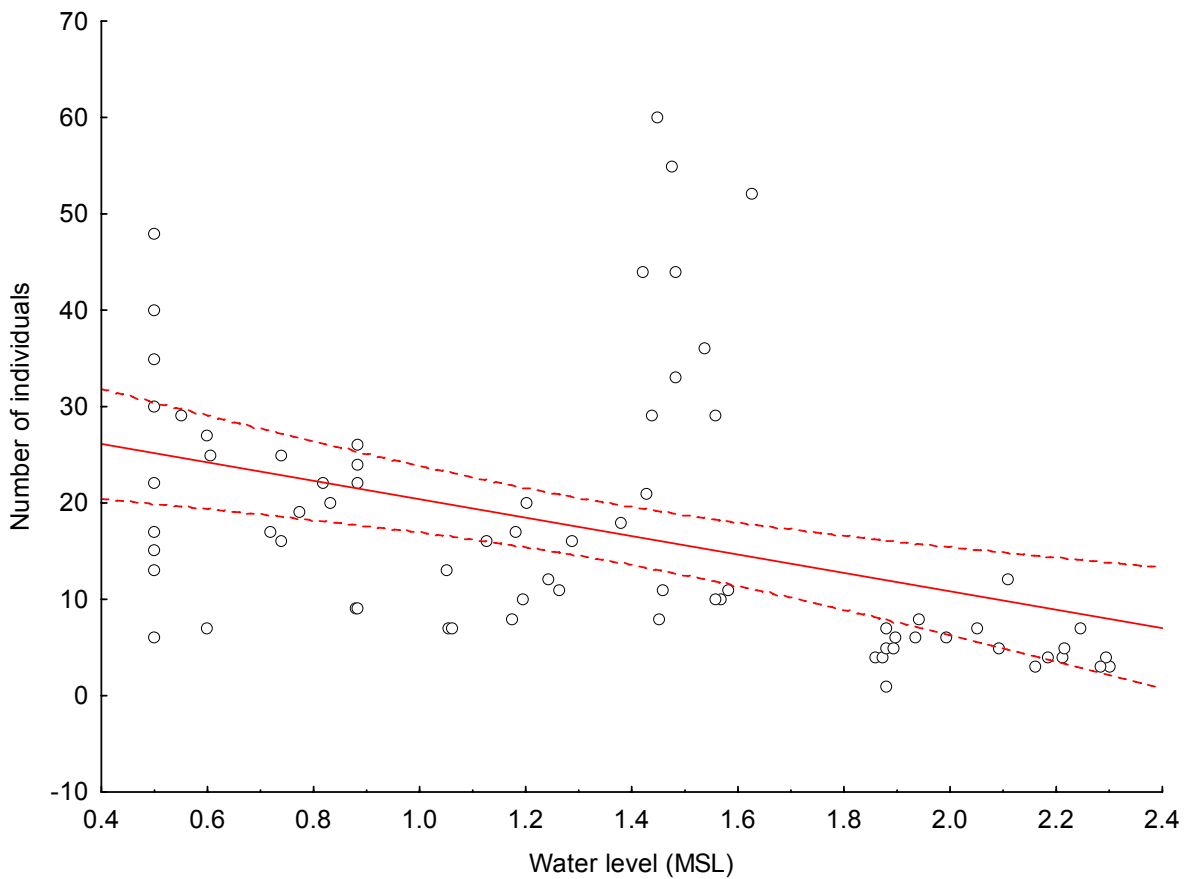


Figure 5. Wading piscivore numbers recorded at different water levels in the East Kleinemonde Estuary between March 2005 and November 2006.

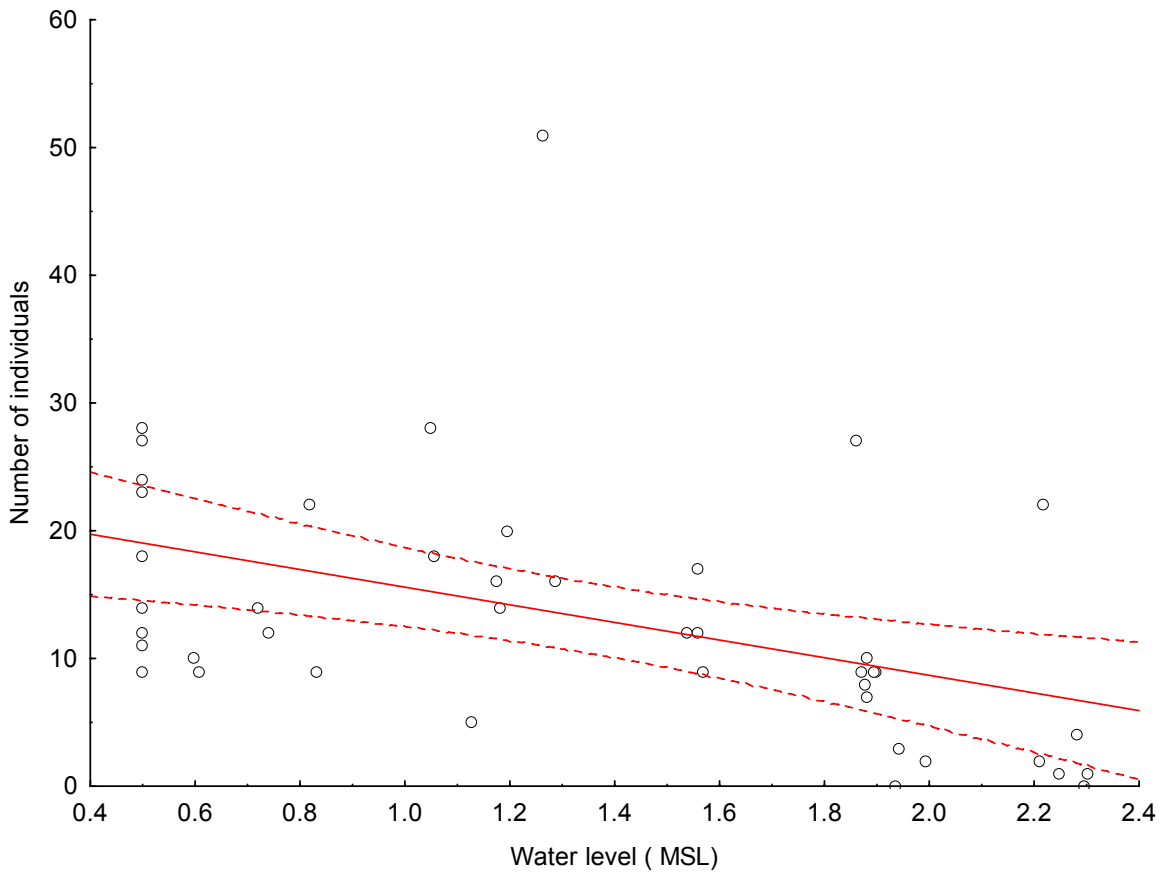


Figure 6. Non-migrating invertebrate-feeding wader numbers recorded at different water levels during the winter months (April-September) in the East Kleinemonde Estuary (2005-2006).

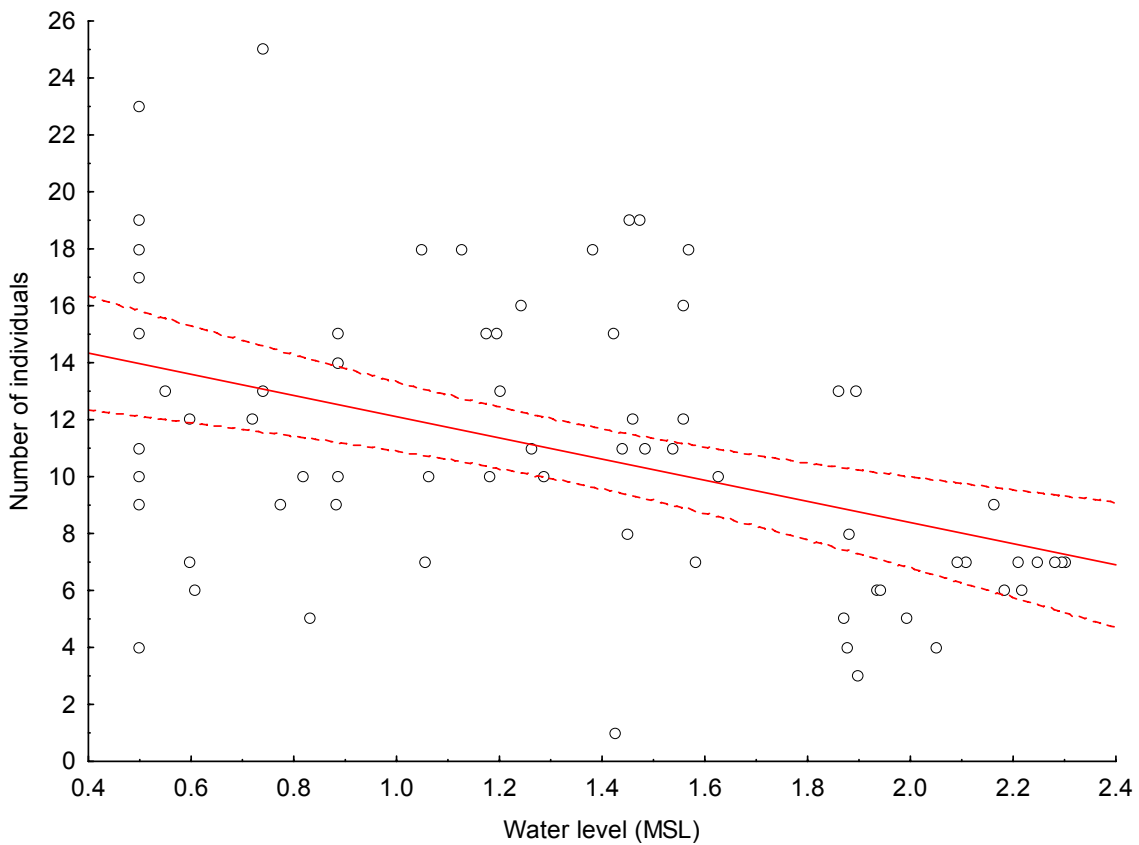


Figure 7. Aerial diving piscivore numbers recorded at different water levels in the East Kleinemonde Estuary between March 2005 and November 2006.

## FACTORS INFLUENCING AVIFAUNAL COMMUNITY STRUCTURE AND ABUNDANCE

As discussed in Turpie (2000), it is difficult to accurately predict the impact of changes in estuarine characteristics on bird assemblages (Hockey & Turpie 1999a, 1999b) and predictions often have to be made on the basis of qualitative assessments of the relationships between the main variables that influence bird community structure and abundance in estuaries (Figure 8). These relationships may vary seasonally, from estuary to estuary, or between biogeographical zones. Difficulties in prediction are also compounded by variability due to external factors such as breeding success on distant breeding grounds. Very few quantitative studies have been made of the influence of abiotic and biotic factors on bird community structure and abundance in South African estuaries.

A complex array of variables is expected to influence the bird community (Figure 8, Hockey & Turpie 1999a, 1999b). Apart from external influences, different trophic groups of birds are probably influenced primarily by the availability (or catchability) of food (plants, invertebrates or fish), in turn influenced by its abundance and size class distribution. In addition to the relationship between food groups, the availability of food is in turn expected to be influenced by salinity, nutrients and relative availability of different habitat types (e.g. mudflats, sandflats, vegetated habitats). The latter variables are influenced by freshwater inputs to the estuary. Certain groups or species are liable to be more responsive to changes in system variables than others, depending on their ability to adapt to a range of circumstances (e.g. Turpie & Hockey 1997).

Figure 8 depicts the trophic interactions within the estuary. Other variables, such as availability of roosting, perching or breeding sites, may feature strongly in determining the presence and abundance of certain species.

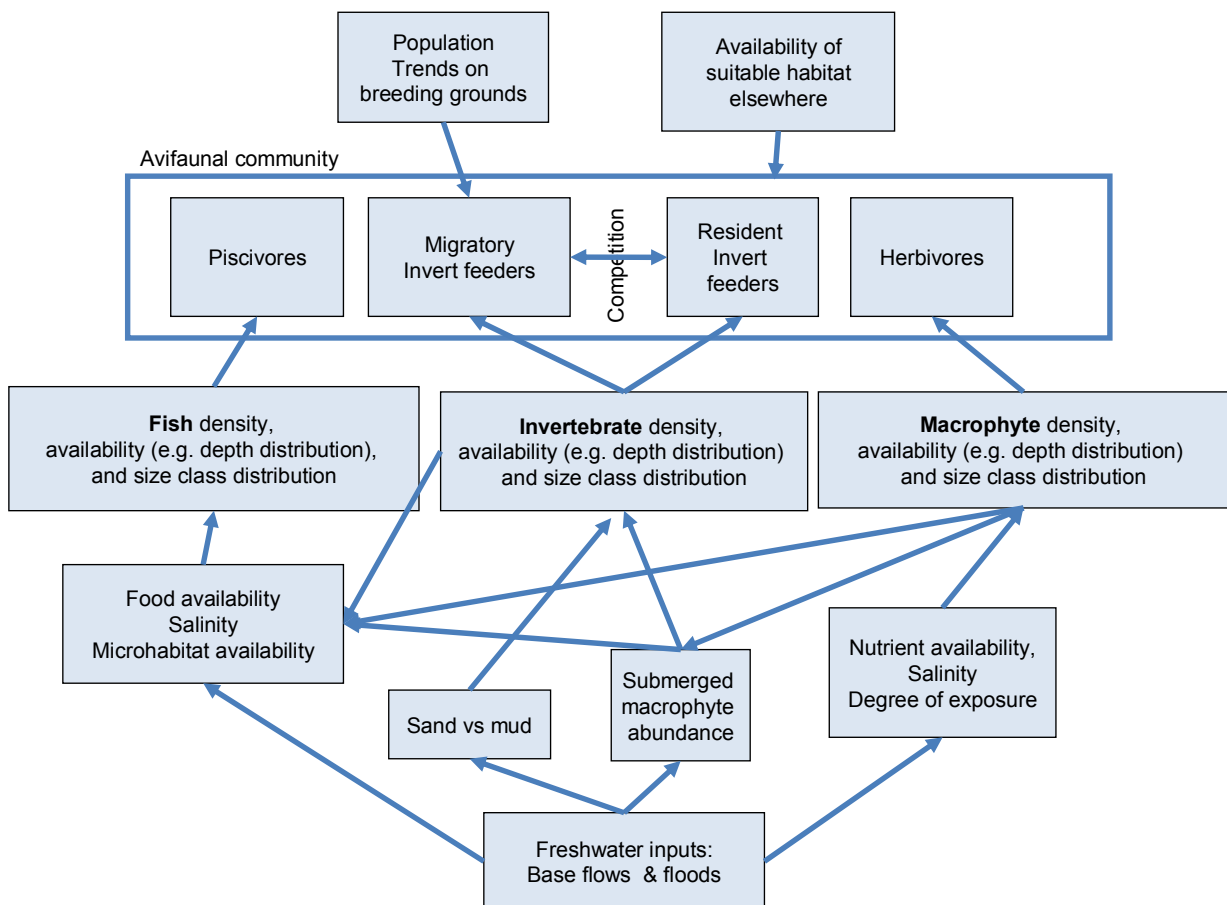


Figure 8. A simplified example of the types of relationships used in predicting the structure of an estuarine avifaunal community. Assumptions are made about the nature of relationships for each of the arrows depicted (from Turpie 2000).

Where the composition and productivity of a food group is determined by abiotic factors such as salinity or sediment particle size, these variables may indirectly influence the nature of the avifaunal community. For example, a broad assumption applied to invertebrate feeding waders is that wader densities are negatively correlated with sediment sand fraction, because the latter is negatively correlated with invertebrate density/availability.

The above relationships have largely been considered for permanently open estuaries. In the case of systems such as the East Kleinemonde, it appears that water level is a major factor determining avifaunal abundance, since it affects habitat availability (e.g. deep channels for diving, shallow areas for wading) and food availability directly (e.g. sandprawn density; Terörde 2005b) or indirectly (e.g. through affecting availability of submerged macrophyte beds suitable for certain fish species).

## REFERENCES

- Cowley, P.D. 1998. Fish population dynamics in a temporarily open/closed South African estuary. Rhodes University PhD thesis, Chapter 7: 83-93.
- Hockey, P.A.R. & Turpie, J.K. 1999a. Waders and their estuarine food supplies: is predatory behaviour the key to understanding carrying capacity? In: Adams, N.J. & Slotow, R.H. (eds) Proceedings of the 22nd International Ornithological Congress, Durban: 2294-2308. BirdLife South Africa, Johannesburg.
- Hockey, P.A.R. & Turpie, J.K. 1999b. The ecology of estuarine birds. In: Allanson & Baird (eds) Estuaries of South Africa. Cambridge University Press, UK.
- Terörde, A.I. 2005a. Aspects of the population dynamics of piscivorous birds at the East Kleinemonde Estuary, South Africa. Rhodes University Honours thesis. 47 pp.
- Terörde, A.I. 2005b. A study of distribution patterns of the burrowing sandprawn *Callinassa kraussi* Stebbing, using a non-invasive sampling technique. Rhodes University Honours thesis. 30pp.
- Turpie, J.K. 2000. Specialist report on avifauna of the Breede Estuary. Unpublished report to CSIR, Stellenbosch.
- Turpie, J.K. & Hockey, P.A.R. 1997. Adaptive variation in the foraging behaviour of Grey Plovers *Pluvialis squatarola* and Whimbrels *Numenius phaeopus*. Ibis 139: 289-298.

## **Appendix L**

### **Proposed changes to RDM methodology for estuaries**

The following recommendations were made for future RDM studies:

- TOCEs with small catchments react at relatively short time scales to changes in river inflow. The RDM methods currently analyse changes in runoff on a monthly time step. Daily flows may be needed to determine the ecological flow requirements of smaller systems to quantify the high degree of variability in small systems.
- Recent studies on epiphytes indicate that they are an important component of the estuarine ecosystem. The RDM methods need to be reviewed in the light of these findings and a decision made on the inclusion of epiphytes in future studies.
- Similar to water quality, future RDM studies should also measure the end-points for microalgae (i.e. marine algae) to understand the fluctuations in biomass in the estuary.
- The guidelines for the **Importance Rating** of an estuary are ambiguous and need to be refined:
  - Should the evaluation be on a national or regional scale?
  - Refine guidelines to capture the needs of rare and endangered species (e.g. estuarine pipefish).
- A number of changes are recommended to the wording of the **Functional Importance** scoring system to assist in guiding workshop participants:
  - a) Export of organic material generated in the estuary (regional scale).
  - b) Nursery function for fish and crustaceans (marine/riverine).
  - c) Movement corridor for river invertebrates and fish breeding in sea.
  - d) Roosting area for marine or coastal birds.
  - e) Catchment detritus, nutrients and sediments to sea.